

Cat. No. 25-1517

Tandy 1000 TL

Technical Reference Manual

TANDY®

Tandy 1000 TL Technical Reference
Manual
Copyright 1988, Tandy Corporation
All Rights Reserved.

Reproduction or use of any portion of this manual, without express written permission from Tandy Corporation and/or its licensor, is prohibited. While reasonable efforts have been made in the preparation of this manual to assure its accuracy, Tandy Corporation assumes no liability resulting from any errors in or omissions from this manual, or from the use of the information obtained herein.

The Technical Reference Manual for the Tandy 1000 TL describes the computer hardware components and their relationships to one another, as well as the BIOS (Basic Input Output Services).

The information in this manual is intended for hardware and software designers, engineers, programmers, and anyone who requires an understanding of the design and operation of the computer.

Timing diagrams for devices used in the system architecture, Schematics, specifications, switch settings and jumpers, and a theory of operation are provided for the following hardware sections:

Main Logic Board	Keyboards
Devices	Disk Drives
Power Supplies	

The Software section contains the following:

- A Quick Reference list of software interrupts (for all device, I/O, and system status services)
- Keyboard ASCII and scan codes
- An MS-DOS memory map

The information in this manual is a supplement to and based on a working knowledge of the following literature:

The 1000 TL Installation and Operation Guide (Packaged with the computer)

The Intel 80286 Programing Reference Manual. Intel order number 210498-005

The Intel 80286 Hardware Reference Manual. Intel order number 210760-002

80286 Data Sheet. Intel order number 210253-012

This Intel literature may be ordered directly from Intel at the following number: 1-800-549-4725



Tandy 1000 TL
Page Insertion Guide

Important Customer Note:

A gray stripe has been printed along the right edge of the title page of each of the sections to facilitate your finding the beginning of the section.

Also, a tabbed divider for each section has been provided for insertion at this point.

- . Exploded view: Insert at the end of the Assembly/Dis-assembly section
- . Foldout schematic pages: Insert at the end of the Main Logic Board section

Schematics

C8000300 - Rev A
Sheets 1 of 10 thru 10 of 10

- . Foldout PCB art: Insert after the Main Logic Board schematics

Silkscreen
Layer 1 Component Side
Layer 2 GND Plane
Layer 3 + 5V Plane
Layer 4 Solder Side

1700376 - Rev A

- . Foldout schematic page: Insert at the end of the 67 Watt Single Input Power Supply section

Schematic

Model No. 8790085

- . Foldout schematic page: Insert at the end of the 67 Watt Dual Input Power Supply section

Schematic

Model No. 8790084

- Foldout keyboard art pages: Insert after the Fujitsu Keyboard information in the Keyboard section

Keyboard Unit Assembly	N860-4703-U001
Block Diagram	4700
Circuit Specification	N86C-4700-0001
Circuit Specification	N86C-4700-0101

- Foldout schematic page: Insert after the Fujitsu Custom IC Pin Signal sheet 2 of 3 in the Keyboard section

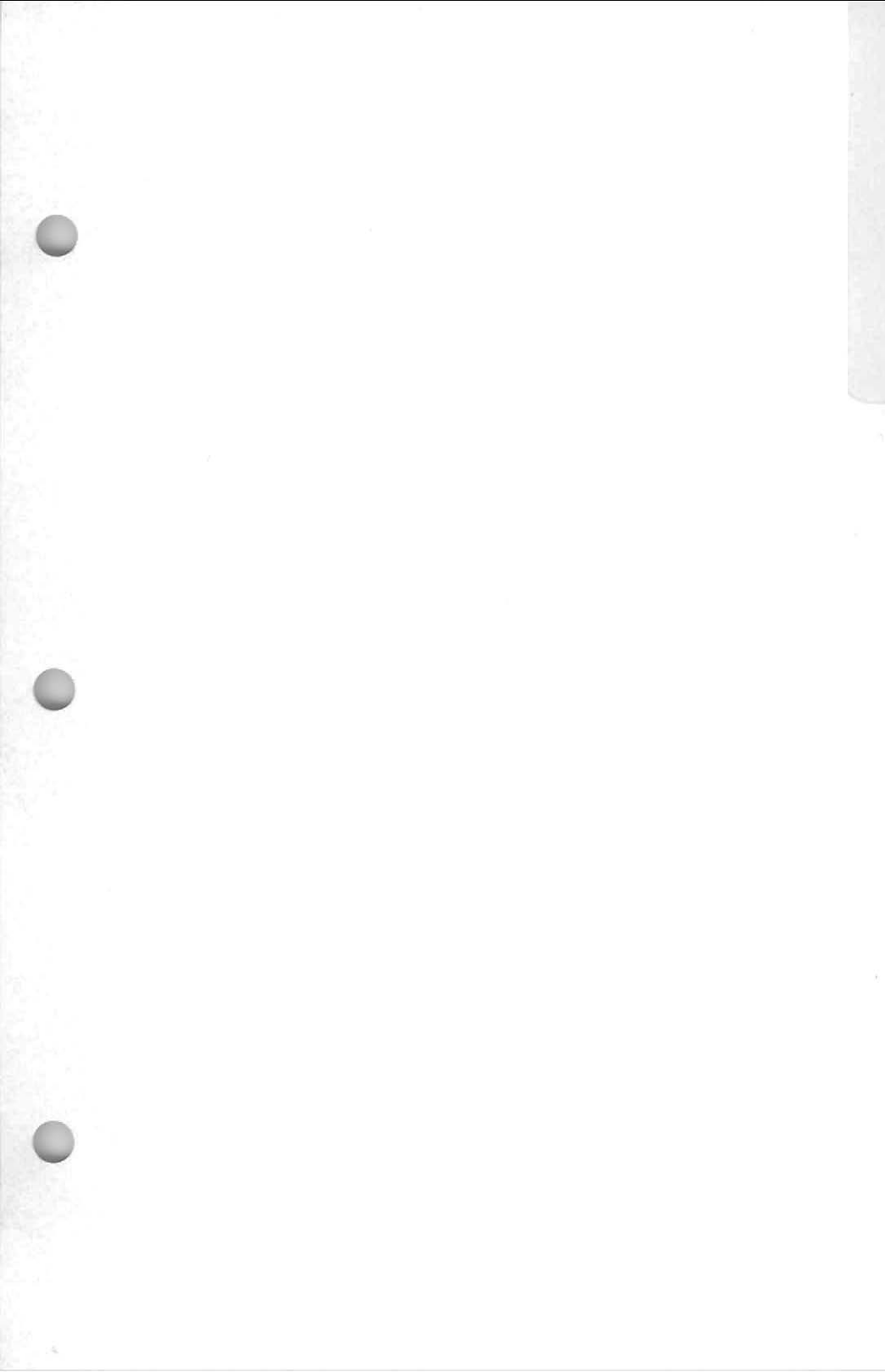
Schematic	Fujitsu Custom IC Pin Signals & Function Sheet 3 of 3
-----------	--

- Exploded view of Parts Assembly location: Insert after the Section 4 Part Replacement portion of the Disk Drive section
- Foldout schematic page: Insert after the Overall Diagram in the Disk Drive section

Table Of Contents

Introduction	1
General Description	1
Specifications Summary	2
Optional Features	3
Physical Specifications	4
System Assembly/Disassembly (Including Exploded Views)	5
Main Logic Board	7
Introduction	7
Switch Settings and Jumper Pin Configurations	8
Theory of Operation	9
80286 Microprocessor	9
80287 Numerical Math Coprocessor	9
Clock Generation (Night Blue)	9
Command and Control Signal Generation	10
Command Buffer	11
DRAM Control	12
Refresh Control	13
BIOS ROM Control	13
Reset Circuit	14
Wait State and Ready Logic	15
NMI- Logic	15
80287 Control Logic	15
CPU Address Buffers	16
Data Buffers and Conversion Logic	17
I/O Decode	17
Video Controller	19
Timer	21
Joystick Interface	21
Keyboard Interface	21
Sound Out Circuit	22
Sound In Circuit	22
Real-time Clock	23
DMA Controller	23
RS232 Serial Port Interface	24
Parallel Printer Port Interface	25
Expansion Ports	26
System Expansion Bus	26
Expansion Bus Signal Description	27
Memory Map	30
I/O Port Map of System	31







Introduction



Introduction

General Description

The Tandy® 1000 TL is modular in design to allow maximum flexibility in system configuration. The computer consists of a main unit, and a detachable keyboard with coiled cable. The main unit is supplied with one internal 3½-inch 720K floppy disk drive. The standard types of monitors used with the Tandy 1000 TL are the monochrome and the color RGB monitor. Since these units are modular, you can place them on top of the main unit or at any convenient location.

The Tandy 1000 TL comes standard with 640K of system RAM. An optional 128K RAM can be added on the system board to expand the memory to a full 768K bytes, the maximum RAM allowed by the system memory map.

Other features include a parallel printer port, a serial port, two built-in joystick interfaces, a real-time clock, a speaker for audio feedback, a headphone jack with volume control, and microphone/line audio in jack for sound input.

Specifications Summary

- . 80286 CPU running at 8 MHz, 1 wait state, switchable to 4 MHz
- . Socket for 80287 numerical coprocessor
- . 640K bytes DRAM upgradeable to 768K bytes (16-bit data bus)
- . 4 Mbit BIOS ROM with MS-DOS® and Deskmate® (16-bit data bus)
- . Tandy 1000 TL video controller that supports:
 - 128K bytes DRAM (used as system and video memory)
 - alphanumeric mode
 - graphics modes including:
 - 160 X 200 16-color
 - 320 X 200 4-color
 - 320 X 200 16-color
 - 640 X 200 2-color
 - 640 X 200 4-color
- . 8237-5 DMA controller that supports:
 - 3 DMA channels
 - 8-bit transfers
 - 4 MHz clock speed
- . 8259A interrupt controller for 8 interrupts
- . 8254 interval timer that supports:
 - system interrupt timing
 - sound timing
 - refresh timing
- . Custom keyboard interface controller
- . 101-key Enhanced keyboard
- . Custom parallel printer port
- . Serial port (RS-232-C)
- . Real-time clock w/battery
- . Audio Out interface circuit that supports:
 - internal 8-Ohm speaker
 - headphone jack with user accessible volume control
- . Audio In interface circuit that supports:
 - microphone in
 - line audio in
 - sound digitizing and recording
- . Joystick interface for two joysticks
- . Custom floppy disk controller circuit that supports:
 - 5¼-inch 360K floppy disk drives
 - 3½-inch 720K floppy disk drives
- . On-board Intelligent Hard Disk interface
- . One 3½-inch 720K floppy disk drive
- . Five 8-bit expansion slots
- . Reset button and support logic
- . 67-Watt power supply

Optional Features

- . 80287 numerical math coprocessor
- . 128K DRAM upgrade (16-bit data bus memory)
- . 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch 360K floppy disk drive
- . 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch 720K floppy disk drive
- . Hard disk card (20/40 meg)
- . Display adapter boards that support mono, EGA, or other special video modes
- . 300, 1200, or 2400 baud modem boards

Physical Specifications

(Computer and Keyboard)

Processor: Intel® 80286
Dimensions: Computer - 16½-inch x 13½-inch x 5½-inch
Keyboard - 16½-inch x 8-inch x 1½-inch
Weight: Computer - 18 lbs. (with 2 floppy disk drives)
Keyboard - 3 lbs. 4 oz.

Power Requirements:

Range: 105 VAC to 135 VAC
Nominal: 120 VAC, 60 Hz, 3 Amp maximum

With 1 Floppy Disk Drive, 640K Memory:

AC Current: 350 - 400 mA with floppy doing R/W tests.

Disk Drive:

	<u>+5 VDC</u>	<u>+12 VDC</u>
R/W	560 mA (Min.)	340 mA (Max.)
Main Logic Board:	1700 mA	450 mA

Operating Environment:

Temperature: 55° to 85° F (13° to 30° C)
Humidity: 40% to 80% non-condensing

Non-Operating Environment:

Temperature: -40° to +160° F (-40° to 71° C)
Humidity: 20% to 90% non-condensing

Disk Drive Specifications

Power:

<u>Supply Voltage</u>	<u>+5 VDC Input</u>	<u>+12 VDC Input</u>
Ripple		
0 to 50 kHz	100 mV	100 mV
Tolerance		
Including Ripple	+/-5%	+/-5%
Standby Current		
Nominal	190 mA	160 mA
Worst Case	220 mA	190 mA

Operating Current

Nominal	260 mA	600 mA
Worst Case	300 mA	1000 mA

Assembly/Disassembly



System Assembly/Disassembly (Including Exploded Views)

The following instructions explain how the major subassemblies are removed from the Tandy 1000 TL. Re-assembly of major subassemblies is accomplished by reversing the order of the removal procedures.

1. Top Cover Removal

- a. Remove the (2) screws from the side of the computer at the rear.
- b. Slide the cover forward enough to clear the power button, volume knob, and disk drive eject button and then lift the cover straight up and off.

2. 3½-inch Floppy Disk Removal

- a. Remove the top cover.
- b. Unplug the cable from the disk drive.
- c. Remove the (3) screws attaching the drive to the drive mounting tower.
- d. Slide the drive out of the drive mounting tower.

3. Power Supply Removal

- a. Remove the top cover.
- b. Remove the rear panel by slightly bending the hooks on each side near the bottom and rotating enough to clear the sheet metal and then lift up.
- c. Remove all cables from the main logic board and disk drives.
- d. Remove the arm attached to the power supply switch.
- e. Remove the (3) screws from the rear of the computer and (1) screw from the side that secure the power supply to the rear of the machine.
- f. Slide the power supply up and out.

4. Main Logic Board Removal

- a. Remove the top cover.
- b. Unplug all cables and remove all of the adapter boards from the system.
- c. Remove the power supply.
- d. Remove the back of the chassis by removing (1) screw at the rear of the computer and pulling the back of the chassis to the rear and down to clear the (3) hooks in the bottom of the chassis.
- e. Remove the (11) screws holding the main logic board in place.
- f. Remove the main logic board by carefully pulling straight back from under the drive support and out of the chassis.

NOTE: WHEN REPLACING THE MAIN LOGIC BOARD, BE SURE THAT THE VOLUME CONTROL KNOB POST SLIDES INTO THE VOLUME CONTROL POT CORRECTLY.

MECHANICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

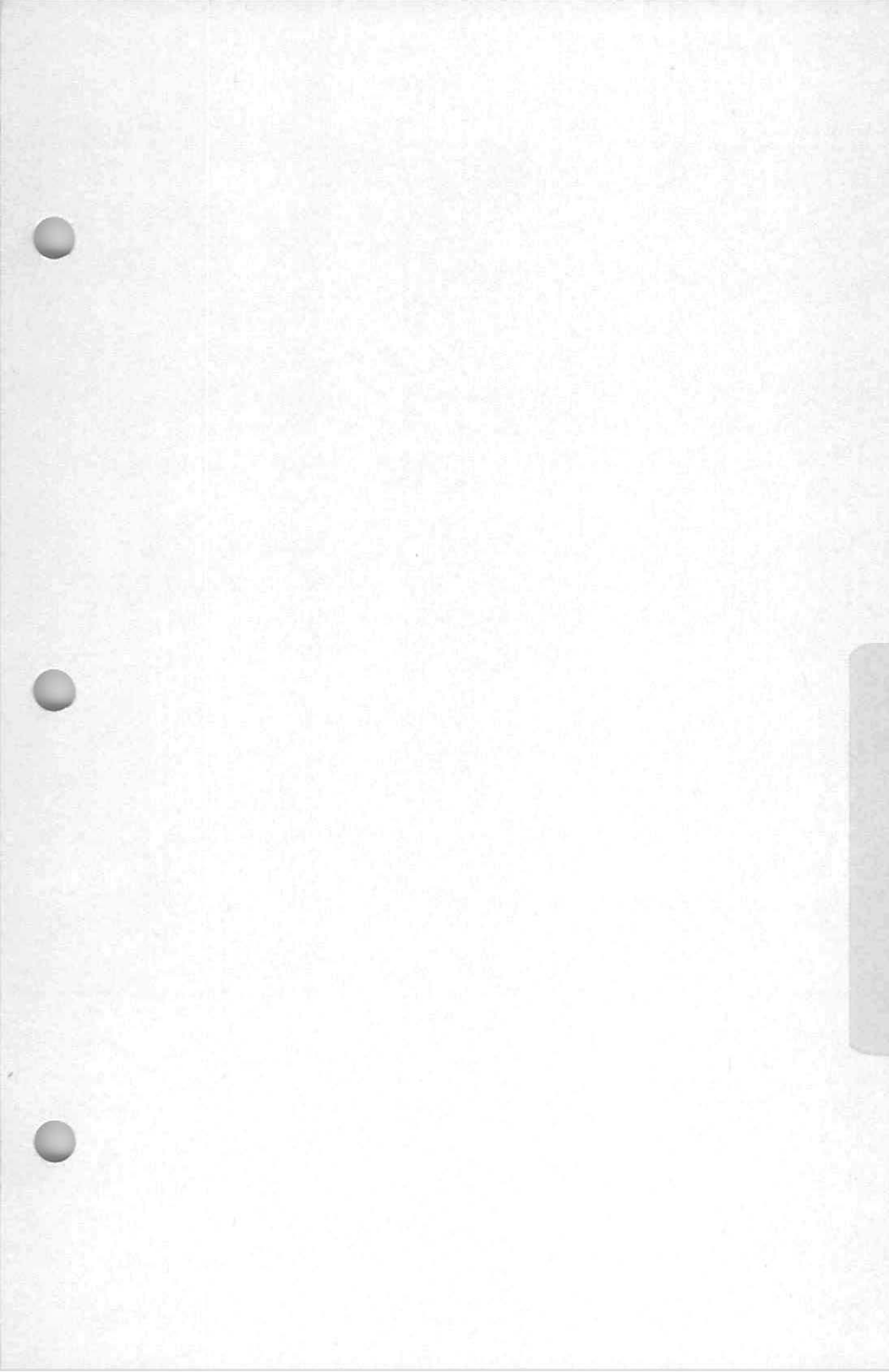
TANDY 1000 TL FINAL ASSEMBLY

<u>QTY.</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>PART NUMBER</u>
1	CHASSIS - WELDMENT	8729710
5	PANEL - OPTION SLOT Rev D	8729562
5	SCREW - #4-40 X 3/16	8569333
	OPTION SLOT PANEL	
4	FOOT	8590179
4	RIVET - #1661-0512	8565014
1	PC BOARD SUBASSY - TANDY 1000 TL MAIN LOGIC A	8859022
1	BATTERY - LITHIUM CR2032	8491012
1	SHIELD - GROUND, EARPHONE & MICROPHONE	8729720
10	SCREW - #6-32 X 1/4	8569326
	MAIN BOARD	
4	JACKNUT - #4-40 X 3/16	8569341
	9 PIN CONNECTORS	
4	SHIELDING STRIP FLITE-WAY ENGR	8729658
1	KNOB - VOLUME CONTROL	8719624
1	CLIP - HAIRPIN	8559080
1	CHASSIS - POWER SUPPLY Rev B	8729690
1	POWER SUPPLY - 67 WATT	8790084
	INT'L	
	DOM.	8790085
	DOM.	8790091
4	SCREW - #6-32 X 5/16	8569339
	POWER SUPPLY	
1	DC HARNESS	8709857
1	SWITCH - POWER	8489111
1	SWITCH - POWER	8489112
	INT'L	
2	SCREW - M3 x 5PPH	8569293
3	SCREW - #6-32 X 5/16	8569339
1	ACTUATOR - POWER SWITCH	8719620
1	BUTTON - POWER	8719625
1	RECEPTACLE - AC	8519246
1	HARNESS - AC	8709868
	DOMESTIC	
1	HARNESS - AC Rev B	8709873
	INT'L	
2	CAPACITOR - 1000 PFD, 400V	8352106
1	TORROID - CORE FAIRRITE	8419030
2	NUT - KEPS, #6-32	8579004
1	FAN - 80 MM; 12 VDC	8790424
4	SCREW - #10 TAPIT THREAD	8569301
1	ENDPLATE - POWER SUPPLY	8729691
1	CHASSIS - REAR	8729693
2	SCREW - #6-32 X 5/16	8569339
1	BRACKET - 3 1/2 DISK DRIVE	8729687
1	BRACKET - HARD CARD	8729704
2	SCREW - #6-32 X 5/16	8569339

MECHANICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

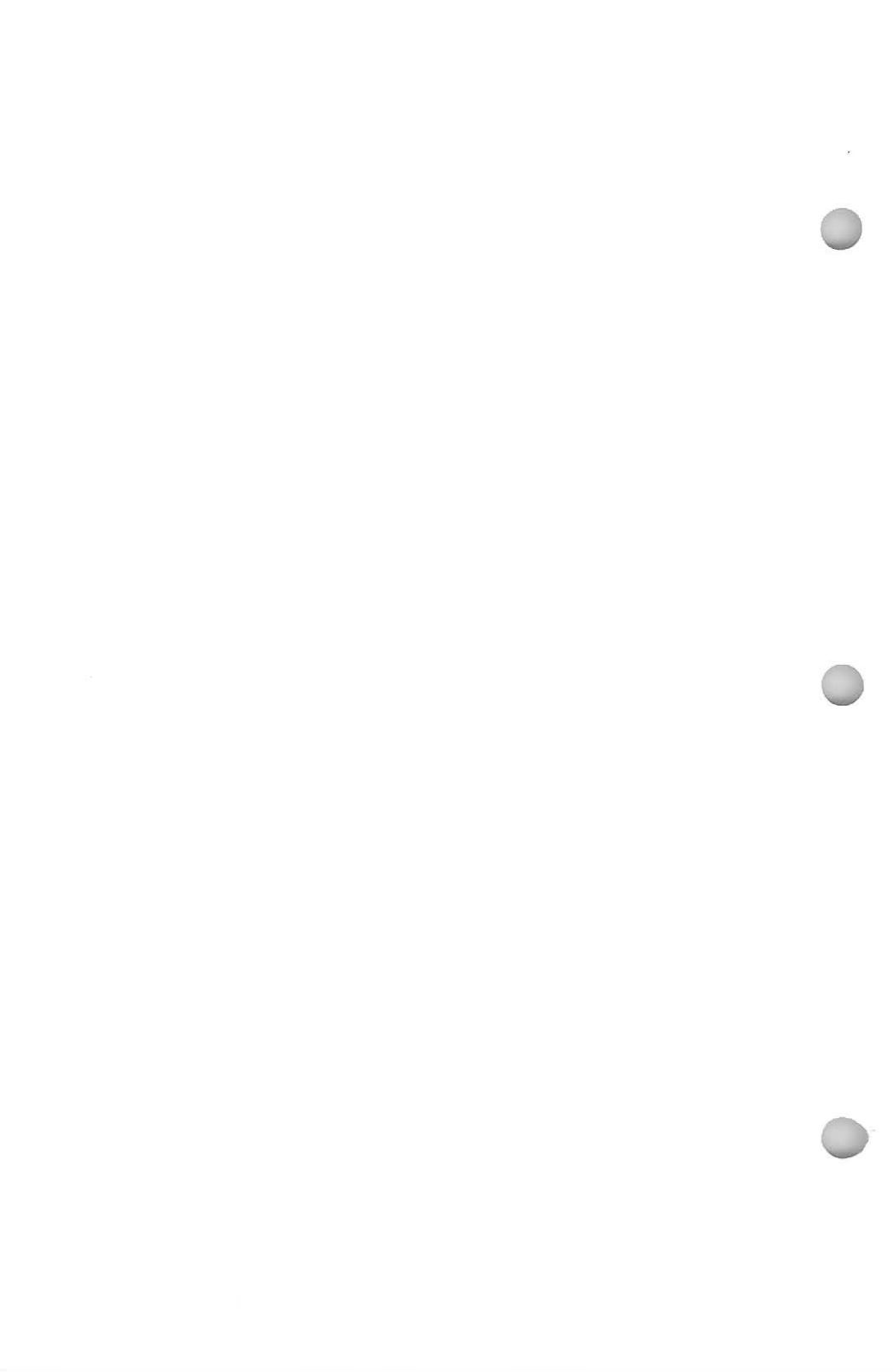
TANDY 1000 TL FINAL ASSEMBLY

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	PART NUMBER
1	DISK DRIVE - 3 1/2" 720KB SONY MP-F11W-70D	8790144
1	BUTTON - DISK EJECT	8719596
3	SCREW - M3 X 5 PPH	8569293
1	CABLE - SIGNAL	8709854
2	RAIL - 5 1/4" DRIVE	8719603
2	CLIP - GROUNDING, DRIVE	8529064
2	SCREW - #6 - 32 X 1/4 PHILLIPS PAN HD	8569098
1	SUPPORT - 3 1/2" DRIVE BRACKET	8729722
1	SPEAKER W/CABLE	8490013
4	SCREW - #6-32 X 5/16	8569339
1	PANEL - REAR	8719602
1	BEZEL - FRONT	8719604
2	LENS	8719560
2	PIN - GUIDE	8739038
1	CASE - TOP	8729686
1	PANEL - DRIVE COVER	8719621
5	SCREW - #6 X 3/8	8569294
2	SCREW - #10-24 UNC 3/8"	8569354
	PHILLIPS OVAL HEAD MACHINE SCREW	
1	BUTTON - RESET, FRONT	8719440
1	BUTTON - RESET, REAR	8719441
1	SPRING - RESET BUTTON	8739018
1	CORD - POWER 18/3 60/C	8709057
1	NAMEPLATE	8719613
1	LABEL - SERIAL UL/FCC	87891642
1	LABEL - SERIAL CSA	87891640
1	LABEL - SERVICE ADVISEMENT (6 LANG)	87891571
1	LABEL - CAUTION (6 LANG)	87891572
1	LABEL - SERIAL INT'L	87891641
1	LABEL - BATTERY WARNING	87891570
1	LABEL - EARTH GROUND	87891253
	INT'L -	
1	LABEL - VIDEO, MONOCHROME COMMAND	87891648
1	KEYBOARD ASSEMBLY	





Main Logic Board



Main Logic Board

Introduction

The main unit is the heart of the Tandy 1000 TL. It houses the main logic assembly, system power supply, and floppy disk drive.

The main logic assembly is a large board mounted to the bottom of the main unit and interconnected to the keyboard, power supply, and disk drive by a series of cables.

The power supply is a 67W switching regulator type, designed to provide adequate power capacity for a fully configured system that has all the option slots in use.

The floppy disk drive uses 3½-inch double-sided, double-density diskettes to read, write, or store data. These are soft sector diskettes. The disk drive assembly comes installed in the main unit. The floppy diskette stores approximately 720K bytes (formatted) of data. All system programs, with the exception of the system startup sequence, are stored on diskette.

Switch Settings and Jumper Pin Configurations

Main Logic Board

<u>Jumper</u>	<u>Function</u>	<u>Default</u>
E1-E2	Select Video Interrupt on IRQ5	E2-E3
E2-E3	Normal Video Interrupt	

<u>Jumper</u>	<u>Function</u>	<u>Default</u>
E6-E7	Select Direct Line Audio Input	E7-E8
E7-E8	Select Mic Audio Input	

Theory of Operation

80286 Microprocessor

The 80286 (U31) is an advanced, high-performance, 16-bit microprocessor with special capabilities for multi-tasking and multi-user systems. Two modes of operation are available in the 80286, the Real Address mode, and the Protected Virtual Address mode. In the Real Address mode, the 80286 is compatible with existing 8086 and 8088 software and allows addressing of one megabyte of memory space. The Tandy 1000 TL does NOT support the Protected Virtual Address mode.

80287 Numerical Math Coprocessor

The 80287 (U60) performs high-speed arithmetic and logarithmic functions and trigonometric operations that increase the performance of an 80286 system. Performance increases are obtained by the 80287's ability to perform math calculations faster than the 80286, and also by executing math instructions in parallel with the 80286.

Clock Generation (Night Blue)

All clocks required by the system are generated by the custom CPU Controller (U17). There are two independent clock circuits supplied by a Dual Oscillator Clock (Y2) from which all other clocks are derived.

The 16 MHz Clock is routed into the CPU Controller, which generates the output signals PRCLK, DMACLK, and SCLK. The Clock Switch circuitry required to toggle the 80286 Microprocessor between 8 MHz and 4 MHz mode, as well as the logic to prevent any short cycling during a clock switch cycle, are implemented in the CPU Controller IC. If the signal XD3 is asserted high during an I/O write to port 062 (hex), then the output signal PRCLK is 16 MHz, which operates the 80286 in 8 MHz mode. If the signal XD3 is asserted low during an I/O write to port 062 (hex), the output signal PRCLK is at 8 MHz, operating the 80286 in the 4 MHz mode. When Reset is generated, the signal RES- is asserted low and defaults the Tandy 1000 TL to the 8 MHz mode.

The CPU Controller Chip also controls wait states to insert the proper number of wait states required for a two clock mode of operation. When the PRCLK signal is 16 MHz (8 MHz Mode), then four wait states are inserted in all 8-bit Memory and I/O cycles. When the signal PRCLK is 8 MHz (4 MHz mode) then two wait states are inserted during all 8-bit Memory and I/O cycles. During all 16-bit memory cycles, only one wait state is inserted in both the 8 MHz and 4 MHz modes.

PRCLK0 is then routed through a damping resistor to produce the signal PRCLK for the 80286, PRCLKA for the 80287 math co-processor, and PRCLKB for the DRAM/DMA control logic.

DMACLK and SCLK are output signals for system use. The DMACLK output frequency is $\frac{1}{4}$ of the PRCLK signal, and the SCLK output frequency is $\frac{1}{2}$ of the PRCLK signal. Both are synchronized by Reset to the PRCLK output signal. After a Reset, DMACLK and SCLK are held low until the 80286 asserts status S1 = 0. SCLK and DMACLK make the first transition on the falling edge of PRCLK, following with a Ts state that synchronizes them to PRCLK.

SCLK is buffered and filtered, then routed to the Expansion Bus for option board use. DMACLK is filtered and then routed to the DMA Controller.

Table 2 shows all the clocks generated from 16 MHz in both modes:

	8 MHz Mode	4 MHz Mode
PRCLK	16 MHz	8 MHz
SCLK	8 MHz	4 MHz
DMACLK	4 MHz	2 MHz

Table 2. Clocks Generated From 16MHz.

Command and Control Signal Generation

The command and control signals required for the Tandy 1000 TL operation are generated by the CPU Controller (U17). The command signals are decoded from the CPU status signals S0- through S1- and M/(IO-) during the Ts cycle. The decoded signals indicate the type of cycle that is to be executed (MEMR, MEMW, IOR-, IOW-, INTA-). The control signals (ALE, DT/R, DSDEN0-, DSDEN1-, MEMCYC) control the latching of addresses, determine the direction and enabling of the data bus buffers, and start a memory cycle. Table 3 indicates the decoding of the CPU status signals.

M/(IO-)	Sl-	S0-	Type of Bus Cycle
0	0	0	Interrupt Acknowledge
0	0	1	I/O Read
0	1	0	I/O Write
0	1	1	None: Idle
1	0	0	Halt or Shutdown
1	0	1	Memory Read
1	1	0	Memory Write
1	1	1	None: Idle

Table 3. CPU Status Signal Decoding.

A0 and BHE- are decoded to determine the data transfer width to and from the CPU. Table 4 shows the data transfer width depending on the state of A0 and BHE-.

BHE-	A0	Width of Data Transfer
0	0	Word Transfer
0	1	Byte Transfer D8 - D15
1	0	Byte Transfer D0 - D7
1	1	Not Used

Table 4. Data Transfer Width Decode.

Command Buffer

Some of the command signals generated by the CPU Controller require buffering to the system. This is accomplished by $\frac{1}{2}$ of an ALS244 (U25) and $\frac{1}{2}$ of another ALS 244 (U9). These ICs buffer the command signals to the system bus for the expansion bus slots, the peripheral devices, and also the Video Controller.

DRAM Control

The CPU address decode for the Dynamic Random Access Memory (DRAM) array is generated by the Custom DRAM/DMA Control IC (U22). These signals are latched by ALE internally to the DRAM/DMA Control IC and held for the complete cycle. The address decode signals are RAS0-, RAS1-, CASL-, and CASH-. Memory configurations supported by the Tandy 1000 TL are 640K bytes or 768K bytes (which includes 128K of video memory). Table 5 shows the different options available on the DRAM/DMA Control IC.

Memory Option	MCI	MC0	System Memory	Total System Memory*	Control	Bank	Address Range
1	0	1	512K	640K	RAS0	512K	000000-07FFFF
2	1	1	640K	768K	RAS0 RAS1	512K 128K	000000-07FFFF 080000-09FFFF

* Note: Total system memory includes 128K of video memory.

Table 5. Memory Configurations.

Port FFEA hex, Bits 6 & 7, control the Memory Configuration Options. See the I/O Map later in this manual for details. MEMCYC triggers the control signals for the DRAM array. The MEMCYC signal (generated by the CPU Controller) indicates that a DRAM bus cycle is in progress. MEMCYC enables RAS0-, RAS1-, CASH-, and CASL-, depending on the address of the bus cycle. The selected RAS(x)- lines become active at the next falling edge of PRCLK.

After $\frac{1}{2}$ PRCLK cycle at the rising edge of the clock, MUX is generated and switches the DRAM address (MA0-MA8) from Row Address to Column Address. After another PRCLK cycle at the next rising edge of the clock, CASL- and/or CASH- are asserted. Two CAS signals are generated internally to the DRAM/DMA Control IC to provide the ability to access word or byte cycles in the DRAM array. Table 6 shows the state of each control signal during each type of bus cycle.

Address Range	Bus Width	RAS0-	RAS1-	CASL-	CASH-
000000-07FFFFH Even	Byte	0	1	0	1
000000-07FFFFH Odd	Byte	0	1	1	0
000000-07FFFFH Even	Word	0	1	0	0
080000-09FFFFH Even	Byte	1	0	0	1
080000-09FFFFH Odd	Byte	1	0	1	0
080000-09FFFFH Even	Word	1	0	0	0

Table 6. Signal State Control Signals.

The signals WE0- and WE1- provide read and write control. Both are asserted at the same time and are controlled by MEMW- (memory write). If WE0- and WE1- are asserted high, it is a read cycle; if they are asserted low, it is a write cycle.

Refresh Control

The REFREQ pin of the KFIT custom IC (U13) generates an active high pulse every 15 usec. The rising edge of the REFREQ signal clocks the 8237 DMA controller. This input to the DMA controller is actually Data Transfer Request 0, (DREQ0), which requests the DMA to perform a DMA cycle. The DMA controller channel 0 has been programmed to perform a single transfer from memory to an I/O device, such as a floppy drive. This causes a memory read at a certain address to be performed. Each time the REFREQ signal is generated, the DMA controller increments the address and performs another memory read. This causes all memory rows to be read every 4ms to keep data in the DRAMS stable. Refer to the section on the DMA controller for more information on DMA cycles.

BIOS ROM Control

The DRAM/DMA IC (U22) provides the CPU address decode used for the ROM select. The signal generated is called ROMCS- (ROM Chip Select) and is used as part of the decode used by PLS173 IFL U44. The PLS173 IFL then generates the ROM Page Selects (RPCS-) and Chip Enable for the BIOS ROMs U54, U55, U56, and U57. This output is asserted whenever any of three addressed ranges is detected, CPHLDA is inactive, and ALE is asserted. The three address ranges are 0E0000-0FFFFFH, EE0000-EFFFFFH, and FE0000-FFFFFH. The address lines SA1-SA15 are provided to the BIOS ROMs for lower address control. The data is buffered onto the MD0-MD15 data bus, controlled by the 82C205 IC.

Reset Circuit

The CPU Control IC (U17) controls the system reset required either to initialize the complete system after power-up or to reboot. Two reset output signals, RESET and RESCPU, are active high and generated when a power-up condition is detected or when the reset button on the front of the computer is pressed.

The RESET signal is used as a general system reset, while the RESCPU signal resets the 80286 Processor. The RES- signal is the input to (U17), which signifies a reset condition. The RES- signal is generated either from an RC network during power up or from the reset switch. During a power-up, RES- is held low for the time period generated by the RC time constant of R41 and C62. This is the time it takes C62 to change to an active high. Also, if the reset switch is pressed, it applies a ground to C62 and discharges it. This asserts RES- low until C62 charges again to a logic high.

During power-up, the RES- signal is generated twice to provide a proper reset to the CPU control IC. A second RC time constant is generated by R27 and C83 to the input of a schmidt trigger inverter (U14). This holds the input pin of U26 ($\frac{1}{2}$ of a 74LS74) high for approximately 150ms. When RESCPU is negated after the first reset, the CPU issues the first command to the CPU control IC by driving SI- low. This generates the first rising edge of DMACLK, which latches into U26. The Q output of U26 is then routed to an open collector inverter, (U6), which discharges C62, again asserting RES- low and generating the second reset. C81 provides a reset to U26 when C62 is discharged to at least .7v. After U26 is reset, RES- is released, and C62 is allowed to charge, negating RES- and finishing the second reset pulse. When the CPU issues the first command again, which starts DMACLK, U26 latches a low. This is because the D input of U26 has transitioned to a low by the end of the second reset.

The CPU Control IC (U17) also internally controls the RESCPU signal to meet the requirements of the 80286 during a detected shutdown condition.

Wait State and Ready Logic

Wait state control is implemented internally to the CPU Control IC. The function of the wait state control logic is to match the speed of the various devices in the Tandy 1000 TL to the speed of the 80286 CPU. Two circuits assert wait states within memory and I/O cycles. One method is controlled by the device being accessed, using the IOCHRDY signal input to the CPU Control IC. If a device requires additional wait states within the bus cycle, the device should negate IOCHRDY low until it can service the bus cycle. After the required number of wait states have been inserted, the device should assert IOCHRDY, causing the READY- output of the CPU Control IC to be asserted low, which tells the CPU to terminate the cycle.

The second method (internal to the CPU Control IC) is several default wait states during the various bus cycles. During a 16-bit memory cycle (which is determined by the assertion of AF16-), one wait state is automatically inserted. The default of an 8-bit memory or I/O cycle is four wait states. This can be overridden by driving IOCHRDY low as mentioned above. As long as IOCHRDY is at a logic low level, wait states are inserted indefinitely.

Note: IOCHRDY should not be held low for longer than 15 usec because it will stop DRAM refresh cycles.

NMI- Logic

In the Tandy 1000 TL, the Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI- indicates an I/O error condition and Numerical Math Coprocessor 80287 condition signal (NMI-). Both error conditions are being enabled by the NMI- signal, which is generated from the System data bus bit SD7, PAL CUL, and I/O write (IOW-. The INT287- signal (from the CPU Control IC) becomes active when the ERROR- signal is asserted by the Numerical Math Coprocessor.

80287 Control Logic

Incorporated into the CPU Control IC is the logic required to interface the 80287 Math Coprocessor to the 80286 CPU. This logic decodes the signals that select and reset the 80287 and also handles the Busy/(Error-) signals from the 80287 to the CPU.

The input signal 287CS- is a user I/O address decoded signal used by the CPU Control IC to generate the control signals to the 80287 IC. The 287CS- signal is asserted during I/O address 0F0h - 0FFh. Further decoding is provided by the CPU Control IC, which generates RES287-, NPCS-, and BUSY287- signals. Table 7 defines the internal decode.

Hex Address	Description
0F0	Clear Math Coprocessor Busy
0F1	Reset Math Coprocessor Busy
0F8-0FF	Math Coprocessor Chip Select

Table 7. 287CS- Decode.

Given the command to perform a task, the 80287 coprocessor issues a BUSY- signal to the CPU Control IC. With the assertion of the BUSY287- output, this signal is passed to the CPU. Normally the BUSY- input is passed through to the BUSY287- output. Deassertion of BUSY- results in deassertion of BUSY287-. The BUSY287- output is latched, and the INT287- output pin is forced HIGH during this busy period if the ERROR- input becomes active (signaling a Numerical Processor error). Until cleared by an I/O write cycle to address 0F0h or 0F1h, both signals then remain active. Both the interrupt latch for INT287- and the busy latch for BUSY287- are cleared after a system reset.

The CPU Control IC's RES287 output pin handles resetting of the 80287 coprocessor. This can be activated by a system reset or an I/O write to address 0F1h. This signal is active only for the period of time that the source signal is active, as it is not latched internally.

CPU Address Buffers

(U30), (U43), and (U27) 74ALS573 implement buffering of the address lines to the system. SA01-SA19 are buffered and latched for the expansion bus slots and I/O peripherals. ALE is used to latch SA01-SA19 and held for the complete bus cycle. SA01-SA19 are also used to address the BIOS ROMS and DRAM/DMA Control. A17-A23 are routed directly to DRAM/DMA control to generate memory address decoded signals. The multiplexed address lines MA0-MA7 are also generated and buffered to the DRAM memory by the DRAM/DMA Control IC. To meet address requirements for the DRAMs, the MUX signal multiplexes SA1-SA16 internally to the DRAM/DMA Control IC.

During a DMA cycle, a 74LS245 (U43), is used to buffer S0-S7 directly from the DMA controller. S8-S16 are buffered internally to the DRAM/DMA controller. S17-S19 are buffered by AU7 ($\frac{1}{2}$ of a 74ALS244).

Data Buffers and Conversion Logic

The 82A205 IC (U61) provides the data buses, buffers, and drivers for D0-D15 to the system. Three data buses are generated, SD0-SD7 for the expansion bus slots, MD0-MD15 for memory access from ROM and DRAM, and D0-D15, which is routed to the 80286 CPU and 80287 Coprocessor data bus. The direction and control of the data buffers are provided by the input signals to the 82A205 IC (DT/R, DSDEN0-, DSDEN1-, SBHE-, and SA0).

DT/R controls the direction of the data path during a read or write. The DSDEN0- and DSDEN1- signals control the word and byte data transfers, while SBHE- and SA0 determine the buffers to be enabled during a byte access.

Conversion logic is also implemented in the 82A205 IC, controlled by ENHLB- and DIRHLB. This conversion logic allows data to be transferred from the lower to upper or upper to lower data byte to meet the requirements of the CPU or receiving device.

I/O Decode

Two PLS173 IFLs accomplish the I/O Address decoding. These two ICs provide all the necessary chip select signals to the system. The A, B, and C output signals of the PLS173 IFL (U42) are encoded device select lines that are fed directly to the PLS173 IFL (U44), in which I/O address decoding is generated. The second PLS173 (U44) decodes the system address to generate the other I/O address decode select signals. Refer to the Tandy 1000 TL I/O Map for details.

Floppy Disk Controller

The on-board Floppy Disk Controller (FDC) and KFIT custom IC interface the system to the Floppy Disk Drive (FDD). Up to three floppy disk drives can be supported.

The FDC circuit can be organized into the following subsections:

- . uPD765A FDC Chip
- . System Interface
- . Clock Generation
- . Precompensation
- . Data Separator
- . Disk Drive Interface

uPD765A Chip. The uPD765A FDC chip (U23) integrates most of the control logic necessary to:

- . interface the Serial bit stream to or from the FDD to the parallel bus of the system
- . implement the commands necessary to operate the FDD
- . maintain information about the status of the FDD

During a read or write data operation to the FDD, the FDC chip generates a DMA request for a byte transfer to or from memory. The FDC chip continues to generate DMA requests until the preprogrammed amount of data is transferred as signified by generation of a Termination Count (TC) Signal. After the TC is reached, the FDC chip generates an interrupt to the system through INT so that status and result data can be serviced.

Refer to the device data sheet for complete descriptions of the available commands and the command and status registers.

System Interface. Various ICs, along with the KF1T custom IC, latch and buffer data to and from the system. A DOR Write (Digital Output Register) is generated on an I/O write to port 3F2 (hex). This signal latches the data byte that is bit defined as the Drive Select, DS0-, DS1-, and DS2-, Motor On, MTRON-, DMA, (FDCDRQ), Interrupt Request (FDCINT), and a reset signal (FDCRST-) to the FDC controller U23.

Clock Generation. The FDC Support IC (U15) generates all clocks required by the Floppy Disk circuit. These clocks are derived from a 16 MHz input signal. FDCCLK, required by the FDC Controller (U23), is derived by dividing the 16 MHz clock by 4. The resulting 4 MHz clock is also used as a delay counter for the DMA request signal DRQ as well as a reference clock for the write precompensation circuit. The 4 MHz clock also generates a 250 nanosecond pulse at a frequency of 500 KHz. The 500 KHz signal is used as a write clock for the FDC Controller.

Precompensation. The precompensation circuit is implemented internally to the FDC Support IC (U15). The write data bit can be shifted either early or late in the serial bit stream, depending on the requirements of the Floppy Disk Drive. This function is programmable and controlled by the FDC IC signals PS0 and PS1.

Data Separator. The FDC Support IC (U15) also contains the data separator circuit. The data separator recovers the clock and data signals from the serial bit stream of the Floppy Disk Drive. The FDC Support IC supports only MFM or Double-density mode.

Disk Drive Interface. All FDC outputs to the FDD are driven by high current open collector buffers inside the KFIT custom IC. All FDC inputs from the FDD are buffered by 74HCT14 SCHMIDT triggered inverters. The inputs are pulled up on-board by 1K ohm terminating resistors. All outputs should be terminated on the last FDD by 1K ohm resistors.

Interrupt Controller

The Interrupt Controller is contained in the KFIT custom IC (U13) and supplies the maskable interrupt input to the CPU. The KFIT custom IC has eight interrupt inputs controlled through software commands. It can mask (disable) and prioritize (arrange priority) to generate the interrupt input to the CPU. The eight interrupts are assigned as follows:

#0	Timer Channel 0	Software Timer
#1	Keyboard	Keyboard Code Received
#2	Interrupt on the Bus	Optional Bus Interrupt
#3	Interrupt on the Bus	Modem (COM2)
#4	Interrupt on the Bus	RS-232 (COM1)
#5	Interrupt on the Bus	Hard Disk Controller/ Vertical Sync
#6	Floppy Disk Controller	Optional Bus Interrupt
#7	Printer	Optional Bus Interrupt

Interrupts 0 and 1 are connected to system board functions as indicated in the chart. Interrupts 2-7 are connected directly to the Expansion Bus, with the normal assigned functions listed in the chart.

Video Controller

The next major block of the Tandy 1000 TL is the video interface circuitry. This custom part contains all the logic necessary to generate an IBM-compatible color video display. The video interface logic consists of the 100-pin custom video circuit (U19), four 64K X 4 DRAMS (U32, U33, U34, and U35), a 74LS244 buffer (U8), and associated logic for generating composite and RGBI video.

The Tandy 1000 TL video interface circuitry controls 128K of memory. This DRAM is shared by the CPU and the video. Normally, the video requires only 16K or 64K for the video screen, and the remainder of the 128K is available for system memory use.

The Tandy 1000 TL video interface custom circuit is composed of a 6845 equivalent design, dynamic RAM address generation/timing, and video attribute controller logic.

Normal function of the video interface custom circuit is as follows. After the 6845 is programmed with a correct set of operating values, a 6:1 multiplexer generates the address inputs to the dynamic RAMs. This MUX switches between video (6845) address and CPU address as well as between row and column address. Also, the video interface chip provides the RAM timing signals and generates a wait signal, VIDWT-, to the CPU for proper synchronization with the video RAM access cycles.

The outputs from the RAM chips are connected only to the video interface custom circuit, so all CPU read/write operations are buffered by this part. During a normal display cycle, video data from the RAM chips is first latched in the Video Attribute latch and the Video Character latch. The video interface requires a memory organization of 64K X 16 and latches 16 bits of memory during each access to RAM. From the output of the two latches, the data is supplied to the character ROM for the alpha modes or to the shift registers for the graphics modes. A final 2:1 MUX switches between foreground or background in the alpha modes.

From the 2:1 MUX, the RGBI data is combined with the PC color select data and latched in the Pre-Palette latch. This latch synchronizes the RGBI data before it is used to address the Palette. The Palette mask MUX switches between incoming RGBI data and the Palette address register. During a CPU write to the Palette, this address register selects one of the 16 Palette locations. Also, the Palette mask MUX allows any of the input RGBI bits to be set to zero.

The Palette allows the 16 colors to be remapped in any desired organization. Normally, the Palette is set for a 1:1 mapping (red = red, blue = blue, and so on) for PC compatibility. However, instantly changing the on-screen colors is a powerful tool for animation or graphics programs.

After the Palette, the RGBI data is resynchronized in the Post Palette register. The final logic before the RGBI data is buffered off the chip is the Border MUX. This MUX allows the Border to be replaced with any color selected by the border color latch. This latch is normally disabled in PC modes, but it is used in all PC jr modes.

Timer

The final Tandy 1000 TL function, other than I/O, is the timer found in the KFIT custom IC (U13). This part is composed of three independent programmable counters. The clock for all three counters is 1.1925 MHz, which is derived from 14 MHz/12. Counters 0 and 1 are permanently enabled. Counter 2 is controlled by port Hex 0061, Bit 0. Counter 0 is connected to system interrupt 0 and is used for software timing functions. Counter 1 is used for refresh function timing. Counter 2 is connected to the sound circuit and also to port Hex 0062, Bit 5.

Joystick Interface

The joystick interface contained in the PSSJ custom IC (U11) converts positional information from hand-held joysticks (1 or 2) into CPU data. Each joystick provides one or two push-buttons and X,Y position for a total of four bits each. You can use two joysticks.

The joystick handle is connected to two potentiometers mounted perpendicular to each other; one for X position, one for Y position. Through the cable, the main logic board applies +5 VDC to one side and ground to the other of the pots. The pot wiper is the position signal: a voltage between 0 and +5 VDC. This signal is applied to one input of a comparator HU2. The other comparator input is the reference signal (a ramp between 0.0 to +5.0 volts).

When the position signal is equal to or less than the reference signal, the comparator output goes true. This comparator output is the X or Y position data bit. The ramp is reset to 0.0 VDC whenever an I/O Write is made at Port 200/201 Hex. The joystick information is "read" by the CPU at Port 200/201 Hex through U11. See the Joystick Block Diagram.

Keyboard Interface

The next I/O function of the Tandy 1000 TL is the Keyboard interface custom circuit, part of the KFIT custom IC. The heart of this custom part is several read/write registers that are used to control the keyboard interface logic. For the interface to the keyboard connector, a 164- type shift register is used to load the serial data and allow the CPU to read it as 8 parallel bits.

Sound Out Circuit

The sound circuit is one of the five I/O functions of the Tandy 1000 TL. The circuit provides sound output for the internal speaker as well as for an external sound circuit.

The main source of sound in the Tandy 1000 TL is the PSSJ custom IC (U11). It contains the equivalent of a 76496 complex sound generator. This device has three tone generators and one white noise generator. Each tone generator can be programmed for frequency and attenuation. Also, this device has an audio input pin connected to the gated output of timer channel 2. This audio input signal is mixed with the sound generator signal and supplied to the audio output pin.

From the output of the 76496, the sound signal is connected to a dual analog multiplexer. The multiplexer is switched by Port 61, Bit 4, and turns off the audio signal to the speaker, headphone jacks, and external audio output. The output of the multiplexer is routed to audio amplifiers U71 for the internal speaker and headphone jacks. The volume of the internal speaker can be adjusted by a user-accessible volume control (R59). When the headphone jack is used, the internal speaker is disabled.

Sound In Circuit

An additional feature of the Tandy 1000 TL sound circuitry is a Digital to Analog Converter (DAC). The DAC is controlled by read/write Ports C4-C7. The DAC can be used to convert pre-recorded digital sound, voice, or music into analog audio output. A microphone jack and audio input circuitry are provided for recording analog sound, voice or music, and converting it to digital data. A set of jumpers is provided with the sound circuit to allow selection between microphone and direct line input. Jumpers E11 to E12 select microphone input, and jumpers E12 to E13 select direct line input. The audio input signal is fed through an amplifier, U72, and increased by a multiple of 100, before being sent to the AUDIOIN pin of the PSSJ custom IC. When direct line input is selected, the audio input signal is reduced in amplitude by resistors R57A and R56A before being sent to amplifier U72. Bit programming data for these ports is available in the data sheets on the 8079021 Custom IC located in the "Devices" section of this manual.

Real-time Clock

The Real-time Clock in the Tandy 1000 TL system is the Dallas Semiconductor® DS1215. Its input is derived from a 32.768 KHz crystal CY1. When system power is removed, operation of the DS1215 is maintained by a 3v battery.

The DS1215 is capable of operating in both 12-Hour mode, with an AM/PM indicator, or 24-Hour mode. The real-time clock is initialized by reading a consecutive 64-bit stream with SA2 high and the ROMCS- signal asserted. Then another 64-bit read or write may be done to set, read, or update the clock. The 64-bit pattern is programmed into 8 8-bit registers in the DS1215. All 8 registers must be programmed at the same time, and must be sent from Register 0 to Register 7. The DS1215 is automatically disabled after the 64-bit stream is read. Register and bit definition for the DS1215 can be found in the data sheets on the DS1215 in the "Devices" section of this manual.

DMA Controller

The major components of the Direct Memory Access (DMA) circuit consists of an 8237A-5 DMA controller (U11), the DRAM/DMA Control (U53), and a bi-directional address buffer 74ALS245 (U3).

Initialization--A DMA Operation. When a DMA operation is requested by software or by a peripheral through a DREQ line, the 8237A-5 DMA controller initiates a Bus Hold Request to the 80286 CPU through the CPU Controller IC. The CPU Controller arbitrates the CPU Hold Request from the DMA controller to the CPU.

When the CPU acknowledges the Hold request, the CPU control, address, and data lines are tri-stated. The CPU Controller controls the direction and enables the memory or peripheral address and data buses that correspond to the requested DMA operation.

During the DMA operation, the 8237A-5 acts as the bus master and, along with the CPU Controller IC, generates all bus control signals and address and data signals. The DMA transfers continue for the number of counts and to the destination address that was previously programmed into the DMA registers. See the device data sheet and the IO map for complete descriptions of the registers, their locations, and their functions.

DMA Bus Cycles. During the data bus cycle, the 8237A-5 first outputs the upper address (A8-A15) on its data outputs (XD0-XD7), to be latched in the buffer internally to the DRAM/DMA Control by the Address Strobe signal (AS) from the 8237A-5. Next, the lower address (A0-A7) is put directly on the S address bus by the 8237A-5.

The DMA request acknowledge signals, DACK2 and DACK3-, are used along with RFRSH- and ACK* to enable the page register to be output as the upper address (SA16 and A17 through A23), which are buffered by U22 to the system expansion slots.

A DMA bus cycle can be extended by the RDY input of the DMA controller. The DMA memory read DMAMR is routed to the CPU Controller IC for extending the DMA bus cycle by inserting on DMA clock period as a wait state. The CPU Controller inserts the wait state by controlling the DMARDY input of the DMA controller.

I/O devices can extend the DMA bus cycle by controlling the IOCHRDY signal of the expansion bus. Setup times must be observed for IOCHRDY to be recognized.

RS-232 Serial Port Interface

The RS-232 Port is a single-channel, asynchronous communications port. The heart of the serial port is the PSSJ custom IC that functions as a serial data input/output interface. It performs serial-to-parallel conversion on data characters received from a peripheral device or modem and parallel-to-serial conversion on data characters received from the CPU.

Status information reported includes the type and condition of the ACE's transfer operations as well as any error conditions detected during serial data operations. The PSSJ custom IC includes a programmable Baud Rate Generator that allows operation from 50 to 9600 Baud. The PSSJ custom IC is supplied with a clock of 14 MHz from oscillator (Y2). The PSSJ can be tailored to the user's requirements by being able to remove start bits, stop bits, and parity bits. It supports 5, 6, 7, or 8 data bit characters with 1, 1½, or 2 stop bits. Diagnostic capabilities provide loopback functions of transmit/receive and input/output signals.

The PSSJ serial port is programmed by selecting the I/O address 3F8 - 3FE hex for primary and 2FB-2FE hex for secondary and writing data out to the port. Address bits A0, A1, and A2 are used to define the modes of operation by selecting the different registers to be programmed or read.

One interrupt is provided to the system from IRQ4 for primary operation and IRQ3 for secondary operation. This interrupt is active high. Bit 3 of the modem control register must be set high in order to send interrupts to the system. When this bit is high, any interrupts allowed by the interrupt enable register cause an interrupt.

Parallel Printer Port Interface

The final I/O interface of the Tandy 1000 TL is the Printer Interface contained in the PSSJ custom IC (U11). This part supplies all the signals required to interface to a typical parallel printer. These signals are 8 data out lines, plus various handshake control signals. Also, the printer interface generates an interrupt to the CPU if enabled.

Expansion Ports

System Expansion Bus

This section identifies the I/O interface requirements for the 8-bit, PC-compatible option cards. Each of the five slots has a 62-pin connector socket.

The following connector pin assignment is used on the PC option slots; this connector socket has 62 pins.

<u>Pin</u>	<u>Signal Name</u>	<u>I/O</u>	<u>Pin</u>	<u>Signal Name</u>	<u>I/O</u>
A1	NMI-				
A2	SD7	I/O	B2	BRESET	O
A3	SD6	I/O	B3	+5V	POWER
A4	SD5	I/O	B4	IRQ2	I
A5	SD4	I/O	B5	-5V	POWER
A6	SD3	I/O	B6	FDCDRQ	I
A7	SD2	I/O	B7	-12V	POWER
A8	SD1	I/O	B8	N/C	
A9	SD0	I/O	B9	+12V	POWER
A10	IOCHRDY	I	B10	GND	GROUND
A11	AEN	O	B11	SMEMW-	O
A12	SA19	O	B12	SMEMR-	O
A13	SA18	O	B13	IOW-	O
A14	SA17	O	B14	IOR-	O
A15	SA16	O	B15	DACK3-	O
A16	SA15	O	B16	DRQ3	I
A17	SA14	O	B17	DACK1-	O
A18	SA13	O	B18	DRQ1	I
A19	SA12	O	B19	RFRSH-	O
A20	SA11	O	B20	SCLK	O
A21	SA10	O	B21	IRQ7	I
A22	SA9	O	B22	IRQ6	I
A23	SA8	O	B23	IRQ5	I
A24	SA7	O	B24	IRQ4	I
A25	SA6	O	B25	IRQ3	I
A26	SA5	O	B26	FDCDACK-	O
A27	SA4	O	B27	T/C	O
A28	SA3	O	B28	BALE	O
A29	SA2	O	B29	+5V	POWER
A30	SA1	O	B30	OSC	O
A31	SA0	O	B31	GND	GROUND

Expansion Bus Signal Description

The following signal descriptions for the System I/O Bus are for PC bus-compatible option cards. Note that all signal lines are TTL compatible levels and that I/O adapters should be designed with a maximum of two low power Shottky (LS) loads per line.

SCLK (B20). SCLK is the System clock and has a period of 125ns in 8 MHz mode, or 250ns in 4 MHz mode. It has a 50% duty cycle and is used only for synchronization with the CPU. It is not intended for uses requiring a fixed frequency.

SA0 through SA19 (A12-A31). These lines are 20 address bits used to address memory and I/O devices within the Tandy 1000 TL. They are gated on the system bus when the BALE signal is high and are latched on the falling edge of the BALE signal. Generation of these signals is accomplished by the CPU or a DMA controller. SA0-SA19 are active high.

BALE (B28). BALE is a Buffered Address Latch Enable generated by the CPU Control IC. It is used to latch valid addresses from the CPU, and can be used by an I/O board to indicate a valid CPU address, in conjunction with AEN. BALE is pulled to a high state during DMA cycles, which include Refresh cycles. BALE is active high.

AEN (A11). AEN is an Address Enable signal used to remove the CPU and other devices from the bus to allow DMA transfers to take place. During AEN active, the DMA controller has control of the address bus, the data bus, the READ command lines, and the WRITE command lines. AEN is active high.

SD0 through SD7 (A2-A9). These signals are the data bus Bits 0 through 7 from the CPU to memory and I/O devices on the bus. SDO is the least significant bit (lsb), and SD7 is the most significant bit (msb).

BRESET (B2). BRESET is used to reset or initialize the expansion logic during power-up time, line voltage outage, or when the Reset switch on the front panel is pressed. BRESET is active high.

NMI- (A1). This signal indicates an uncorrectable system error when active. The NMI- signal provides the system board with parity information about memory or devices on the bus. NMI- is active low.

IOCHRDY (A10). This signal is used to lengthen I/O or memory cycles when driven low by the active device. (This signal should not be held low more than 15 microseconds.) Any slow device using this line should drive it low immediately upon detecting its valid address and a READ or WRITE command. See the timing diagram for setup times. IOCHRDY is active high (Ready condition).

IRQ2 through IRQ7 (B4, B21-B25). These signals are used to tell the CPU that an I/O device needs attention. The Interrupt Requests are prioritized with IRQ2 having the highest priority and IRQ7 the lowest. An Interrupt Request is generated when any IRQ signal is driven high and held high until the CPU acknowledges the interrupt.

IOR- (B14). IOR- is a read signal that instructs an I/O device to drive its data onto the data bus (SD0-SD7). This line can be driven by the CPU Control IC or by the DMA controller. IOR- is active low.

IOW- (B13). IOW- is a write signal that instructs an I/O device to read, or latch, the data from the data bus (SD0-SD7). This line can be driven by the CPU Control IC or by the DMA controller. IOW- is active low.

SMEMR- (B12). SMEMR- is a read signal that instructs a memory device to drive its data onto the data bus (SD0-SD7). This line can be driven by the CPU Control IC or by the DMA controller through the CPU Control IC. SMEMR- is active only when the memory address is within the first 1 megabyte range (000000-0FFFFFFH). SMEMR- is active low.

SMEMW- (B11). SMEMW- is a write signal that instructs a memory device to read, or latch, the data from the data bus (SD0-SD7). This line can be driven by the CPU Control IC or by the DMA controller through the CPU Control IC. SMEMW- is active only when the memory address is within the first 1 megabyte range (000000-0FFFFFFH). SMEMW- is active low.

DRQ1, FDCDRQ, and DRQ3 (B18, B6, B16). These lines are asynchronous DMA requests by peripheral devices to gain DMA service. They are prioritized with DRQ1 having the highest priority, FDCDRQ next, and DRQ3 lowest. A DMA request is generated by driving a DRQ line active high and holding it until the corresponding DACK (DMA acknowledge) signal goes active. DRQ1, FDCDRQ, and DRQ3 perform only 8-bit transfers. All DRQ lines are active high.

DACK1-, FDCACK-, and DACK3-, B26, B15). These lines are DMA acknowledge signals used to acknowledge DMA requests DRQ1, FDCDRQ, and DRQ3. All DACK signals are active low.

RFRSH- (B19). This signal is used to indicate a refresh cycle that can be used by a memory board to refresh Dynamic memory. RFRSH- is active low and generated every 15 usec.

T/C (B27). T/C is a signal that provides a pulse when the terminal count for any DMA channel is reached. T/C is active high.

OSC (B30). OSC is an oscillator signal that is a high-speed clock with a 70 nanosecond period (14.31818 megahertz). It has a 50% duty cycle.

Memory Map

Memory Map

Address	Name	Allocated Function
000000-07FFFF	512K System RAM	System Memory
080000-09FFFF	128K System/Video RAM or 128K Expansion Memory	System Memory and Video Display Memory or System Memory
0A0000-0BFFFF	128K Video RAM	Reserved for Graphics Display Memory
0E0000-0FFFFFF, EE0000-FFFFFF, or FE0000-FFFFFF	16K BIOS ROM Memory	Reserved for BIOS ROM Memory

I/O Port Map of System

I/O Port Map Summary

Block	Usage	Function
0000-001F	0000-000F	DMA Function
0020-003F	0020-0027	Interrupt Controller
0040-005F	0040-0047	Timer
0060-007F	0060-0067	PIO Function
0080-009F	0080-008F	DMA Page Register
00A0-00BF	00A0-00A7	NMI- Mask Register
00C0-00DF	00C0-00C7	Sound Generator
00E0-00FF	00F0-00FF	Numerical Coprocessor
0100-01FF		Reserved
0200-020F	0200-0207	Joystick Interface
0210-02F7		Reserved
02F8-02FF	02F8-02FF	Serial Port Secondary (COM2 optional)
0300-031F		Reserved
0320-032F		Hard Disk Controller (optional)
0330-036F		Reserved
0370-0377	0370-0377	Floppy Disk Controller 2 (optional)
0378-037F	0378-037F	Printer
0380-03CF		Reserved
03D0-03DF	03D0-03DF	System Video
03E0-03EF		Reserved
03F0-03F7	03F0-03F7	Floppy Disk Controller 1
03F8-03FF	03F8-03FF	Serial Port Primary (COM1)
0400-FFE7		Not Used
FFE8-FFEF	FFE8-FFEF	System Control Registers
FFF0-FFFF		Reserved

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
0000	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 0 Base and Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write A8-A15 IOR- = 0: Channel 0 Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read A8-A15
0001	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 0 Base and Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write AW-W15 IOR- = 0: Channel 0 Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read W8-W15
0002	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 1 Base and Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write A8-A15 IOR- = 0: Channel 1 Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read A8-A15
0003	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 1 Base and Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write AW-W15 IOR- = 0: Channel 1 Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read W8-W15
0004	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 2 Base and Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write A8-A15 IOR- = 0: Channel 2 Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read A8-A15
0005	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 2 Base and Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write AW-W15 IOR- = 0: Channel 2 Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read W8-W15

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>																
0006	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 3 Base and Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write A8-A15 IOR- = 0: Channel 3 Current Address Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read A0-A7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read A8-A15																
0007	DMA Controller IOW- = 0: Channel 3 Base and Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Write W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Write AW-W15 IOR- = 0: Channel 3 Current Word Count Internal Flip/Flop = 0: Read W0-W7 Internal Flip/Flop = 1: Read W8-W15																
0008	DMA Controller IOW- = 0, Write Command Register Bit Description <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>0 = Memory to Memory Disable 1 = Memory to Memory Enable</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>0 = Channel 0 Address Hold Disable 1 = Channel 0 Address Hold Enable X If Bit 0 = 0</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>0 = Controller Enable 1 = Controller Disable</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>0 = Normal Timing 1 = Compressed Timing X If Bit 0 = 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>0 = Fixed Priority 1 = Rotating Priority</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>0 = Late Write Selection 1 = Extended Write Selection X If Bit 3 = 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>6</td><td>0 = DREQ Sense Active High 1 = DREQ Sense Active Low</td></tr> <tr> <td>7</td><td>0 = DACK Sense Active Low 1 = DACK Sense Active High</td></tr> </table>	0	0 = Memory to Memory Disable 1 = Memory to Memory Enable	1	0 = Channel 0 Address Hold Disable 1 = Channel 0 Address Hold Enable X If Bit 0 = 0	2	0 = Controller Enable 1 = Controller Disable	3	0 = Normal Timing 1 = Compressed Timing X If Bit 0 = 1	4	0 = Fixed Priority 1 = Rotating Priority	5	0 = Late Write Selection 1 = Extended Write Selection X If Bit 3 = 1	6	0 = DREQ Sense Active High 1 = DREQ Sense Active Low	7	0 = DACK Sense Active Low 1 = DACK Sense Active High
0	0 = Memory to Memory Disable 1 = Memory to Memory Enable																
1	0 = Channel 0 Address Hold Disable 1 = Channel 0 Address Hold Enable X If Bit 0 = 0																
2	0 = Controller Enable 1 = Controller Disable																
3	0 = Normal Timing 1 = Compressed Timing X If Bit 0 = 1																
4	0 = Fixed Priority 1 = Rotating Priority																
5	0 = Late Write Selection 1 = Extended Write Selection X If Bit 3 = 1																
6	0 = DREQ Sense Active High 1 = DREQ Sense Active Low																
7	0 = DACK Sense Active Low 1 = DACK Sense Active High																

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
0008	DMA Controller IOR- = 0, Read Status Register
	Bit Description
	0 1 = Channel 0 Has Reached TC
	1 1 = Channel 1 Has Reached TC
	2 1 = Channel 2 Has Reached TC
	3 1 = Channel 3 Has Reached TC
	4 1 = Channel 0 Request
	5 1 = Channel 1 Request
	6 1 = Channel 2 Request
	7 1 = Channel 3 Request
0009	DMA Controller IOW- = 0, Write Request Register
	Bit Description
0-1	Bit 1 Bit 0
	0 0 Select Channel 0
	0 1 Select Channel 1
	1 0 Select Channel 2
	1 1 Select Channel 3
2	0 Reset Request Bit
	1 Set Request Bit
3-7	Don't Care
	IOR- = 0, Illegal
000A	DMA Controller IOW- = 0, Write Single Mask Register
	Bit Description
0-1	Bit 1 Bit 0
	0 0 Select Channel 0 Mask Bit
	0 1 Select Channel 1 Mask Bit
	1 0 Select Channel 2 Mask Bit
	1 1 Select Channel 3 Mask Bit
2	0 Clear Mask Bit (Enable Channel)
	1 Set Mask Bit (Disable Channel)
3-7	Don't Care
	IOR- = 0, Illegal

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>															
000B	DMA Controller															
	IOW- = 0, Write Mode Register															
	Bit Description															
0-1	<table><tr><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Channel 0 Select</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Channel 1 Select</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Channel 2 Select</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Channel 3 Select</td></tr></table>	Bit 1	Bit 0		0	0	Channel 0 Select	0	1	Channel 1 Select	1	0	Channel 2 Select	1	1	Channel 3 Select
Bit 1	Bit 0															
0	0	Channel 0 Select														
0	1	Channel 1 Select														
1	0	Channel 2 Select														
1	1	Channel 3 Select														
2-3	<table><tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Verify Transfer</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Write Transfer To Memory</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Read Transfer To Memory</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Illegal</td></tr></table>	Bit 3	Bit 2		0	0	Verify Transfer	0	1	Write Transfer To Memory	1	0	Read Transfer To Memory	1	1	Illegal
Bit 3	Bit 2															
0	0	Verify Transfer														
0	1	Write Transfer To Memory														
1	0	Read Transfer To Memory														
1	1	Illegal														
X	If Bits 6 and 7 = 11															
4	<table><tr><td>0</td><td>Autoinitialization Enable</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Autoinitialization Disable</td></tr></table>	0	Autoinitialization Enable	1	Autoinitialization Disable											
0	Autoinitialization Enable															
1	Autoinitialization Disable															
5	<table><tr><td>0</td><td>Address Increment Select</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Address Decrement Select</td></tr></table>	0	Address Increment Select	1	Address Decrement Select											
0	Address Increment Select															
1	Address Decrement Select															
6-7	<table><tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Demand Mode Select</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Single Mode Select</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Block Mode Select</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Cascade Mode Select</td></tr></table>	Bit 7	Bit 6		0	0	Demand Mode Select	0	1	Single Mode Select	1	0	Block Mode Select	1	1	Cascade Mode Select
Bit 7	Bit 6															
0	0	Demand Mode Select														
0	1	Single Mode Select														
1	0	Block Mode Select														
1	1	Cascade Mode Select														
	IOR- = 0, Illegal															
000C	DMA Controller															
	IOW- = 0, Clear Byte Pointer Flip/Flop															
	IOR- = 0, Illegal															
000D	DMA Controller															
	IOW- = 0, Master Clear															
	IOR- = 0, Read Temporary Register															
000E	DMA Controller															
	IOW- = 0, Clear Mask Register															
	IOR- = 0, Illegal															

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
----------------	--------------------

000F	DMA Controller
	IOW- = 0, Write All Mask Register Bits

Bit	Description
-----	-------------

0	0 = Clear Channel 0 Mask Bit (Enable) 1 = Set Channel 0 Mask Bit (Disable)
1	0 = Clear Channel 1 Mask Bit (Enable) 1 = Set Channel 1 Mask Bit (Disable)
2	0 = Clear Channel 2 Mask Bit (Enable) 1 = Set Channel 2 Mask Bit (Disable)
3	0 = Clear Channel 3 Mask Bit (Enable) 1 = Set Channel 3 Mask Bit (Disable)

4-7	Don't Care
-----	------------

IOR-	= 0, Illegal
------	--------------

0010-001F	Reserved
-----------	----------

0020	8259A Interrupt Controller
------	----------------------------

Note: Initialization Words are set up by the operating system and are generally not to be changed. Writing an initialization word might cancel pending interrupts.

Bit 4	= 1 Initialization Command Word 1
-------	-----------------------------------

Bit 0	= 0 ICW4 Needed = 1 ICW4 Not Needed
-------	--

Bit 1	= 0 Cascade Mode = 1 Single Mode
-------	-------------------------------------

Bit 2	Not Used
-------	----------

Bit 3	= 0 Edge Triggered Mode = 1 Level Triggered Mode
-------	---

Bit 5-7	Not Used
---------	----------

Bit 4	= 0 & Operation Control Word 2
-------	--------------------------------

Address	Description
---------	-------------

0020	8259A Interrupt Controller
------	----------------------------

Bit 3 = 0 Bits 0-2: Determine the Interrupt Level Acted on when the SL Bit is Active

Interrupt Level = 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Bit 0 (L0): 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1

Bit 1 (L1): 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

Bit 2 (L2): 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1

Bits 5-7: Control Rotate and End of Interrupt Modes

B7 B6 B5

0 0 1 Non-Specific EOI Command End of Interrupt

0 1 1 Specific EOI Command End of Interrupt

1 0 1 Rotate on Non-Specific EOI Auto Rotation

1 0 0 Rotate in Automatic EOI Mode (Set) Auto Rotation

0 0 0 Rotate in Automatic EOI Mode (Clear) Auto Rotation

1 1 1 *Rotate on Specific EOI Command Specific Rotation

1 1 0 *Set Priority Command Specific Rotation

0 1 0 No Operation

(*L0 - L2 Are Used)

Bit 4 = 0 & Operation Control Word 3

Bit 3 = 1 Bits 0-1:

Bit 1	Bit 0	-	Read Register Command
0	0		No Action
0	1		No Action
1	0		Read IR Register on next IOR- Pulse
1	1		Read IS Register on next IOR- Pulse

0 No Action

1 No Action

Read IR Register on next IOR- Pulse

Read IS Register on next IOR- Pulse

Bit 2 = 0: No Poll Command

= 1: Poll Command

Bits 5-6

Bit 5	Bit 6	-	Special Mask Mode
0	0		No Action
0	1		No Action
1	0		Reset Special Mask
1	1		Set Special Mask

0 No Action

0 No Action

Reset Special Mask

Set Special Mask

Bit 7 = 0

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
0021	8259A Interrupt Controller
	Initialization Control Word 2
	Bits 0-7: Not Used
	Bits 3-7: T3-T7 Of Interrupt Vector Address (8086/8088/80286 Mode)
	Initialization Control Word 3 (Master Device)
	Bits 0-7: = 1 Indicated IR Input has a Slave = 0 Indicated IR Input does not have a Slave
	Initialization Control Word 3 (Slave Device)
	Bits 0-2: = ID0-2
Bit 0	Bit 1 Bit 2 - Slave ID #
0	0 0 0
0	0 1 1
0	1 0 2
0	1 1 3
1	0 0 4
1	0 1 5
1	1 0 6
1	1 1 7
	Bits 3-7: = 0 (Not Used)
	Initialization Control Word 4
	Bit 0: Type of Processor
	=0 MCS-80/85 Mode
	=1 8086/8088/80286 Mode
	Bit 1: Type of End of Interrupt
	= 0 Normal EOI
	= 1 Auto EOI
	Bits 2-3: Buffering Mode
Bit 3	Bit 2
0	X Non-Buffered Mode
1	0 Buffered Mode/Slave
1	1 Buffered Mode/Master

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
----------------	--------------------

Initialization Control Word 4

Bit 4: Nesting Mode

=0 Not Special Fully Nested Mode

=1 Special Fully Nested Mode

Bits 5-7:

=0 (Not Used)

Operation Control Word 1 (IOR-)

Bits 0-7: Interrupt Mask for IRQ0-IRQ7

=0 Mask Reset (Enable)

=1 Mask Set (Disable)

Note: Peripherals requesting an interrupt service must generate a low to high edge and then remain at a logic high level until service is acknowledged. Failure to do so results in a Default Service for IRQ7.

0022-0027 Same as 0020-0021

0028-003F Not Used

0040 8254-2 Timer

IOW- = 0: Load Counter No. 0

IOR- = 0: Read Counter No. 0

0041 8254-2 Timer

IOW- = 0: Load Counter No. 1

IOR- = 0: Read Counter No. 1

0042 8254-2 Timer

IOW- = 0: Load Counter No. 2

IOR- = 0: Read Counter No. 2

Address	Description
---------	-------------

0043	8254-2 Timer
------	--------------

IOW- = 0: Write Mode Word

Control Word Format

Bit 0: BCD

=0: BCD Counter (4 Decades)

=1: Binary Counter 16 Bits

Bits 1-3: Mode Selection

Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	
0	0	0	Mode 0
0	0	1	Mode 1
X	1	0	Mode 2
X	1	1	Mode 3
1	0	0	Mode 4
1	0	1	Mode 5

Bits 4-5: Read/Load

Bit 5	Bit 4	
0	0	Counter Latching Operation
0	1	Read/Load LSB Only
1	0	Read/Load MSB Only
1	1	Read/Load LSB First, Then MSB

Bits 6-7: Select Counter

Bit 7	Bit 6	
0	0	Select Counter 0
0	1	Select Counter 1
1	0	Select Counter 2
1	1	Illegal

IOR- = 0: No-Operation 3-State

0044-0047 Same as 0040-0043

0048-005F Not Used

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
----------------	--------------------

0060	Port A / Keyboard Interface Control Ports (Read Only)
------	--

Bit	Description
0	Keyboard Bit 0-LSB
1	Keyboard Bit 1
2	Keyboard Bit 2
3	Keyboard Bit 3
4	Keyboard Bit 4
5	Keyboard Bit 5
6	Keyboard Bit 6
7	Keyboard Bit 7-MSB

0061	Port B Read or Write
------	----------------------

Bit	Description
0	8253 Gate 2 Enable 1 = Enable 0 = Disable
1	Speaker Data Out Enable 1 = Enable 0 = Disable
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Internal Speaker Enable 1 = Disable 0 = Enable
5	Not Used
6	HOLDCK (if IBM PC Keyboard Mode) 1 = Tristate Keyboard Clock Line 0 = Pull Keyboard Clock Line Low
7	Keyboard Clear 1 = Clear Buffer and Reset Keyboard Interrupt 0 = Release Clear and Reset

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>																		
0062	Port C Read/Write: Bits 0-3; Read Only Bits: 4-7																		
	<table> <tr> <th>Bit</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Not Used (Read/Write)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Not Used (Read/Write)</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Not Used (Read/Write)</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>(Output) CPU Clock Rate (Read/Write) 0 = 4.00 MHz (PC Compatible Rate) 1 = 8.00 MHz (Default By Boot ROM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>EEPROM Data Input (Read Only)</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>8253 Out #2 (Read Only)</td></tr> <tr> <td>6</td><td>Monochrome Mode 0 = Color Monitor 1 = 350 Line Monitor, Mono</td></tr> <tr> <td>7</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> </table>	Bit	Description	0	Not Used (Read/Write)	1	Not Used (Read/Write)	2	Not Used (Read/Write)	3	(Output) CPU Clock Rate (Read/Write) 0 = 4.00 MHz (PC Compatible Rate) 1 = 8.00 MHz (Default By Boot ROM)	4	EEPROM Data Input (Read Only)	5	8253 Out #2 (Read Only)	6	Monochrome Mode 0 = Color Monitor 1 = 350 Line Monitor, Mono	7	Reserved
Bit	Description																		
0	Not Used (Read/Write)																		
1	Not Used (Read/Write)																		
2	Not Used (Read/Write)																		
3	(Output) CPU Clock Rate (Read/Write) 0 = 4.00 MHz (PC Compatible Rate) 1 = 8.00 MHz (Default By Boot ROM)																		
4	EEPROM Data Input (Read Only)																		
5	8253 Out #2 (Read Only)																		
6	Monochrome Mode 0 = Color Monitor 1 = 350 Line Monitor, Mono																		
7	Reserved																		
0063-0064	Reserved																		
0065	Planar Control Register (Read/Write)																		
	1 = Enable 0 = Disable <table> <tr> <th>Bit</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Hard Disk Select Enable</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Parallel Port Select Enable</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Video Port Select Enable</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Floppy Disk Port Select Enable</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>Serial Port Select Enable</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr> <td>6</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr> <td>7</td><td>Parallel Port Output Enable</td></tr> </table>	Bit	Description	0	Hard Disk Select Enable	1	Parallel Port Select Enable	2	Video Port Select Enable	3	Floppy Disk Port Select Enable	4	Serial Port Select Enable	5	Reserved	6	Reserved	7	Parallel Port Output Enable
Bit	Description																		
0	Hard Disk Select Enable																		
1	Parallel Port Select Enable																		
2	Video Port Select Enable																		
3	Floppy Disk Port Select Enable																		
4	Serial Port Select Enable																		
5	Reserved																		
6	Reserved																		
7	Parallel Port Output Enable																		
0066-0067	Reserved																		
0068-007F	Reserved																		
0080	DMA Page Register (Reserved for Diagnostics) Write Only																		

Address Description

0081 DMA Channel 2 Page Register (Write Only)

Address Description

Bit 0 Address A16
Bit 1 Address A17
Bit 2 Address A18
Bit 3 Address A19
Bit 4 Address A20
Bit 5 Address A21
Bit 6 Address A22
Bit 7 Address A23

0082 DMA Channel 3 Page Register (Write Only)

Address Description

Bit 0 Address A16
Bit 1 Address A17
Bit 2 Address A18
Bit 3 Address A19
Bit 4 Address A20
Bit 5 Address A21
Bit 6 Address A22
Bit 7 Address A23

0083 DMA Channel 0-1 Page Register (Write Only)

Address Description

Bit 0 Address A16
Bit 1 Address A17
Bit 2 Address A18
Bit 3 Address A19
Bit 4 Address A20
Bit 5 Address A21
Bit 6 Address A22
Bit 7 Address A23

0084-008F Same as 0080-0083

Address Description

00A0 NMI- Mask Register, Write Only

Bit Description

- 0 Reserved
- 1 Reserved
- 2 Reserved
- 3 Reserved
- 4 Reserved
- 5 Not Used
- 6 Not Used
- 7 Non Maskable Interrupt (NMI) Enable
 - 0 = Disabled
 - 1 = Enabled

00A1-00A7 Reserved

00A8-00AF Not Used

00C0-00C3 Sound SN76496

Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
= 1	0	0	0	F6	F7	F8	F9	Update Tone
= 0	X							Frequency 1
= 1	0							Additional
= 1	0	0	1	A0	A1	A2	A3	Frequency Data
= 1	0	1	0	F6	F7	F8	F9	Update Tone
= 0	X	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	Attenuation 1
= 1	0	1	1	A0	A1	A2	A3	Update Tone
= 1	1	0	0	F6	F7	F8	F9	Frequency 2
= 0	X	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	Update Tone
= 1	1	0	1	A0	A1	A2	A3	Frequency 3
= 1	1	1	0	X	FB	NF0	NFI	Additional
= 1	1	1	1	A0	A1	A2	A3	Frequency Data
								Update Tone
								Attenuation 2
								Update Tone
								Frequency 3
								Additional
								Frequency Data
								Update Tone
								Attenuation 3
								Update Noise
								Control
								Update Noise
								Attenuation

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
----------------	--------------------

00C4-00C7 DAC Function

00C4 DAC Mode Register (Write Commands)

Bits 0-1

Bit 0	Bit 1	Dac Function Selected
0	0	Joystick
0	1	Successive Approximation
1	0	Sound Channel
1	1	Direct Write to DAC

Bit 2 DMA Enable (for SA, Direct R/W)

0	DMA Disabled
1	DMA Enabled for SA, DA

Bit 3 DMA Interrupt Clear

0	DMA Interrupt Held Clear
1	DMA Interrupt Allowed

Bit 4 DMA Interrupt Enable

0	DMA EOP Interrupt Disabled
1	DMA EOP Interrupt Enabled

Bit 5 Sound Divider Sync Enable

0	Synchronization Disabled
1	Synchronization Enabled (Write to 00C6 or 00C7 reloads all dividers)

Bit 6 Sound Chip Extra Divide Enable

0	Extra Divide Disabled
1	Extra Divide Enabled

Bit 7 Reserved

00C4 DAC Mode Register (Read Commands)

Bit 3 DMA Interrupt Flag. A DMA Interrupt has occurred. To clear the interrupt flag, Bit 3 must be brought low and then high again.

Bit 7 Successive Approximation Done. Useful when polling instead of using DMA.

Address Description

00C5 Waveshape Mode Select (Write Commands)

Bits 0-2

Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 2	Duty Cycle
0	0	0	6.25%
0	0	1	12.5%
0	1	0	18.75%
0	1	1	25.0%
1	0	0	31.25%
1	0	1	37.5%
1	1	0	43.75%
1	1	1	50.0%

Bit 3 Reserved

Bit 4 Reserved

Bit 5 Reserved

Bits 6-7 Waveshape Select

Bit 7	Bit 6	Waveshape Selected
0	0	Pulse
0	1	Ramp
1	0	Triangle
1	1	Reserved

00C5 Read DAC Registers (Read Commands)

Direct Read of DAC when 00C4 Bits 0-1 = 1X

Direct Read of Control Register when 00C4 Bits 0-1 = 01

00C6 R/W Frequency 1sb for DAC sound channel

Bit 0	F0
Bit 1	F1
Bit 2	F2
Bit 3	F3
Bit 4	F4
Bit 5	F5
Bit 6	F6
Bit 7	F7

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
00C7	R/W Amplitude/frequency msb for DAC sound channel
Bit 0	F8
Bit 1	F9
Bit 2	F10
Bit 3	F11
Bit 4	Reserved
Bit 5	AMP 1
Bit 6	AMP 2
Bit 7	AMP 3
00C8-00CF	Reserved
00E0-00EF	Reserved
00F0	Clear Numerical Coprocessor Busy
00F1	Reset Numerical Coprocessor to Real Mode
00F2	Same as 00F0
00F3	Same as 00F1
00F4	Same as 00F0
00F5	Same as 00F1
00F6	Same as 00F0
00F7	Same as 00F1
00F8-00FF	Math Coprocessor Chip Select
0100-01FF	Reserved
0200-0207	Joystick
	Clear (Resets Integrator to 0)
0201	Read R = Right Joystick, L = Left Joystick
Bit	Description
0	R - X Horizontal Position
1	R - Y Vertical Position
2	L - X Horizontal Position
3	L - Y Vertical Position
4	R Button #1 (Logic 0 = Button Pressed)
5	R Button #2 (Logic 0 = Button Pressed)
6	L Button #1 (Logic 0 = Button Pressed)
7	L Button #2 (Logic 0 = Button Pressed)
0208-020F	Not Used
0210-02F7	Reserved

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
2F8-2FF	Serial Port Secondary (COM2 Optional)
0300-036F	Reserved
0370-0377	Floppy Disk Controller 2 (optional)
0378	Printer - Data Latch
	Bit Description
	0 Bit 0 - LSB
	1 Bit 1
	2 Bit 2
	3 Bit 3
	4 Bit 4
	5 Bit 5
	6 Bit 6
	7 Bit 7 - MSB
0379	Printer - Read Status
	Bit Description
	0 Not Used
	1 Not Used
	2 Not Used
	3 "0" = Error (Fault)
	4 "1" = Printer Select In
	5 "0" = Out of Paper (Paper Empty)
	6 "0" = Acknowledge
	7 "0" = Busy
037A	Printer - Control Latch
	Bit Description
	0 "0" = Strobe
	1 "0" = Auto FD XT
	2 "0" = Initialize
	3 "0" = Select Printer Out
	4 "1" = Enable Interrupt
	5 "0" = Enable Output Data
	6 Not Used
	7 Not Used
037B	Not Used

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>												
037C	EEPROM Control Register (Write Only)												
	<table> <tr> <th>Bit</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>NOVDO - EEPROM Data Output</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>NOVCE - EEPROM Chip Enable 0 = Enabled or Selected 1 = Disabled or Deselected</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>NOVCLK - EEPROM Clock 0 = Toggle Clock Low 1 = Toggle Clock High</td></tr> </table>	Bit	Description	0	NOVDO - EEPROM Data Output	1	NOVCE - EEPROM Chip Enable 0 = Enabled or Selected 1 = Disabled or Deselected	2	NOVCLK - EEPROM Clock 0 = Toggle Clock Low 1 = Toggle Clock High				
Bit	Description												
0	NOVDO - EEPROM Data Output												
1	NOVCE - EEPROM Chip Enable 0 = Enabled or Selected 1 = Disabled or Deselected												
2	NOVCLK - EEPROM Clock 0 = Toggle Clock Low 1 = Toggle Clock High												
037D-037F	Reserved												
0378-03CF	Not Used												
03D0-03D3	Reserved												
03D4	6845 Address Register												
03D5	6845 Data Register												
03D6	Not Used												
03D7	Not Used												
03D8	Mode Select Register												
	<table> <tr> <td>Bit0</td><td>High Resolution Clock = 0 Selects 40 X 25 Alphanumeric Mode = 1 Selects 80 X 25 Alphanumeric Mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bit1</td><td>Graphics Select = 0 Selects Alphanumeric Mode = 1 Selects 320 X 200 Graphics Mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bit2</td><td>Black and White = 0 Selects Color Mode = 1 Selects Black and White Mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bit3</td><td>Video Enable = 0 Disables Video Signal = 1 Enables Video Signal</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bit4</td><td>640 Dot Graphics = 0 Disables 640 X 200 B&W Graphics Mode = 1 Enables 640 X 200 B&W Graphics Mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>Bit5</td><td>Blink Enable = 0 Disables Blinking = 1 Enables Blinking</td></tr> </table>	Bit0	High Resolution Clock = 0 Selects 40 X 25 Alphanumeric Mode = 1 Selects 80 X 25 Alphanumeric Mode	Bit1	Graphics Select = 0 Selects Alphanumeric Mode = 1 Selects 320 X 200 Graphics Mode	Bit2	Black and White = 0 Selects Color Mode = 1 Selects Black and White Mode	Bit3	Video Enable = 0 Disables Video Signal = 1 Enables Video Signal	Bit4	640 Dot Graphics = 0 Disables 640 X 200 B&W Graphics Mode = 1 Enables 640 X 200 B&W Graphics Mode	Bit5	Blink Enable = 0 Disables Blinking = 1 Enables Blinking
Bit0	High Resolution Clock = 0 Selects 40 X 25 Alphanumeric Mode = 1 Selects 80 X 25 Alphanumeric Mode												
Bit1	Graphics Select = 0 Selects Alphanumeric Mode = 1 Selects 320 X 200 Graphics Mode												
Bit2	Black and White = 0 Selects Color Mode = 1 Selects Black and White Mode												
Bit3	Video Enable = 0 Disables Video Signal = 1 Enables Video Signal												
Bit4	640 Dot Graphics = 0 Disables 640 X 200 B&W Graphics Mode = 1 Enables 640 X 200 B&W Graphics Mode												
Bit5	Blink Enable = 0 Disables Blinking = 1 Enables Blinking												

Address	Description
---------	-------------

03D9	Color Select Register
------	-----------------------

Bit 0	Background Blue
Bit 1	Background Green
Bit 2	Background Red
Bit 3	Background Intensity
Bit 4	Foreground Intensity
Bit 5	Color Select

03DA-03DE	Write Video Array Address and Read Status (03DA) Write Video Array Data (03DE)
-----------	---

Read (03DA)	Write (03DE)
00 Bit 0 Display Inactive	Not Used
00 Bit 1 Light Pen Set	Not Used
00 Bit 2 Light Switch Status	Not Used
00 Bit 3 Vertical Retrace	Not Used
00 Bit 4 Not Used	Not Used
01 Bit 0	Palette Mask 0
01 Bit 1	Palette Mask 1
01 Bit 2	Palette Mask 2
01 Bit 3	Palette Mask 3
02 Bit 0	Border Blue
02 Bit 1	Border Green
02 Bit 2	Border Red
02 Bit 3	Border Intensity
02 Bit 5	Reserved = 0
03 Bit 0	Mono Enable = 1
03 Bit 1	Reserved = 0
03 Bit 2	Border Enable
03 Bit 3	4-Color High Resolution
03 Bit 4	16-Color Mode
03 Bit 5	Extra Video Mode

03DB	Clear Light Pen Latch
------	-----------------------

03DC	Preset Light Pen Latch
------	------------------------

03DD	Extended RAM Page Register - CPU Relative
------	---

Bit	Description
0	Extended Addressing Modes
1	Not Used
2	Not Used
3	CRT Video Page Address "17"
4	CRT Video Page Address "18"
5	CPU Page Address "17"
6	CPU Page Address "18"
7	Select 64K Or 256K RAM

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
03DF	CRT Processor Page Register - Video Memory Relative
Bit 0	Al4 CRT Page 0
Bit 1	Al5 CRT Page 1
Bit 2	Al6 CRT Page 2
Bit 3	Al4 Processor Page 0
Bit 4	Al5 Processor Page 1
Bit 5	Al6 Processor Page 2
Bit 6	Video Address Mode 0
Bit 7	Video Address Mode 1
	Video
	Descriptions
	D0 D7 D6
	3DDH 3DFH 3DFH
8p 1 - 16K	0 0 0
8p 2 - 8K	0 0 1
4p 2 - 16K	0 1 0
4p 4 - 8K	0 1 1
4p 1 - 32K	1 0 0
2p 2 - 32K	1 0 1
03E0-03EF	Reserved
03F0	Not Used
03F1	Drive Select Switch
Bit 0	Not Used
Bit 1	"1" DS0 = DS0
	"0" DS0 = DS1
Bit 2	Not Used
Bit 3	Not Used
Bit 4	Not Used
Bit 5	Not Used
Bit 6	Not Used
Bit 7	Not Used
03F2	DOR Register (Write Only)
	Bits 0-1 Drive Select
Bit 1	Bit 0
0	0 Drive Select A*
0	1 Drive Select B*
Bit 2	0 = FDC Reset
Bit 3	1 = Enable DMA Request/Interrupt
Bit 4	1 = Drive A Motor On
Bit 5	1 = Drive B Motor On
Bit 6	1 = FDC Terminal Count
Bit 7	Not Used
03F3	Not Used
03F4	FDC - Status (Read Only). See FDC Specification
03F5	FDC - Data (R/W). See FDC Specification

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
----------------	--------------------

03F6	Reserved
------	----------

03F7	FDC Data Rate Selection
------	-------------------------

Bit	Description
0	Not Used
1	Write - Data Rate 0 = 500K bits per second 1 = 250K bits per second
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Not Used
5	Not Used
6	Not Used
7	0=Disk Change

03F8-03FF	Serial Port Primary (COM1)
-----------	----------------------------

03F8	Write Transmitter Holding Register (Character to Send)
------	--

Bit	Description
0	Bit 0 - LSB (First Bit sent Serially)
1	Bit 1
2	Bit 2
3	Bit 3
4	Bit 4
5	Bit 5
6	Bit 6
7	Bit 7 - MSB

03F8	Read Receiver Buffer Register (Character Received)
------	--

Bit	Description
0	Bit 0 - LSB (First Bit Received Serially)
1	Bit 1
2	Bit 2
3	Bit 3
4	Bit 4
5	Bit 5
6	Bit 6
7	Bit 7 - MSB

Address	Description
---------	-------------

03F8	Divisor Latch LSB (Divisor Latch Access Bit DLAB = "1")
------	---

Bit	Description
-----	-------------

0	Bit 0
1	Bit 1
2	Bit 2
3	Bit 3
4	Bit 4
5	Bit 5
6	Bit 6
7	Bit 7

03F9	Divisor Latch MSB (Divisor Latch Access Bit DLAB = "1")
------	---

Bit	Description
-----	-------------

0	Bit 0
1	Bit 1
2	Bit 2
3	Bit 3
4	Bit 4
5	Bit 5
6	Bit 6
7	Bit 7

03F9	Interrupt Enable Register
------	---------------------------

Bit	Description
-----	-------------

0	"1" = Enables the Received Data Available Int
1	"1" = Enables the Transmitter Holding Register Int
2	"1" = Enables Receive Line Status Interrupt
3	"1" = Enables the Modem Status Interrupt
4-7	Always Logical "0"

03FA	Interrupt Identification Register
------	-----------------------------------

Bit	Description
-----	-------------

0	"0" = Interrupt Pending															
1-2	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit 2</th> <th>Bit 1</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>"0"</td><td>"0"</td><td>Fourth Level Priority</td></tr> <tr><td>"0"</td><td>"1"</td><td>Third Level Priority</td></tr> <tr><td>"1"</td><td>"0"</td><td>Second Level Priority</td></tr> <tr><td>"1"</td><td>"1"</td><td>Highest Level Priority</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit 2	Bit 1		"0"	"0"	Fourth Level Priority	"0"	"1"	Third Level Priority	"1"	"0"	Second Level Priority	"1"	"1"	Highest Level Priority
Bit 2	Bit 1															
"0"	"0"	Fourth Level Priority														
"0"	"1"	Third Level Priority														
"1"	"0"	Second Level Priority														
"1"	"1"	Highest Level Priority														
3-7	Always Logical "0"															

Address Description

03FB Line Control Register

Bit Description

0-1	Bit 1	Bit 0	
	"0"	"0"	Five Bit Word Length
	"0"	"1"	Six Bit Word Length
	"1"	"0"	Seven Bit Word Length
	"1"	"1"	Eight Bit Word Length
2	"0" = One Stop Bit		
	"1" = 1½ Stop Bits when Five Bit Length Selected		
	Two Stop Bits with Six, Seven, or Eight Bit		
3	"1" = Parity Enable		
4	"0" = Odd Parity Select		
	"1" = Even Parity Select		
5	Stick Parity Bit		
6	"1" = Set Break Enable		
7	"1" = Divisor Latch Access Bit Enable		

03FC

Bit Description

0	"1" = Data Terminal Ready Set (DTR)
	"0" = Data Terminal Ready Reset (DTR)
1	Request To Send (RTS)
2	Out 1
3	Out 2
4	Loop
5-7	Always Logical "0"

03FD Line Status Register

Bit Description

0	Data Ready (DR)
1	Overrun Error (OR)
2	"1" = Detect Parity Error (PE)
3	"1" = Detect Framing Error (FE)
4	"1" = Break Interrupt (BI)
5	Transmitter Holding Register
	"1" = Character Transferred from Holding to Shift Register
	"0" = Loading Transmitter Holding Register
6	Transmitter Shift Register Empty
	"1" = Shift Register Idle
	"0" = Data Transfer from Holding Register
7	Always Logical "0"

Address Description

03FE Modem Status Register

Bit Description

- 0 Delta Clear to Send (DCTS)
- 1 Delta Data Set Ready (DDSR)
- 2 Trailing Edge Ring Indicator
 "1" = On
 "0" = Off
- 3 Delta Received Line Signal Detect (If Bit 0, 1, 2,
 or 3 is set to a "1" modem status interrupt is
 generated)
- 4 "0" = Clear to Send (CTS)
- 5 "0" = Data Set Ready (DSR)
- 6 "0" = Ring Indicator (RI)
- 7 "0" = Received Line Signal Detect (RLSD)

03FF Reserved

0400-FFE7 Not Used

FFE8-FFEB System Control Registers

FFE8 Video Configuration Register

Bit Description

- 0 Reserved
- 1 Memory Configuration 1
- 2 Memory Configuration 2
- 3 Memory Configuration 3
- 4 Reserved
- 5 16-Bit CPU Memory = 1
- 6 Reserved
- 7 Reserved

FFE9 Reserved

<u>Address</u>	<u>Description</u>
----------------	--------------------

FFEA	WRITE/READ
------	------------

Bit	Description
-----	-------------

Bit 0:	ROM PAGING 0
--------	--------------

Bit 1:	ROM PAGING 1
--------	--------------

Bit 2:	ROM PAGING 2
--------	--------------

Bit 3:	ROM PAGING 3
--------	--------------

Bit 4:	ROM PAGING 4
--------	--------------

Bit 5:	System Type (Reserved - See Note)
--------	-----------------------------------

6-7	Bit 7 Bit 6
-----	-------------

0	0	512K System Memory
---	---	--------------------

0	1	512K System Memory
---	---	--------------------

1	0	512K System Memory
---	---	--------------------

1	1	640K System Memory
---	---	--------------------

NOTE: When reading Port FFEA, Bit 4 will be inverted from what was written, (i.e. when a 0 is written, a 1 will be read; when a 1 is written, a 0 will be read.) FFEA Bit 4 can be used to determine the system type. If Bit 4 is read back inverted, the system is identified as a Tandy 1000 SL. If Bit 4 is NOT inverted, the system is identified as a Tandy 1000 TL.

ROM Paging Definition:

4 1 Meg X 8 ROMs		ADDRESS				ROM PAGES				ROM CS		SELECT	64K Page				
		19	18	17	16	4	3	2	1	0	#0	#1	2	1	0	ROM 0	ROM 1
F0000-FFFFF		1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x	x	0	1	x	1	1	1	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x		
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	1	1	0	0	1	x	1	0	2	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	1	0	1	0	1	x	x	1	3	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	1	0	0	0	1	x	0	0	4	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	0	1	1	1	1	x	1	1		1
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	0	1	0	1	0	x	1	0		2
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	0	0	1	1	0	x	0	1		3
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	1	x	0	0	0	0	1	x	0	0		4
2 2 Meg X 8 ROMs		19	18	17	16	4	3	2	1	0	#0	#1	2	1	0	ROM 0	ROM 1
F0000-FFFFF		1	1	1	1	x	x	x	x	x	0	1	1	1	1	1	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	x	x	x		
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	2	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	3	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	4	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	5	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	6	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	7	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	8	
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1		1
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	0		2
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1		3
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0		4
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1		5
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0		6
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1		7
E0000-EFFFF		1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0		8

Address Description

FFEB UART Clock, Joystick, and Sound Enable

Bit	Description
0	0 = Clock Divided by 13 1 = Clock Divided by 1
1	0 = Disable Joystick 1 = Enable Joystick
2	0 = Disable Sound Chip 1 = Enable Sound Chip
3	Reserved
4	Reserved
5	Keyboard Interrupt (Read Only) 1 = Keyboard Interrupt Active 0 = Keyboard Interrupt Inactive
6	Reserved
7	Keyboard Type (Read Only) 1 = 101 Key Enhanced Keyboard 0 = Original Tandy 1000 Keyboard

FFEC-FFEF Reserved

FFF0-FFFF Reserved

ELECTRICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

MAIN LOGIC ASSY.

TANDY 1000 TL

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	DESIGNATOR	VENDOR	PART NUMBER
1	CPU PCB TANDY 1000 TL REV. A			8709842
8	STAKING PINS	E1-8	AMP#1-87022-0	8529014
1	SOCKET 8-PIN DIP	U12	AMP#640460-3	8509011
17	SOCKET 16-PIN DIP	U3,45-52,62-69	AMP#2-644100-3	8509036
8	SOCKET 18-PIN DIP	U32-39	AMP#2-383060-3	8509037
3	SOCKET 24-PIN DIP	U15,42,44	AMP#640962-3	8509029
1	SOCKET 28-PIN DIP	U24	AMP#2-641605-3	8509007
2	SOCKET 32-PIN DIP	U54,56 OR 55,57	AMP#2-644018-3	8505048
2	SOCKET 32-PIN DIP	U58,59	AMP#2-644018-3	8505048
3	SOCKET 40-PIN DIP	U23,28,60	AMP#2-641606-3	8509002
6	SOCKET 68-PIN, PLCC	U11,13,17,22, 31,61	AMP#821574-1 BURNDY#68P410T	8509020
1	SWITCH, RESET	S1	ALPS#KHC15901	8489065
1	STEREO HEAD. JACK	J14	HOSIDEN#HSJ0942-01-1020	8519322
1	MICROPHONE JACK	J16	HOSIDEN#HSJ0942-01-1060	8519355
1	BATTERY HOLDER	J13	SPECIALTY ELEC. 2S2032-0	8491013
1	CONNECTOR, 2-PIN	J15 (SPKR)	MOLEX#22-29-2021	8519193
2	CONNECTOR, 6-PIN	J3,4 (JOYSTICK)	HOSIDEN#TCS5040-16-1911	8519318
1	CONNECTOR, 7-PIN	J2 (KEYBOARD)	HOSIDEN#TCS5040-17-4071	8519358
1	CONNECTOR, 9-PIN	J12 (POWER)	MOLEX#26-48-1095	8519191
1	CONNECTOR, 9-PIN	U1 (VIDEO)	HOLMBERG#H4S09RA28CM42	8519279
	FEMALE "D" SUB		AMP#745988-3 MOLEX#82009-2052	
1	CONNECTOR, 9-PIN	J5 (SERIAL)	AMP#747840-3	8519269
	"D" SUB			
1	CONNECTOR, 17-PIN	J11 (FLOPPY)	MOLEX# 70246-3402	8519324
	HEADER (SHROUDED)			
5	CONNECTOR, 31-PIN	J6-10	TEKA#021-31014-200	8519236
	CARD EDGE		VIKING#3KT31/2JFF12 JAE#PB21-62T1-CL-S AMP#6-530843-5 HOLMBERG#A8D31DS27C2 BURNDY#PWBH31DDSLB	
1	RESISTOR, VAR. 10K	R63	PIHER PT15NH510KA	8270510
1	RESISTOR, VAR. TBD	R27		
1	RESISTOR 10 OHM	R48	GENERIC	8207010
	1/4 WATT 5%			
15	RESISTOR 33 OHM	R6-9,17,21,22, 31,32,34-39	"	8207033
	1/4 WATT 5%			
1	RESISTOR 300 OHM	R50,49	"	8207130
	1/4 WATT 5%			

ELECTRICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

MAIN LOGIC ASSY.

TANDY 1000 TL

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	DESIGNATOR	VENDOR	PART NUMBER
1	RESISTOR 510 OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R24	"	8207151
2	RESISTOR 1K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R5,29	GENERIC	8207210
3	RESISTOR 1.2K OHM 1/4 WATT 1%	R54,55,57	"	8207212
1	RESISTOR 1.2K OHM 1/4 WATT 1%	R26		
1	RESISTOR 1.3K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R58	"	8207213
1	RESISTOR 2.2K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R51	"	8207222
1	RESISTOR 2.4K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R60	"	8207244
1	RESISTOR 2.7K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R62	"	8207227
1	RESISTOR 3.3K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R52	"	8207233
4	RESISTOR 4.7K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R33,41,42,61	"	8207247
9	RESISTOR 10K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R1-4,30,40,45-47	"	8207310
2	RESISTOR 13K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R53,56	"	8207313
5	RESISTOR 27K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R12,13,20,23,25	"	8207327
3	RESISTOR 47K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R14,19,43	"	8207347
1	RESISTOR 68K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R28	"	8207368
1	RESISTOR 91K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R59		8207391
2	RESISTOR 100K OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R15,44	"	8207410
4	RESISTOR 1 MEG OHM 1/4 WATT 5%	R10,11,16,18	"	8207510
6	RESISTOR PAK 33 OHM 16-PIN DIP	RP1-4,12,13	"	8290044
5	RESISTOR PAK 33 OHM 8-PIN SIP	RP5,14,15,18,19	"	8295033
2	RESISTOR PAK 1K OHM 6-PIN SIP	RP7,10	"	8290210

ELECTRICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

MAIN LOGIC ASSY.

TANDY 1000 TL

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	DESIGNATOR	VENDOR	PART NUMBER
2	RES. PAK 4.7K OHM 10-PIN SIP	RP6,17	GENERIC	8294247
3	RES.PAK 10K OHM 6-PIN SIP	RP9,11,20	"	8290032
2	RES.PAK 10K OHM 8-PIN SIP	RP8,16	"	8292310
2	RES. PAK 10K OHM 10-PIN SIP	RP21,22	"	8290010
45	CAPACITOR 220 PFD 25V 10% SMD	C3,4,5,8,9, 10,11,12,13, 14,15,17,19, 20,21,22,23, 24,25,26,27, 28,29,30,31, 32,33,34,38, 39,40,41,42, 43,44,45,46, 47,48,49,50, 51,52,176,180	"	X30122243
7	CAPACITOR 330 PFD 25V 10% SMD	C6,7,18,56, 57,58,59	"	X30133244
9	CAPACITOR 47 PFD 50V 5% NPO CD	C70,75,76,78, 83,90,94,96, 98	"	8300475
2	CAP 1000 PFD 50V 10% Z5P CD	C169,171	"	8302104
5	CAP .022 MFD 50V 25C +80/-20% CD	C65,69,95,77,111	"	8303224
1	CAP .047 MFD 50V 10% 25P CD OR EQUIV.	C163	"	8373474
1	CAP .047 MFD 50V 10% X7R MONO.AX.	C131	"	8373484

ELECTRICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

MAIN LOGIC ASSY.

TANDY 1000 TL

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	DESIGNATOR	VENDOR	PART NUMBER
50	CAP 0.1 MFD 50V +80/-20% Z5U MONO. AX.	C1,16,35,53, 62,66,72,73, 74,82,87,88, 89,91,93,97, 99,101,103, 107,108,109, 110,111,113, 114,116,117, 126,127,128, 129,130,140, 141,144,145, 154,155,157, 158,159,160, 161,165,166, 175,177,178, 179	GENERIC	8374104
24	CAP .33 MFD 50V +80/-20% Z5U MONO. AX.	C118,119,120, 121,122,123, 124,125,132, 133,134,135, 136,137,138, 139,146,147, 148,149,150, 151,152,153	"	8374334
3	CAP .47 MFD 50V CD	C64,182,183	"	8384475
13	CAP RFI TBD	C2,36,37,81, 92,100,102, 104,105,142, 143,164,112	"	
3	CAP 3.3 MFD	C168,170,172	"	8335322
9	CAP 10 MFD 16V ELEC.RAD. 20%	C60,61,63,68, 79,80,173,174, 181	"	8326101
8	CAP 22 MFD 16V ELEC.RAD. 20%	C54,55,84,85, 86,115,156,162	"	8326221
1	CAP 47 MFD 16V ELEC.RAD. 20%	C71	"	8326474
1	CAP 100 MFD 16V ELE.RAD.	C167	"	8327101
5	EMI FILTER .022 UF W/FER. BEAD	CF1,3,4,5,6	MURATA #DST310 55D-223S	8418013
1	EMI CAP. .022 (NO BEAD)	CF2	MURATA #DS310 55D-223S	8418014
8	FERRITE BEAD	FB2-5,7-10	FARRITE #2743002121	8419013
4	FERRITE BEAD (801)	FB1,6,11,12	FARRITE #2643000801	8419098

ELECTRICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - TANDY 1000 TL

MAIN LOGIC ASSY.

TANDY 1000 TL

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	DESIGNATOR	VENDOR	PART NUMBER
1	FUSE - 1 AMP (CANADA ONLY)	F1		8749045
2	DIODE 1N4148	CR1,2		8150148
2	REGULATOR 78L05	VR2,3	MOTOROLA MC78L05 FAIRCHILD uA78L05 TEXAS INST. uA78L05C	8052805
1	REGULATOR 79M0A5CT	VR1	MOTOROLA MC79M05CT FAIRCHILD uA7905 TEXAS INST. uA79M05CKC	8190005
1	DUAL OSC. 28.63636/32.514 MHZ	Y3	DIAWA,MF	8409076
1	DUAL OSC. 24/16 MHZ	Y2	DIAWA,MF	8409075
1	CRYSTAL 32.768 KHZ	Y1		8404033
1	IC 7416	U6	GENERIC	8000016
1	IC 74LS04	U16	"	8020004
1	IC 74LS32	U29	"	8020032
1	IC 74LS74	U26	"	8020074
1	IC 74LS244	U8	MOTOROLA	8020244
2	IC 74ALS244	U9,U25	GENERIC	8025244
1	IC 74ALS245	U40	"	8025245
3	IC 74ALS573	U27,30,43	"	8025573
1	IC 74F08	U20	"	8015008
1	IC 74HCT00*	U18	"	8026000
1	IC 74HCT14*	U14	"	8026014
1	IC 74HCT32*	U41	"	8026032
1	IC 74HCT244*	U53	"	8026244
2	IC 74HCT273*	U21,70	"	8026273
1	IC LM339	U7	"	8050339
1	IC LM386	U71	"	8050386
1	IC MC1458	U72		8051458
1	IC MC1458S	U10		8052458
1	IC MC1488	U2	MOTOROLA	8050188
2	IC MC1489	U4,5	MOTOROLA	8050189
1	IC TANVID 2 100 PIN QFP	U19	NCR	X07900100

* CAN SUBSTITUTE LS FOR ALL HCT PARTS

MAIN LOGIC TANDY 1000 TL SUB ASSY.

QTY.	DESCRIPTION	DESIGNATOR	VENDOR	PART NUMBER
1	CPU TANDY 1000 TL SUB ASSY. (REV. A)			8859022
2	JUMPER PLUG	E2-E3,E6-E7		8519098
1	IC 80286 8 MHZ CPU C,E STEP	U31	INTEL, AMD	8041286
1	IC DATA BUFFER *	U61	MOTOROLA, FUJITSU	8079022
1	IC CPU CONTROLLER (NT. BLUE)	U17	VLSI, RCA	8040810
1	IC DRAM/DMA CONTROLLER	U22	MOTOROLA, RCA	8040142
1	IC PSSJ	U11	NCR	8079021
1	IC KFIT	U13	NCR	8079019
1	IC 8237A-5	U28	INTEL, AMD, NEC	8040237
1	IC 8272A FDC CONT. *	U23	INTEL, ROCKWELL, ZILOG	8040272
1	IC FDC SUPPORT	U15	MOTOROLA, NCR	8041401
1	IC DS1215 REAL TIME CLK	U3	DALLAS SEMI.	8079023
1	IC EEPROM 64 X 16 9346	U12	NATIONAL, HYUNDAI, AMI/GOULD	8040346
16	IC 256K X 1 DRAM 150 NS	U45-52,62-69	FUJITSU, HITACHI, NEC, TI, SAMSUNG, MICRON	8049008
4	IC 64K X 4 DRAM 120 NS	U32-35	FUJITSU, HITACHI, NEC, TI, SAMSUNG, SHARP, MOTOROLA	8040464
1	IC 256K X 8 BIOS ROM EVEN 200NS (1)	U55	SHARP	8076323
1	IC 256K X 8 BIOS ROM ODD 200NS (1)	U57	SHARP	8075323
1	IC 256K X 8 BIOS ROM EVEN 200NS (1)	U54	HITACHI	8079025
1	IC 256K X 8 BIOS ROM ODD 200NS (1)	U56	HITACHI	8079026
1	IC 16K X 8 CHARA.GEN. ROM 200NS	U24	HITACHI, SHARP, NEC	8079027
1	IC PLS173 I/O DECODE	U42	SIGNETICS	8077173
1	IC PLS173 ROM CNTL.	U44	SIGNETICS	8076173

ELECTRICAL BILL OF MATERIAL - PROJECT 878

=====

MAIN LOGIC ASSY.

=====

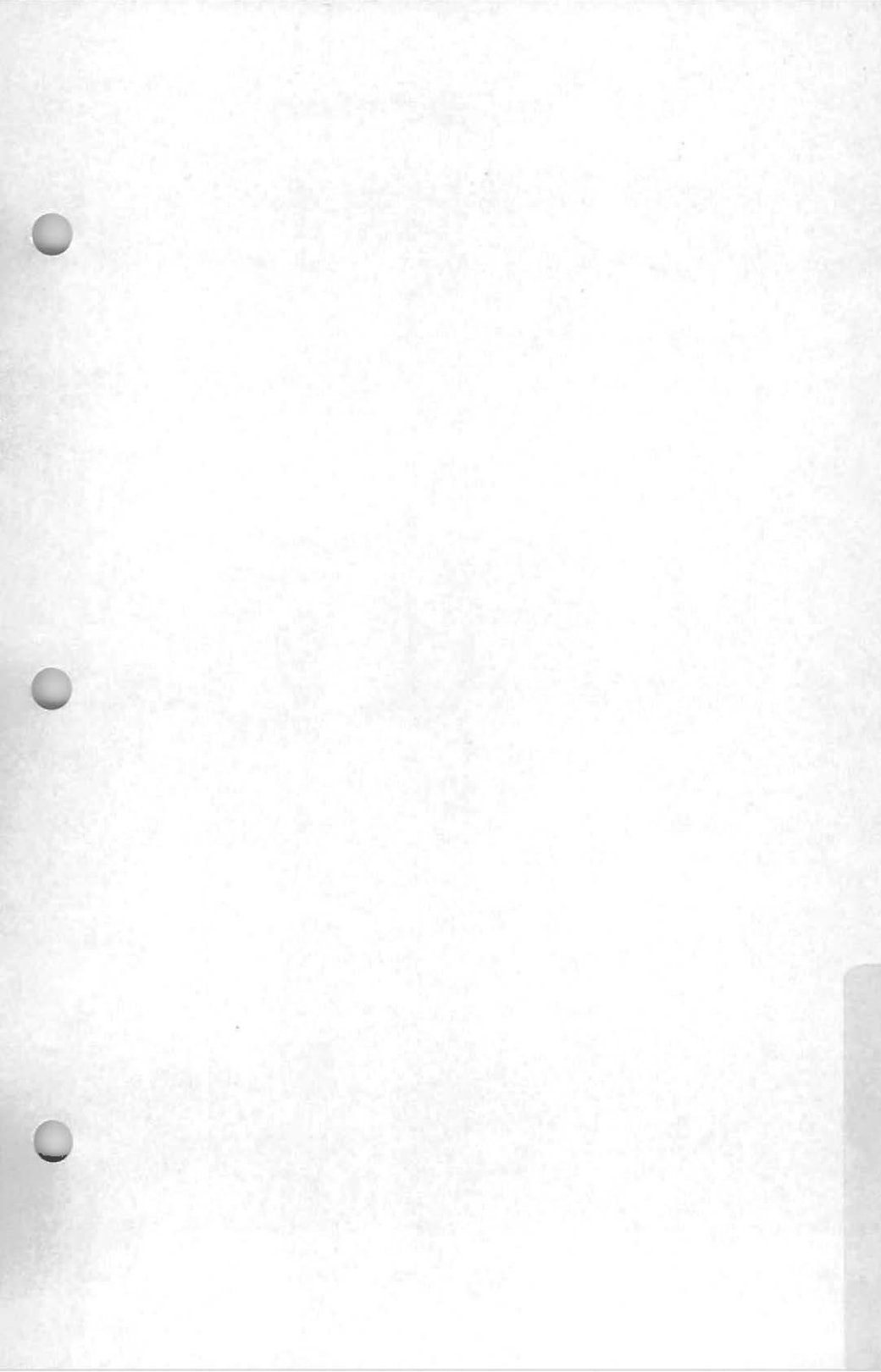
TANDY 1000 TL

<u>QTY.</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>DESIGNATOR</u>	<u>VENDOR</u>	<u>PART NUMBER</u>
*THE FOLLOWING PARTS MAY BE SUBSTITUTED IF NECESSARY:				
1	IC UPD765	U23	NEC	8041765
1	IC 82A205	U61	CHIPS	8075205
	DATA BUFFER			

MAIN LOGIC TANDY 1000 TL SUB ASSY.

=====

<u>QTY.</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>DESIGNATOR</u>	<u>VENDOR</u>	<u>PART NUMBER</u>
OPTION KITS:				
1	IC 80287-6 OR 8	U60	INTEL	
4	IC 64K X 4 DRAM	U36-39	FUJITSU,	8040464
	150 OR 120NS		HITACHI, NEC,	
			TI, SAMSUNG,	
			MICRON,	
			SHARP,	
			MOTOROLA	





Devices





8237A HIGH PERFORMANCE PROGRAMMABLE DMA CONTROLLER (8237A, 8237A-4, 8237A-5)

- Enable/Disable Control of Individual DMA Requests
- Four Independent DMA Channels
- Independent Autoinitialization of All Channels
- Memory-to-Memory Transfers
- Memory Block Initialization
- Address Increment or Decrement
- High Performance: Transfers up to 1.6M Bytes/Second with 5 MHz 8237A-5
- Directly Expandable to Any Number of Channels
- End of Process Input for Terminating Transfers
- Software DMA Requests
- Independent Polarity Control for DREQ and DACK Signals
- Available in EXPRESS — Standard Temperature Range
- Available in 40-Lead Cerdip and Plastic Packages

(See Packaging Spec, Order #231369)

The 8237A Multimode Direct Memory Access (DMA) Controller is a peripheral interface circuit for microprocessor systems. It is designed to improve system performance by allowing external devices to directly transfer information from the system memory. Memory-to-memory transfer capability is also provided. The 8237A offers a wide variety of programmable control features to enhance data throughput and system optimization and to allow dynamic reconfiguration under program control.

The 8237A is designed to be used in conjunction with an external 8-bit address latch. It contains four independent channels and may be expanded to any number of channels by cascading additional controller chips. The three basic transfer modes allow programmability of the types of DMA service by the user. Each channel can be individually programmed to Autoinitialize to its original condition following an End of Process (EOP). Each channel has a full 64K address and word count capability.

The 8237A-4 and 8237A-5 are 4 MHz and 5 MHz versions of the standard 3 MHz 8237A respectively.

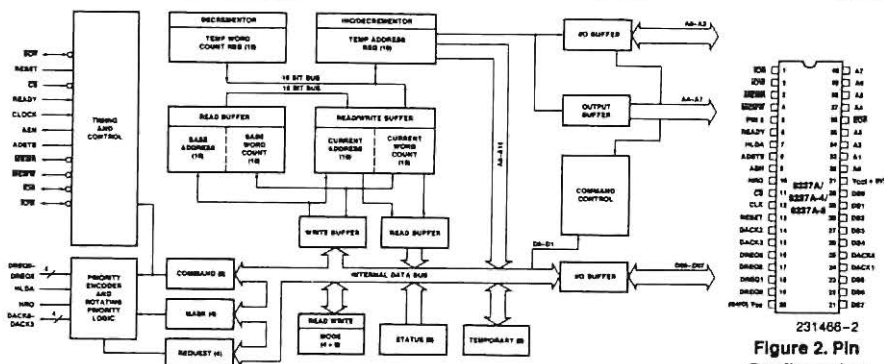


Figure 1. Block Diagram

Figure 2. Pin Configuration

Table 1. Pin Description

Symbol	Type	Name and Function
V _{CC}		POWER: +5V supply.
V _{SS}		GROUND: Ground.
CLK	I	CLOCK INPUT: Clock Input controls the internal operations of the 8237A and its rate of data transfers. The input may be driven at up to 3 MHz for the standard 8237A and up to 5 MHz for the 8237A-5.
\overline{CS}	I	CHIP SELECT: Chip Select is an active low input used to select the 8237A as an I/O device during the Idle cycle. This allows CPU communication on the data bus.
RESET	I	RESET: Reset is an active high input which clears the Command, Status, Request and Temporary registers. It also clears the first/last flip/flop and sets the Mask register. Following a Reset the device is in the Idle cycle.
READY	I	READY: Ready is an input used to extend the memory read and write pulses from the 8237A to accommodate slow memories or I/O peripheral devices. Ready must not make transitions during its specified setup/hold time.
HLDA	I	HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE: The active high Hold Acknowledge from the CPU indicates that it has relinquished control of the system busses.
DREQ0-DREQ3	I	DMA REQUEST: The DMA Request lines are individual asynchronous channel request inputs used by peripheral circuits to obtain DMA service. In fixed Priority, DREQ0 has the highest priority and DREQ3 has the lowest priority. A request is generated by activating the DREQ line of a channel. DACK will acknowledge the recognition of DREQ signal. Polarity of DREQ is programmable. Reset initializes these lines to active high. DREQ must be maintained until the corresponding DACK goes active.
DB0-DB7	I/O	DATA BUS: The Data Bus lines are bidirectional three-state signals connected to the system data bus. The outputs are enabled in the Program condition during the I/O Read to output the contents of an Address register, a Status register, the Temporary register or a Word Count register to the CPU. The outputs are disabled and the inputs are read during an I/O Write cycle when the CPU is programming the 8237A control registers. During DMA cycles the most significant 8 bits of the address are output onto the data bus to be strobed into an external latch by ADSTB. In memory-to-memory operations, data from the memory comes into the 8237A on the data bus during the read-from-memory transfer. In the write-to-memory transfer, the data bus outputs place the data into the new memory location.
\overline{IOR}	I/O	I/O READ: I/O Read is a bidirectional active low three-state line. In the Idle cycle, it is an input control signal used by the CPU to read the control registers. In the Active cycle, it is an output control signal used by the 8237A to access data from a peripheral during a DMA Write transfer.
\overline{IOW}	I/O	I/O WRITE: I/O Write is a bidirectional active low three-state line. In the Idle cycle, it is an input control signal used by the CPU to load information into the 8237A. In the Active cycle, it is an output control signal used by the 8237A to load data to the peripheral during a DMA Read transfer.

Table 1. Pin Description (Continued)

Symbol	Type	Name and Function
EOP	I/O	END OF PROCESS: End of Process is an active low bidirectional signal. Information concerning the completion of DMA services is available at the bidirectional EOP pin. The 8237A allows an external signal to terminate an active DMA service. This is accomplished by pulling the EOP input low with an external EOP signal. The 8237A also generates a pulse when the terminal count (TC) for any channel is reached. This generates an EOP signal which is output through the EOP line. The reception of EOP, either internal or external, will cause the 8237A to terminate the service, reset the request, and, if Autoinitialize is enabled, to write the base registers to the current registers of that channel. The mask bit and TC bit in the status word will be set for the currently active channel by EOP unless the channel is programmed for Autoinitialize. In that case, the mask bit remains unchanged. During memory-to-memory transfers, EOP will be output when the TC for channel 1 occurs. EOP should be tied high with a pull-up resistor if it is not used to prevent erroneous end of process inputs.
A0-A3	I/O	ADDRESS: The four least significant address lines are bidirectional three-state signals. In the Idle cycle they are inputs and are used by the CPU to address the register to be loaded or read. In the Active cycle they are outputs and provide the lower 4 bits of the output address.
A4-A7	O	ADDRESS: The four most significant address lines are three-state outputs and provide 4 bits of address. These lines are enabled only during the DMA service.
HRQ	O	HOLD REQUEST: This is the Hold Request to the CPU and is used to request control of the system bus. If the corresponding mask bit is clear, the presence of any valid DREQ causes 8237A to issue the HRQ.
DACK0-DACK3	O	DMA ACKNOWLEDGE: DMA Acknowledge is used to notify the individual peripherals when one has been granted a DMA cycle. The sense of these lines is programmable. Reset initializes them to active low.
AEN	O	ADDRESS ENABLE: Address Enable enables the 8-bit latch containing the upper 8 address bits onto the system address bus. AEN can also be used to disable other system bus drivers during DMA transfers. AEN is active HIGH.
ADSTB	O	ADDRESS STROBE: The active high, Address Strobe is used to strobe the upper address byte into an external latch.
MEMR	O	MEMORY READ: The Memory Read signal is an active low three-state output used to access data from the selected memory location during a DMA Read or a memory-to-memory transfer.
MEMW	O	MEMORY WRITE: The Memory Write is an active low three-state output used to write data to the selected memory location during a DMA Write or a memory-to-memory transfer.
PIN5	I	PIN5: This pin should always be at a logic HIGH level. An internal pull-up resistor will establish a logic high when the pin is left floating. It is recommended however, that PIN5 be connected to V _{CC} .

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

The 8237A block diagram includes the major logic blocks and all of the internal registers. The data interconnection paths are also shown. Not shown are the various control signals between the blocks. The 8237A contains 344 bits of internal memory in the form of registers. Figure 3 lists these registers by name and shows the size of each. A detailed description of the registers and their functions can be found under Register Description.

Name	Size	Number
Base Address Registers	16 bits	4
Base Word Count Registers	16 bits	4
Current Address Registers	16 bits	4
Current Word Count Registers	16 bits	4
Temporary Address Register	16 bits	1
Temporary Word Count Register	16 bits	1
Status Register	8 bits	1
Command Register	8 bits	1
Temporary Register	8 bits	1
Mode Registers	6 bits	4
Mask Register	4 bits	1
Request Register	4 bits	1

Figure 3. 8237A Internal Registers

The 8237A contains three basic blocks of control logic. The Timing Control block generates internal timing and external control signals for the 8237A. The Program Command Control block decodes the various commands given to the 8237A by the microprocessor prior to servicing a DMA Request. It also decodes the Mode Control word used to select the type of DMA during the servicing. The Priority Encoder block resolves priority contention between DMA channels requesting service simultaneously.

The Timing Control block derives internal timing from the clock input. In 8237A systems, this input will usually be the $\phi 2$ TTL clock from an 8224 or CLK from an 8085AH or 8284A. 33% duty cycle clock generators, however, may not meet the clock high time requirement of the 8237A of the same frequency. For example, 82C84A-5 CLK output violates the clock high time requirement of 8237A-5. In this case 82C84A CLK can simply be inverted to meet 8237A-5 clock high and low time requirements. For 8085AH-2 systems above 3.9 MHz, the 8085 CLK(OUT) does not satisfy 8237A-5 clock LOW and HIGH time requirements. In this case, an external clock should be used to drive the 8237A-5.

DMA OPERATION

The 8237A is designed to operate in two major cycles. These are called Idle and Active cycles. Each device cycle is made up of a number of states. The 8237A can assume seven separate states, each composed of one full clock period. State 1 (SI) is the inactive state. It is entered when the 8237A has no

valid DMA requests pending. While in SI, the DMA controller is inactive but may be in the Program Condition, being programmed by the processor. State S0 (S0) is the first state of a DMA service. The 8237A has requested a hold but the processor has not yet returned an acknowledge. The 8237A may still be programmed until it receives HLDA from the CPU. An acknowledge from the CPU will signal that DMA transfers may begin. S1, S2, S3 and S4 are the working states of the DMA service. If more time is needed to complete a transfer than is available with normal timing, wait states (SW) can be inserted between S2 or S3 and S4 by the use of the Ready line on the 8237A. Note that the data is transferred directly from the I/O device to memory (or vice versa) with IOR and MEMW (or MEMR and IOW) being active at the same time. The data is not read into or driven out of the 8237A in I/O-to-memory or memory-to-I/O DMA transfers.

Memory-to-memory transfers require a read-from and a write-to-memory to complete each transfer. The states, which resemble the normal working states, use two digit numbers for identification. Eight states are required for a single transfer. The first four states (S11, S12, S13, S14) are used for the read-from-memory half and the last four states (S21, S22, S23, S24) for the write-to-memory half of the transfer.

IDLE CYCLE

When no channel is requesting service, the 8237A will enter the Idle cycle and perform "SI" states. In this cycle the 8237A will sample the DREQ lines every clock cycle to determine if any channel is requesting a DMA service. The device will also sample \overline{CS} , looking for an attempt by the microprocessor to write or read the internal registers of the 8237A. When \overline{CS} is low and HLDA is low, the 8237A enters the Program Condition. The CPU can now establish, change or inspect the internal definition of the part by reading from or writing to the internal registers. Address lines A0-A3 are inputs to the device and select which registers will be read or written. The IOR and IOW lines are used to select and time reads or writes. Due to the number and size of the internal registers, an internal flip-flop is used to generate an additional bit of address. This bit is used to determine the upper or lower byte of the 16-bit Address and Word Count registers. The flip-flop is reset by Master Clear or Reset. A separate software command can also reset this flip-flop.

Special software commands can be executed by the 8237A in the Program Condition. These commands are decoded as sets of addresses with the \overline{CS} and IOW. The commands do not make use of the data bus. Instructions include Clear First/Last Flip-Flop and Master Clear.

ACTIVE CYCLE

When the 8237A is in the Idle cycle and a non-masked channel requests a DMA service, the device will output an HRQ to the microprocessor and enter the Active cycle. It is in this cycle that the DMA service will take place, in one of four modes:

Single Transfer Mode—In Single Transfer mode the device is programmed to make one transfer only. The word count will be decremented and the address decremented or incremented following each transfer. When the word count "rolls over" from zero to FFFFH, a Terminal Count (TC) will cause an Auto-initialize if the channel has been programmed to do so.

DREQ must be held active until DACK becomes active in order to be recognized. If DREQ is held active throughout the single transfer, HRQ will go inactive and release the bus to the system. It will again go active and, upon receipt of a new HLDA, another single transfer will be performed. In 8080A, 8085AH, 8088, or 8086 system, this will ensure one full machine cycle execution between DMA transfers. Details of timing between the 8237A and other bus control protocols will depend upon the characteristics of the microprocessor involved.

Block Transfer Mode—In Block Transfer mode the device is activated by DREQ to continue making transfers during the service until a TC, caused by word count going to FFFFH, or an external End of

Process (EOP) is encountered. DREQ need only be held active until DACK becomes active. Again, an Autoinitialization will occur at the end of the service if the channel has been programmed for it.

Demand Transfer Mode—In Demand Transfer mode the device is programmed to continue making transfers until a TC or external EOP is encountered or until DREQ goes inactive. Thus transfers may continue until the I/O device has exhausted its data capacity. After the I/O device has had a chance to catch up, the DMA service is re-established by means of a DREQ. During the time between services when the microprocessor is allowed to operate, the intermediate values of address and word count are stored in the 8237A Current Address and Current Word Count registers. Only an EOP can cause an Autoinitialize at the end of the service. EOP is generated either by TC or by an external signal. DREQ has to be low before S4 to prevent another Transfer.

Cascade Mode—This mode is used to cascade more than one 8237A together for simple system expansion. The HRQ and HLDA signals from the additional 8237A are connected to the DREQ and DACK signals of a channel of the initial 8237A. This allows the DMA requests of the additional device to propagate through the priority network circuitry of the preceding device. The priority chain is preserved and the new device must wait for its turn to acknowledge requests. Since the cascade channel of the initial 8237A is used only for prioritizing the additional device, it does not output any address or control

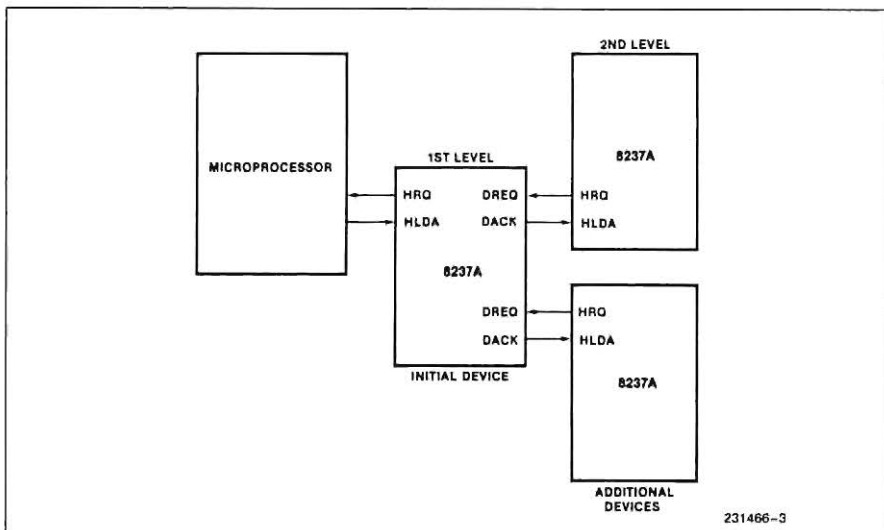


Figure 4. Cascaded 8237As

signals of its own. These could conflict with the outputs of the active channel in the added device. The 8237A will respond to DREQ and DACK but all other outputs except HRQ will be disabled. The ready input is ignored.

Figure 4 shows two additional devices cascaded into an initial device using two of the previous channels. This forms a two level DMA system. More 8237As could be added at the second level by using the remaining channels of the first level. Additional devices can also be added by cascading into the channels of the second level device, forming a third level.

TRANSFER TYPES

Each of the three active transfer modes can perform three different types of transfers. These are Read, Write and Verify. Write transfers move data from an I/O device to the memory by activating MEMW and $\overline{\text{IOR}}$. Read transfers move data from memory to an I/O device by activating MEMR and $\overline{\text{IOW}}$. Verify transfers are pseudo transfers. The 8237A operates as in Read or Write transfers generating addresses, and responding to EOP, etc. However, the memory and I/O control lines all remain inactive. The ready input is ignored in verify mode.

Memory-to-Memory—To perform block moves of data from one memory address space to another with a minimum of program effort and time, the 8237A includes a memory-to-memory transfer feature. Programming a bit in the Command register selects channels 0 and 1 to operate as memory-to-memory transfer channels. The transfer is initiated by setting the software DREQ for channel 0. The 8237A requests a DMA service in the normal manner. After HLDA is true, the device, using four state transfers in Block Transfer mode, reads data from the memory. The channel 0 Current Address register is the source for the address used and is decremented or incremented in the normal manner. The data byte read from the memory is stored in the 8237A internal Temporary register. Channel 1 then performs a four-state transfer of the data from the Temporary register to memory using the address in its Current Address register and incrementing or decrementing it in the normal manner. The channel 1 current Word Count is decremented. When the word count of channel 1 goes to FFFFH, a TC is generated causing an EOP output terminating the service.

Channel 0 may be programmed to retain the same address for all transfers. This allows a single word to be written to a block of memory.

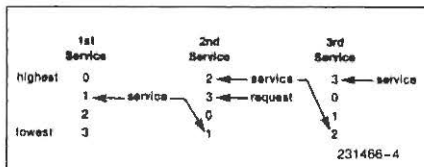
The 8237A will respond to external EOP signals during memory-to-memory transfers. Data comparators in block search schemes may use this input to terminate the service when a match is found. The timing of memory-to-memory transfers is found in Figure 12. Memory-to-memory operations can be detected as an active AEN with no DACK outputs.

Autoinitialize—By programming a bit in the Mode register, a channel may be set up as an Autoinitialize channel. During Autoinitialize initialization, the original values of the Current Address and Current Word Count registers are automatically restored from the Base Address and Base Word count registers of that channel following EOP. The base registers are loaded simultaneously with the current registers by the microprocessor and remain unchanged throughout the DMA service. The mask bit is not altered when the channel is in Autoinitialize. Following Autoinitialize the channel is ready to perform another DMA service, without CPU intervention, as soon as a valid DREQ is detected. In order to Autoinitialize both channels in a memory-to-memory transfer, both word counts should be programmed identically. If interrupted externally, EOP pulses should be applied in both bus cycles.

Priority—The 8237A has two types of priority encoding available as software selectable options. The first is Fixed Priority which fixes the channels in priority order based upon the descending value of their number. The channel with the lowest priority is 3 followed by 2, 1 and the highest priority channel, 0. After the recognition of any one channel for service, the other channels are prevented from interfering with that service until it is completed.

After completion of a service, HRQ will go inactive and the 8237A will wait for HLDA to go low before activating HRQ to service another channel.

The second scheme is Rotating Priority. The last channel to get service becomes the lowest priority channel with the others rotating accordingly.



With Rotating Priority in a single chip DMA system, any device requesting service is guaranteed to be recognized after no more than three higher priority services have occurred. This prevents any one channel from monopolizing the system.

Compressed Timing—In order to achieve even greater throughput where system characteristics permit, the 8237A can compress the transfer time to two clock cycles. From Figure 11 it can be seen that state S3 is used to extend the access time of the read pulse. By removing state S3, the read pulse width is made equal to the write pulse width and a transfer consists only of state S2 to change the address and state S4 to perform the read/write. S1 states will still occur when A8–A15 need updating (see Address Generation). Timing for compressed transfers is found in Figure 14.

Address Generation—In order to reduce pin count, the 8237A multiplexes the eight higher order address bits on the data lines. State S1 is used to output the higher order address bits to an external latch from which they may be placed on the address bus. The falling edge of Address Strobe (ADSTB) is used to load these bits from the data lines to the latch. Address Enable (AEN) is used to enable the bits onto the address bus through a three-state enable. The lower order address bits are output by the 8237A directly. Lines A0–A7 should be connected to the address bus. Figure 11 shows the time relationships between CLK, AEN, ADSTB, DB0–DB7 and A0–A7.

During Block and Demand Transfer mode services, which include multiple transfers, the addresses generated will be sequential. For many transfers the data held in the external address latch will remain the same. This data need only change when a carry or borrow from A7 to A8 takes place in the normal sequence of addresses. To save time and speed transfers, the 8237A executes S1 states only when updating of A8–A15 in the latch is necessary. This means for long services, S1 states and Address Strobes may occur only once every 256 transfers, a savings of 255 clock cycles for each 256 transfers.

REGISTER DESCRIPTION

Current Address Register—Each channel has a 16-bit Current Address register. This register holds the value of the address used during DMA transfers. The address is automatically incremented or decremented after each transfer and the intermediate values of the address are stored in the Current Address register during the transfer. This register is written or read by the microprocessor in successive 8-bit bytes. It may also be reinitialized by an Autoinitialize back to its original value. Autoinitialize takes place only after an EOP.

Current Word Register—Each channel has a 16-bit Current Word Count register. This register determines the number of transfers to be performed. The actual number of transfers will be one more than the number programmed in the Current Word Count register (i.e., programming a count of 100 will result in 101 transfers). The word count is decremented after each transfer. The intermediate value of the word count is stored in the register during the transfer. When the value in the register goes from zero to FFFFH, a TC will be generated. This register is loaded or read in successive 8-bit bytes by the microprocessor in the Program Condition. Following the end of a DMA service it may also be reinitialized by an Autoinitialization back to its original value. Autoinitialize can occur only when an EOP occurs. If it is not Autoinitialized, this register will have a count of FFFFH after TC.

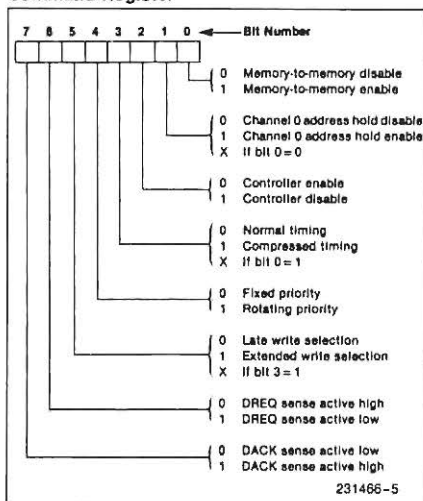
Base Address and Base Word Count Registers—Each channel has a pair of Base Address and Base Word Count registers. These 16-bit registers store the original value of their associated current registers. During Autoinitialize these values are used to restore the current registers to their original values. The base registers are written simultaneously with their corresponding current register in 8-bit bytes in the Program Condition by the microprocessor. These registers cannot be read by the microprocessor.

Command Register—This 8-bit register controls the operation of the 8237A. It is programmed by the microprocessor in the Program Condition and is cleared by Reset or a Master Clear instruction. The following table lists the function of the command bits. See Figure 6 for address coding.

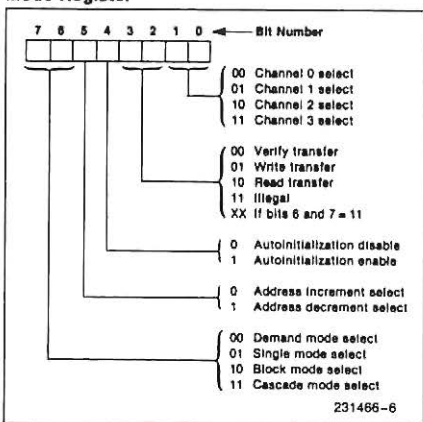
Mode Register—Each channel has a 6-bit Mode register associated with it. When the register is being written to by the microprocessor in the Program Condition, bits 0 and 1 determine which channel Mode register is to be written.

Request Register—The 8237A can respond to requests for DMA service which are initiated by software as well as by a DREQ. Each channel has a request bit associated with it in the 4-bit Request register. These are non-maskable and subject to prioritization by the Priority Encoder network. Each register bit is set or reset separately under software control or is cleared upon generation of a TC or external EOP. The entire register is cleared by a Reset. To set or reset a bit, the software loads the proper form of the data word. See Figure 5 for register address coding. In order to make a software request, the channel must be in Block Mode.

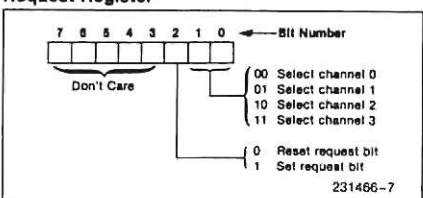
Command Register



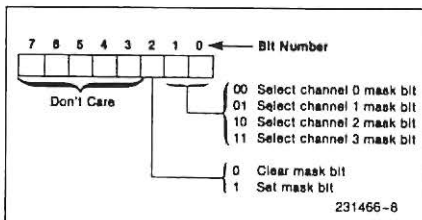
Mode Register



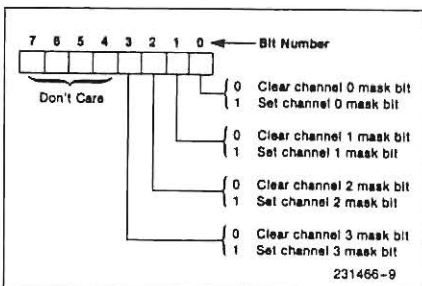
Request Register



Mask Register—Each channel has associated with it a mask bit which can be set to disable the incoming DREQ. Each mask bit is set when its associated channel produces an EOP if the channel is not programmed for Autoinitialize. Each bit of the 4-bit Mask register may also be set or cleared separately under software control. The entire register is also set by a Reset. This disables all DMA requests until a clear Mask register instruction allows them to occur. The instruction to separately set or clear the mask bits is similar in form to that used with the Request register. See Figure 5 for instruction addressing.



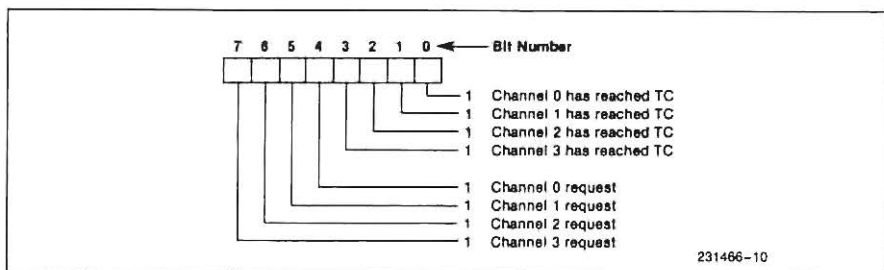
All four bits of the Mask register may also be written with a single command.



Register	Operation	Signals							
		CS	I/O	IO	A3	A2	A1	A0	
Command	Write	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	
Mode	Write	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	
Request	Write	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	
Mask	Set/Reset	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	
Mask	Write	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	
Temporary	Read	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	
Status	Read	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	

Figure 5. Definition of Register Codes

Status Register—The Status register is available to be read out of the 8237A by the microprocessor. It contains information about the status of the devices at this point. This information includes which channels have reached a terminal count and which chan-



nels have pending DMA requests. Bits 0-3 are set every time a TC is reached by that channel or an external EOP is applied. These bits are cleared upon Reset and on each Status Read. Bits 4-7 are set whenever their corresponding channel is requesting service.

Temporary Register—The Temporary register is used to hold data during memory-to-memory transfers. Following the completion of the transfers, the last word moved can be read by the microprocessor in the Program Condition. The Temporary register always contains the last byte transferred in the previous memory-to-memory operation, unless cleared by a Reset.

Software Commands—These are additional special software commands which can be executed in the Program Condition. They do not depend on any specific bit pattern on the data bus. The three software commands are:

Clear First/Last Flip-Flop: This command must be executed prior to writing or reading new address or word count information to the 8237A. This initializes the flip-flop to a known state so that subsequent accesses to register contents by the microprocessor will address upper and lower bytes in the correct sequence.

Master Clear: This software instruction has the same effect as the hardware Reset. The Command, Status, Request, Temporary, and Internal First/Last Flip-Flop registers are cleared and the Mask register is set. The 8237A will enter the Idle cycle.

Clear Mask Register: This command clears the mask bits of all four channels, enabling them to accept DMA requests.

Figure 6 lists the address codes for the software commands.

Signals						Operation
A3	A2	A1	A0	IOR	IOW	
1	0	0	0	0	1	Read Status Register
1	0	0	0	1	0	Write Command Register
1	0	0	1	0	1	Illegal
1	0	0	1	1	0	Write Request Register
1	0	1	0	0	1	Illegal
1	0	1	0	1	0	Write Single Mask Register Bit
1	0	1	1	0	1	Illegal
1	0	1	1	1	0	Write Mode Register
1	1	0	0	0	1	Illegal
1	1	0	0	1	0	Clear Byte Pointer Flip/Flop
1	1	0	1	0	1	Read Temporary Register
1	1	0	1	1	0	Master Clear
1	1	1	0	0	1	Illegal
1	1	1	0	1	0	Clear Mask Register
1	1	1	1	0	1	Illegal
1	1	1	1	1	0	Write All Mask Register Bits

Figure 6. Software Command Codes

Channel	Register	Operation	Signals								Internal Flip-Flop	Data Bus DB0-DB7
			CS	IOR	IOW	A3	A2	A1	A0			
0	Base and Current Address	Write	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	A0-A7
			0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	A8-A15	
	Current Address	Read	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	A8-A15	
	Base and Current Word Count	Write	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	W8-W15	
	Current Word Count	Read	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	W8-W15	
1	Base and Current Address	Write	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	A8-A15	
	Current Address	Read	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	A8-A15	
	Base and Current Word Count	Write	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	W8-W15	
	Current Word Count	Read	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	W8-W15	
2	Base and Current Address	Write	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	A8-A15	
	Current Address	Read	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	A8-A15	
	Base and Current Word Count	Write	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	W8-W15	
	Current Word Count	Read	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	W8-W15	
3	Base and Current Address	Write	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	A8-A15	
	Current Address	Read	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	A0-A7	
			0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	A8-A15	
	Base and Current Word Count	Write	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	W8-W15	
	Current Word Count	Read	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	W0-W7	
			0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	W8-W15	

Figure 7. Word Count and Address Register Command Codes

PROGRAMMING

The 8237A will accept programming from the host processor any time that HLDA is inactive; this is true even if HRQ is active. The responsibility of the host is to assure that programming and HLDA are mutually exclusive. Note that a problem can occur if a DMA request occurs, on an unmasked channel while the 8237A is being programmed. For instance, the CPU may be starting to reprogram the two byte Address register of channel 1 when channel 1 receives a DMA request. If the 8237A is enabled (bit 2 in the command register is 0) and channel 1 is unmasked, a DMA service will occur after only one byte of the Address register has been reprogrammed. This can be avoided by disabling the controller (setting bit 2 in the command register) or masking the channel before programming any other registers. Once the programming is complete, the controller can be enabled/unmasked.

After power-up it is suggested that all internal locations, especially the Mode registers, be loaded with some valid value. This should be done even if some

channels are unused. An invalid mode may force all control signals to go active at the same time.

APPLICATION INFORMATION (Note 1)

Figure 8 shows a convenient method for configuring a DMA system with the 8237A controller and an 8080A/8085AH microprocessor system. The multi-mode DMA controller issues a HRQ to the processor whenever there is at least one valid DMA request from a peripheral device. When the processor replies with a HLDA signal, the 8237A takes control of the address bus, the data bus and the control bus. The address for the first transfer operation comes out in two bytes—the least significant 8 bits on the eight address outputs and the most significant 8 bits on the data bus. The contents of the data bus are then latched into an 8-bit latch to complete the full 16 bits of the address bus. The 8282 is a high speed, 8-bit, three-state latch in a 20-pin package. After the initial transfer takes place, the latch is updated only after a carry or borrow is generated in the least significant address byte. Four DMA channels are provided when one 8237A is used.

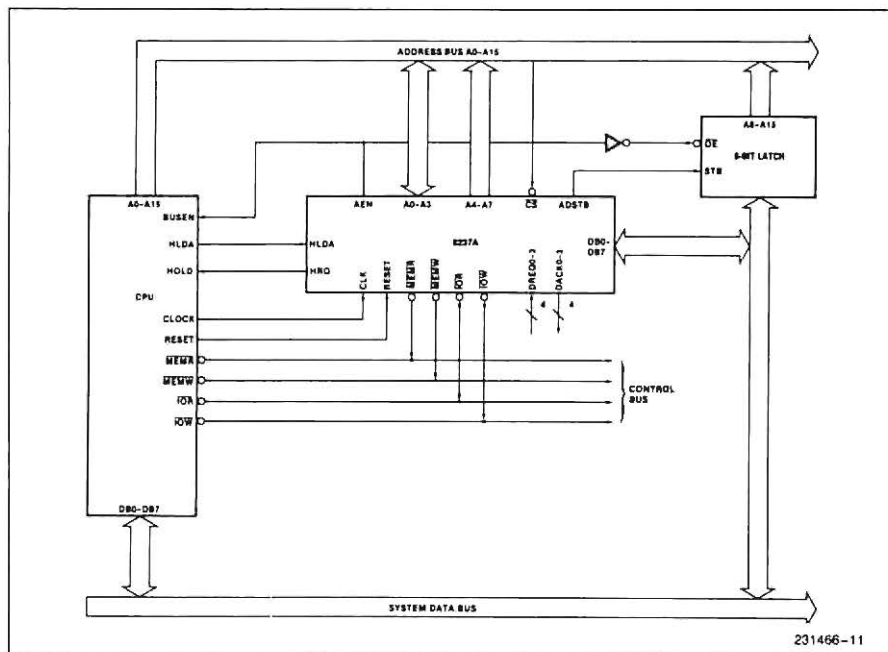


Figure 8. 8237A System Interface

NOTE:

1. See Application Note AP-67 for 8086 design information.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Ambient Temperature under Bias	.....0°C to 70°C
Case Temperature	.....0°C to +75°C
Storage Temperature	.....-65°C to +150°C
Voltage on Any Pin with Respect to Ground	.....-0.5V to +7V
Power Dissipation	.....1.5 Watt

*Notice: Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

D.C. CHARACTERISTICS

T_A = 0°C to 70°C, T_{CASE} = 0°C to 75°C, V_{CC} = +5.0V ±5%, GND = 0V

Symbol	Parameter	Min	Typ (Note 1)	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
V _{OH}	Output High Voltage	2.4			V	I _{OH} = -200 μA
		3.3			V	I _{OH} = -100 μA (HRQ Only)
V _{OL}	Output LOW Voltage			0.40	V	I _{OL} = 3.2 mA
V _{IH}	Input HIGH Voltage	2.0		V _{CC} + 0.5	V	
V _{IL}	Input LOW Voltage	-0.5		0.8	V	
I _{LI}	Input Load Current			± 10	μA	0V ≤ V _{IN} ≤ V _{CC}
I _{LO}	Output Leakage Current			± 10	μA	0.45V ≤ V _{OUT} ≤ V _{CC}
I _{CC}	V _{CC} Supply Current		110	130	mA	T _A = +25°C
			130	150	mA	T _A = 0°C
C _O	Output Capacitance		4	8	pF	f _c = 1.0 MHz, Inputs = 0V
C _I	Input Capacitance		8	15	pF	
C _{IO}	I/O Capacitance		10	18	pF	

NOTE:

1. Typical values are for T_A = 25°C, nominal supply voltage and nominal processing parameters.

A.C. CHARACTERISTICS—DMA (MASTER) MODE

T_A = 0°C to 70°C, T_{case} = 0°C to 75°C, V_{CC} = +5V ± 5%, GND = 0V

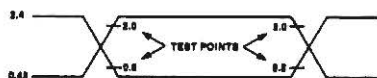
Symbol	Parameter	8237A		8237A-4		8237A-5		Unit
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	
TAEL	AEN HIGH from CLK LOW (S1) Delay Time		300		225		200	ns
TAET	AEN LOW from CLK HIGH (S1) Delay Time		200		150		130	ns
TAFAB	ADR Active to Float Delay from CLK HIGH		150		120		90	ns
TAFC	READ or WRITE Float from CLK HIGH		150		120		120	ns
TAFOB	DB Active to Float Delay from CLK HIGH		250		190		170	ns
TAHR	ADR from READ HIGH Hold Time	TCY-100		TCY-100		TCY-100		ns
TAHS	DB from ADSTB LOW Hold Time	40		40		30		ns
TAHW	ADR from WRITE HIGH Hold Time	TCY-50		TCY-50		TCY-50		ns
TAK	DACK Valid from CLK LOW Delay Time (Note 1)		250		220		170	ns
	EOP HIGH from CLK HIGH Delay Time (Note 2)		250		190		170	ns
	EOP LOW from CLK HIGH Delay Time		250		190		170	ns
TASM	ADR Stable from CLK HIGH		250		190		170	ns
TASS	DB to ADSTB LOW Setup Time	100		100		100		ns
TCH	Clock High Time (Transitions ≤ 10 ns)	120		100		80		ns
TCL	Clock LOW Time (Transitions ≤ 10 ns)	150		110		88		ns
TCY	CLK Cycle Time	320		250		200		ns
TDCL	CLK HIGH to READ or WRITE LOW Delay (Note 3)		270		200		190	ns
TDCTR	READ HIGH from CLK HIGH (S4) Delay Time (Note 3)		270		210		190	ns
TDCTW	WRITE HIGH from CLK HIGH (S4) Delay Time (Note 3)		200		150		130	ns
TDQ1	HRQ Valid from CLK HIGH Delay Time (Note 4)		180		120		120	ns
			250		190		120	ns
TEPS	EOP LOW from CLK LOW Setup Time	80		45		40		ns
TEPW	EOP Pulse Width	300		225		220		ns
TFAAB	ADR Float to Active Delay from CLK HIGH		250		190		170	ns
TFAC	READ or WRITE Active from CLK HIGH		200		150		150	ns
TFADB	DB Float to Active Delay from CLK HIGH		300		225		200	ns
THS	HLDA Valid to CLK HIGH Setup Time	100		75		75		ns
TIDH	Input Data from MEMR HIGH Hold Time	0		0		0		ns
TIDS	Input Data to MEMR HIGH Setup Time	250		190		170		ns
TODH	Output Data from MEMW HIGH Hold Time	20		20		10		ns
TODV	Output Data Valid to MEMW HIGH	200		125		125		ns
TQS	DREQ to CLK LOW (S1, S4) Setup Time (Note 1)	0		0		0		ns
TRH	CLK to READY LOW Hold Time	20		20		20		ns
TRS	READY to CLK LOW Setup Time	100		80		80		ns
TSTL	ADSTB HIGH from CLK HIGH Delay Time		200		150		130	ns
TSTT	ADSTB LOW from CLK HIGH Delay Time		140		110		90	ns

A.C. CHARACTERISTICS—PERIPHERAL (SLAVE) MODET_A = 0°C to 70°C, T_{case} = 0°C to 75°C, V_{CC} = +5V ±5%, GND = 0V

Symbol	Parameter	8237A		8237A-4		8237A-5		Unit
		Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	
TAR	ADR Valid or \overline{CS} LOW to \overline{RD} LOW	50		50		50		ns
TAW	ADR Valid to \overline{WE} HIGH Setup Time	200		150		130		ns
TCW	\overline{CS} LOW to \overline{WE} HIGH Setup Time	200		150		130		ns
TDW	Data Valid to \overline{WE} HIGH Setup Time	200		150		130		ns
TRA	ADR or \overline{CS} Hold from \overline{RD} HIGH	0		0		0		ns
TRDE	Data Access from \overline{RD} LOW (Note 5)		200		200		140	ns
TRDF	DB Float Delay from \overline{RD} HIGH	20	100	20	100	0	70	ns
TRSTD	Power Supply HIGH to \overline{RESET} LOW Setup Time	500		500		500		ns
TRSTS	\overline{RESET} to First \overline{IOW}	2TCY		2TCY		2TCY		ns
TRSTW	\overline{RESET} Pulse Width	300		300		300		ns
TRW	\overline{RD} Width	300		250		200		ns
TWA	ADR from \overline{WE} HIGH Hold Time	20		20		20		ns
TWC	\overline{CS} HIGH from \overline{WE} HIGH Hold Time	20		20		20		ns
TWD	Data from \overline{WE} HIGH Hold Time	30		30		30		ns
TWWS	Write Width	200		200		160		ns
TWR	End of Write to End of Read in DMA Transfer	0		0		0		ns

NOTES:

1. DREQ and DACK signals may be active high or active low. Timing diagrams assume the active high mode.
2. \overline{EOP} is an open collector output. This parameter assumes the presence of a 2.2K pullup to V_{CC}.
3. The net \overline{IOW} or \overline{MEMW} Pulse width for normal write will be TCY - 100 ns and for extended write will be 2TCY - 100 ns. The net \overline{IOR} or \overline{MEMR} pulse width for normal read will be 2TCY - 50 ns and for compressed read will be TCY - 50 ns.
4. TDQ is specified for two different output HIGH levels. TDQ1 is measured at 2.0V. TDQ2 is measured at 3.3V. The value for TDQ2 assumes an external 3.3 K Ω pull-up resistor connected from HRQ to V_{CC}.
5. Output Loading on the Data Bus is 1 TTL Gate plus 100 pF capacitance.

A.C. TESTING INPUT/OUTPUT WAVEFORM

231466-12

A.C. Testing: Inputs are driven at 2.4V for a Logic "1" and 0.45V for a Logic "0." Timing measurements are made at 2.0V for a Logic "1" and 0.8V for a Logic "0." Input timing parameters assume transition times of 20 ns or less. Waveform measurement points for both input and output signals are 2.0V for HIGH and 0.8V for LOW, unless otherwise noted.

WAVEFORMS

SLAVE MODE WRITE TIMING

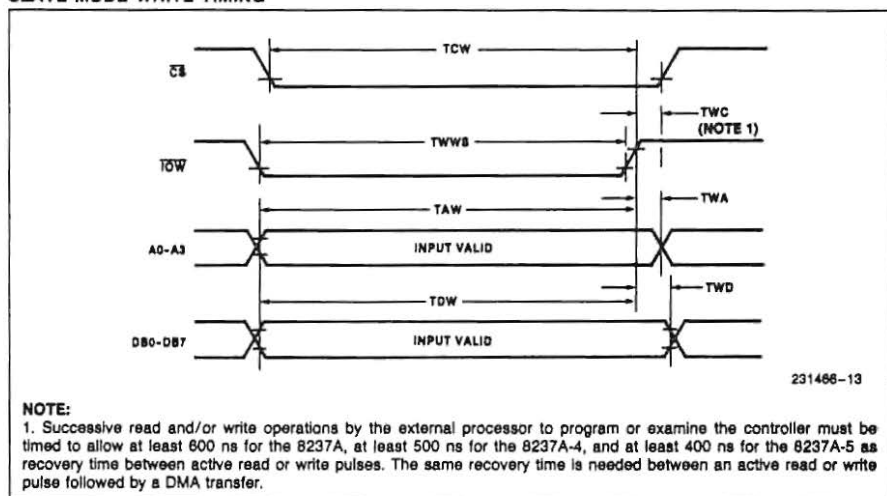


Figure 9. Slave Mode Write

SLAVE MODE READ TIMING

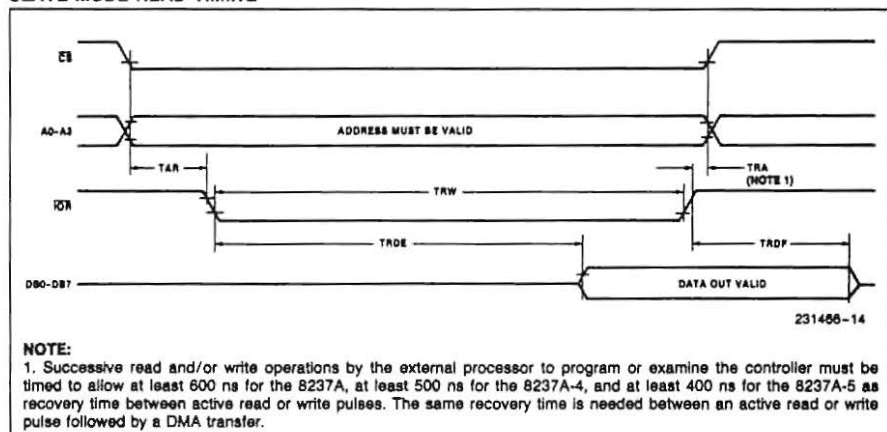


Figure 10. Slave Mode Read

WAVEFORMS (Continued)

COMPRESSED TRANSFER TIMING

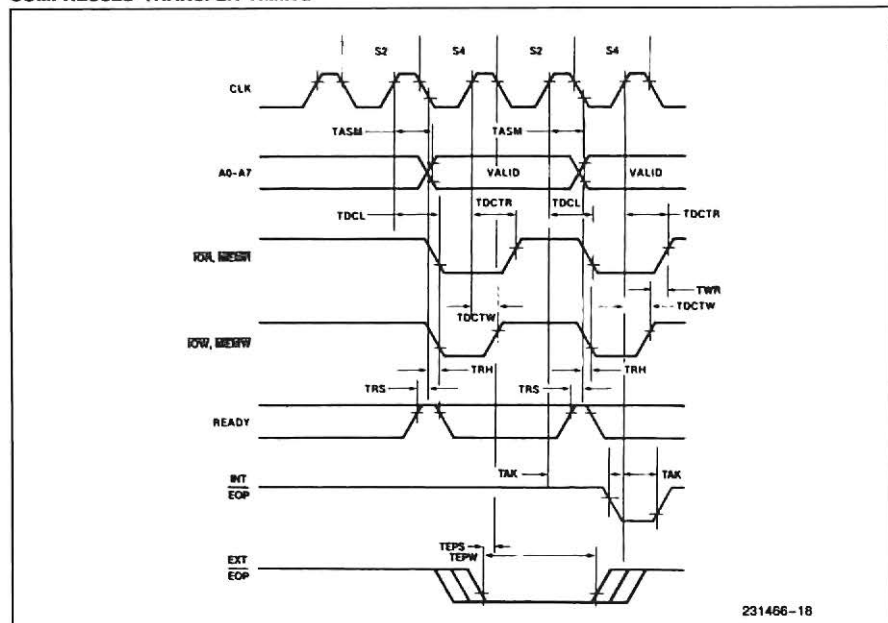


Figure 14. Compressed Transfer

RESET TIMING

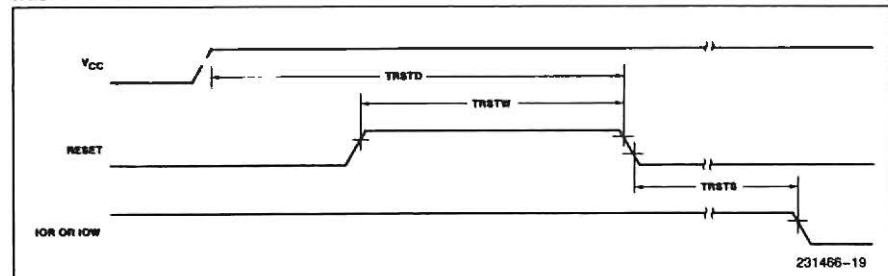


Figure 15. Reset

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

1. **Cascading from channel zero.** When using multiple 8237s, always start cascading with channel zero. Channel zero of the 8237 will operate incorrectly if one or more of channels 1, 2, or 3 are used in the cascade mode while channel zero is used in a mode other than cascade.
2. **Do not treat the DREQ signal as an asynchronous input while the channel is in the "demand" or "cascade" modes.** If DREQ becomes inactive at any time during state S4, an illegal state may occur causing the 8237 to operate improperly.
3. **HRQ must remain active until HLDA becomes active.** If HRQ goes inactive before HLDA is received the 8237 can enter an illegal state causing it to operate improperly.
4. **Make sure the MEMR# line has 50 pF loading capacitance on it.** When doing memory to memory transfers, the 8237 requires at least 50 pF loading capacitance on the MEMR# signal for proper operation. In most cases board capacitance is sufficient.
5. **Treat the READY input as a synchronous input.** If a transition occurs during the setup/hold window, erratic operation may result.

DATA SHEET REVISION REVIEW

The following list represents key differences between this and the -002 data sheet. Please review this summary carefully.

1. Major cleanup on the "NOTE" sections of this data sheet.
 - a. Pin 5 no longer references a note. It is now included in the pin description area under the name "PIN5".
 - b. The note placed in the "typical" section of the D.C. Characteristics table is now referenced to a note section included with that table.
 - c. Notes in the A.C. Characteristics table have been renumbered and are included in a notes section for the A.C. Characteristics.
 - d. The note that was previously referenced in the A.C. TESTING INPUT/OUTPUT WAVEFORM diagram has been replaced with the actual note.
 - e. The note that was previously referenced in the SLAVE MODE WRITE TIMING diagram has been included in a "NOTE" section with the diagram.
 - f. The note that was previously referenced in the SLAVE MODE READ TIMING diagram has been included in a "NOTE" section with the diagram.
 - g. The note that was previously referenced in the DMA TRANSFER TIMING diagram has been included in a "NOTE" section with the diagram.
2. A "Design Considerations" section was added to alert designers to certain design aspects of the 8237.
3. The timing parameters TAR for the 8237A-4 and 8237A-5 have been changed from 50 ns to 0 ns.





8272A SINGLE/DOUBLE DENSITY FLOPPY DISK CONTROLLER

- IBM Compatible in Both Single and Double Density Recording Formats
- Programmable Data Record Lengths: 128, 256, 512, or 1024 Bytes/Sector
- Multi-Sector and Multi-Track Transfer Capability
- Drives Up to 4 Floppy or Mini-Floppy Disks
- Controls 8", 5 1/4" and 3 1/2" Floppy Disk Drives
- Data Transfers in DMA or Non-DMA Mode
- Parallel Seek Operations on Up to Four Drives
- Compatible with all Intel and Most Other Microprocessors
- Single-Phase 8 MHz Clock
- Single +5V Power Supply ($\pm 10\%$)
- Plastic 40 Pin DIP or 40 Pin Cerdip Packages

The 8272A is an LSI Floppy Disk Controller (FDC) Chip, which contains the circuitry and control functions for interfacing a processor to 4 Floppy Disk Drives. It is capable of supporting either IBM 3740 single density format (FM), or IBM System 34 Double Density format (MFM) including double sided recording. The 8272A provides control signals which simplify the design of an external phase locked loop and write precompensation circuitry. The FDC simplifies and handles most of the burdens associated with implementing a Floppy Disk Drive Interface. The 8272A is a pin-compatible upgrade to the 8272.

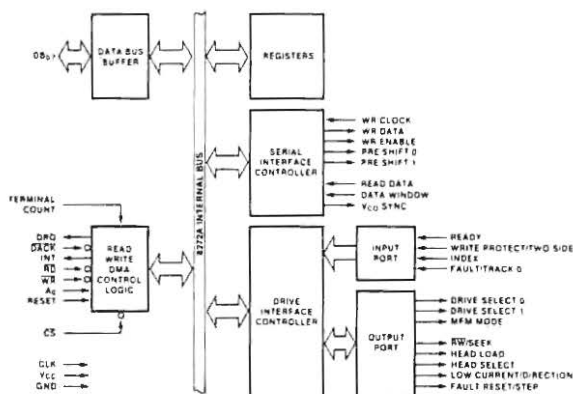


Figure 1. 8272A Internal Block Diagram

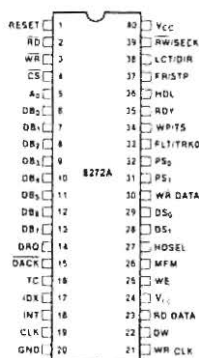


Figure 2. Pin Configuration

Table 1. Pin Description

Symbol	Pin No.	Type	Connection To	Name and Function
RESET	1	I	μ P	RESET: Places FDC in idle state. Resets output lines to FDD to "0" (low). Does not clear the last specify command.
\overline{RD}	2	I(1)	μ P	READ: Control signal for transfer of data from FDC to Data Bus, when "0" (low).
\overline{WR}	3	I(1)	μ P	WRITE: Control signal for transfer of data to FDC via Data Bus, when "0" (low).
\overline{CS}	4	I	μ P	CHIP SELECT: IC selected when "0" (low) allowing \overline{RD} and \overline{WR} to be enabled.
A_0	5	I(1)	μ P	DATA/STATUS REGISTER SELECT: Selects Data Reg ($A_0 = 1$) or Status Reg ($A_0 = 0$) contents to be sent to Data Bus.
DB_0-DB_7	6-13	I/O(1)	μ P	DATA BUS: Bidirectional 8-Bit Data Bus.
DRQ	14	O	DMA	DATA DMA REQUEST: DMA Request is being made by FDC when DRQ "1".(3)
\overline{DACK}	15	I	DMA	DMA ACKNOWLEDGE: DMA cycle is active when "0" (low) and Controller is performing DMA transfer.
TC	16	I	DMA	TERMINAL COUNT: Indicates the termination of a DMA transfer when "1" (high)(2).
IDX	17	I	FDD	INDEX: Indicates the beginning of a disk track.
INT	18	O	μ P	INTERRUPT: Interrupt Request Generated by FDC.
CLK	19	I		CLOCK: Single Phase 8 MHz (4 MHz for mini floppies) Squarewave Clock.
GND	20			GROUND: D.C. Power Return.
V_{CC}	40			D.C. POWER: + 5V
$\overline{RW}/\overline{SEEK}$	39	O	FDD	READ WRITE/SEEK: When "1" (high) Seek mode selected and when "0" (low) Read/Write mode selected.
$\overline{LCT}/\overline{DIR}$	38	O	FDD	LOW CURRENT/DIRECTION: Lowers Write current on inner tracks in Read/Write mode, determines direction head will step in Seek mode.
$\overline{FR}/\overline{STP}$	37	O	FDD	FAULT RESET/STEP: Resets fault FF in FDD in Read/Write mode, provides step pulses to move head to another cylinder in Seek mode.
HDL	36	O	FDD	HEAD LOAD: Command which causes Read/Write head in FDD to contact diskette.
RDY	35	I	FDD	READY: Indicates FDD is ready to send or receive data. Must be tied high (gated by the index pulse) for mini floppies which do not normally have a Ready line.
$\overline{WP}/\overline{TS}$	34	I	FDD	WRITE PROTECT/TWO-SIDE: Senses Write Protect status in Read/Write mode, and Two Side Media in Seek mode.
$\overline{FLT}/\overline{TRK0}$	33	I	FDD	FAULT/TRACK 0: Senses FDD fault condition in Read/Write mode and Track 0 condition in Seek mode.
$\overline{PS}_1, \overline{PS}_0$	31, 32	O	FDD	PRECOMPENSATION (PRE-SHIFT): Write precompensation status during MFM mode. Determines early, late, and normal times.
$\overline{WR DATA}$	30	O	FDD	WRITE DATA: Serial clock and data bits to FDD.
$\overline{DS}_1, \overline{DS}_0$	28, 29	O	FDD	DRIVE SELECT: Selects FDD unit.

Table 1. Pin Description (Continued)

Symbol	Pin No.	Type	Connection To	Name and Function
HOSEL	27	O	FDD	HEAD SELECT: Head 1 selected when "1" (high) Head 0 selected when "0" (low).
MFM	26	O	PLL	MFM MODE: MFM mode when "1," FM mode when "0".
WE	25	O	FDD	WRITE ENABLE: Enables write data into FDD.
VCO	24	O	PLL	VCO SYNC: Inhibits VCO in PLL when "0" (low), enables VCO when "1."
RD DATA	23	I	FDD	READ DATA: Read data from FDD, containing clock and data bits.
DW	22	I	PLL	DATA WINDOW: Generated by PLL, and used to sample data from FDD.
WR CLK	21	I		WRITE CLOCK: Write data rate to FDD FM = 500 kHz, MFM = 1 MHz, with a pulse width of 250 ns for both FM and MFM. Must be enabled for all operations, both Read and Write.

NOTES:

1. Disabled when $\overline{CS} = 1$.
2. TC must be activated to terminate the Execution Phase of any command.
3. DRQ is also an input for certain test modes. It should have a 5 k Ω pull-up resistor to prevent activation.

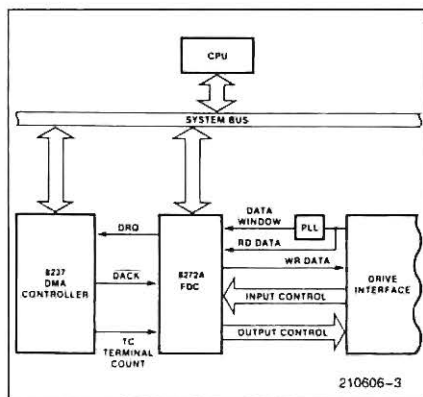


Figure 3. 8272A System Block Diagram

load a command into the FDC and all data transfers occur under control of the 8272A and DMA controller.

There are 15 separate commands which the 8272A will execute. Each of these commands require multiple 8-bit bytes to fully specify the operation which the processor wishes the FDC to perform. The following commands are available.

Read Data	Write Data
Read ID	Format a Track
Read Deleted Data	Write Deleted Data
Read a Track	Seek
Scan Equal	Recalibrate (Restore to Track 0)
Scan High or Equal	Sense Interrupt Status
Scan Low or Equal	Sense Drive Status
Specify	

For more information see the Intel Application Notes AP-116 and AP-121.

DESCRIPTION

Hand-shaking signals are provided in the 8272A which make DMA operation easy to incorporate with the aid of an external DMA Controller chip, such as the 8237A. The FDC will operate in either DMA or Non-DMA mode. In the Non-DMA mode, the FDC generates interrupts to the processor for every transfer of a data byte between the CPU and the 8272A. In the DMA mode, the processor need only

FEATURES

Address mark detection circuitry is internal to the FDC which simplifies the phase locked loop and read electronics. The track stepping rate, head load time, and head unload time may be programmed by the user. The 8272A offers many additional features such as multiple sector transfers in both read and write modes with a single command, and full IBM compatibility in both single (FM) and double density (MFM) modes.

8272A ENHANCEMENTS

On the 8272A, after detecting the Index Pulse, the VCO Sync output stays low for a shorter period of time. See Figure 4a.

On the 8272 there can be a problem reading data when Gap 4A is 00 and there is no IAM. This occurs on some older floppy formats. The 8272A cures this problem by adjusting the VCO Sync timing so that it is not low during the data field. See Figure 4b.

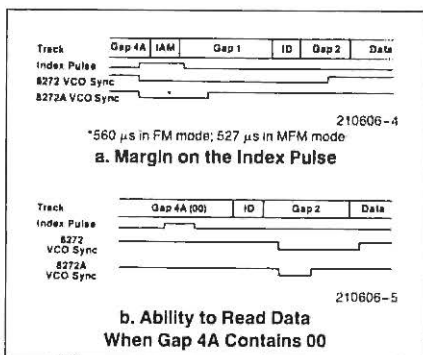


Figure 4. 8272A Enhancements over the 8272

8272A REGISTERS—CPU INTERFACE

The 8272A contains two registers which may be accessed by the main system processor; a Status Register and a Data Register. The 8-bit Main Status Register contains the status information of the FDC, and may be accessed at any time. The 8-bit Data Register (actually consists of several registers in a stack with only one register presented to the data bus at a time), stores data, commands, parameters, and FDD status information. Data bytes are read out of, or written into, the Data Register in order to program or obtain the results after execution of a command. The Status Register may only be read and is used to facilitate the transfer of data between the processor and 8272A.

The relationship between the Status/Down registers and the signals \overline{RD} , \overline{WR} , and A_0 is shown in Table 2.

Table 2. A_0 , \overline{RD} , \overline{WR} Decoding for the Selection of Status/Data Register Functions.

A_0	\overline{RD}	\overline{WR}	Function
0	0	1	Read Main Status Register
0	1	0	Illegal(1)
0	0	0	Illegal(1)
1	0	0	Illegal(1)
1	0	1	Read from Data Register
1	1	0	Write into Data Register

NOTE:

1. Design must guarantee that the 8272A is not subjected to illegal inputs.

The Main Status Register bits are defined in Table 3.

Table 3. Main Status Register Bit Description

Bit Number	Name	Symbol	Description
D ₀	FDD 0 Busy	D ₀ B	FDD number 0 is in the Seek mode.
D ₁	FDD 1 Busy	D ₁ B	FDD number 1 is in the Seek mode.
D ₂	FDD 2 Busy	D ₂ B	FDD number 2 is in the Seek mode.
D ₃	FDD 3 Busy	D ₃ B	FDD number 3 is in the Seek mode.
D ₄	FDC Busy	CB	A read or write command is in process.
D ₅	Non-DMA Mode	NDM	The FDC is in the non-DMA mode. This bit is set only during the execution phase in non-DMA mode. Transition to "0" state indicates execution phase has ended.
D ₆	Data Input/Output	DIO	Indicates direction of data transfer between FDC and Data Register. If DIO = "1" then transfer is from Data Register to the Processor. If DIO = "0", then transfer is from the Processor to Data Register.
D ₇	Request for Master	RQM	Indicates Data Register is ready to send or receive data to or from the Processor. Both bits DIO and RQM should be used to perform the handshaking functions of "ready" and "direction" to the processor.

The DIO and RQM bits in the Status Register indicate when Data is ready and in which direction data will be transferred on the Data Bus.

NOTE:

There is a 12 μ s or 24 μ s RQM flag delay when using an 8 or 4 MHz clock respectively.

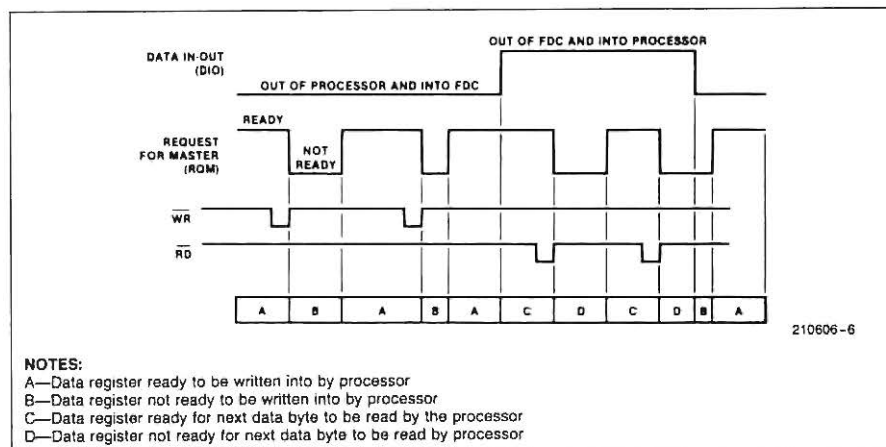


Figure 5. Status Register Timing

The 8272A is capable of executing 15 different commands. Each command is initiated by a multi-byte transfer from the processor, and the result after execution of the command may also be a multi-byte transfer back to the processor. Because of this multi-byte interchange of information between the 8272A and the processor, it is convenient to consider each command as consisting of three phases:

Command Phase: The FDC receives all information required to perform a particular operation from the processor.

Execution Phase: The FDC performs the operation it was instructed to do.

Result Phase: After completion of the operation, status and other house-keeping information are made available to the processor.

During Command or Result Phases the Main Status Register (described in Table 3) must be read by the processor before each byte of information is written into or read from the Data Register. Bits D6 and D7 in the Main Status Register must be in a 0 and 1 state, respectively, before each byte of the command word may be written into the 8272A. Many of the commands require multiple bytes, and as a result the Main Status Register must be read prior to each byte transfer to the 8272A. On the other hand, during the Result Phase, D6 and D7 in the Main Status Register must both be 1's (D6 = 1 and D7 = 1) before reading each byte from the Data Register.

NOTE:

This reading of the Main Status Register before each byte transfer to the 8272A is required in only the Command and Result Phases, and NOT during the Execution Phase.

During the Execution Phase, the Main Status Register need not be read. If the 8272A is in the non-DMA Mode, then the receipt of each data byte (if 8272A is reading data from FDD) is indicated by an interrupt signal on pin 18 (INT = 1). The generation of a Read signal (RD = 0) will reset the interrupt as well as output the Data onto the Data Bus. For example, if the processor cannot handle interrupts fast enough (every 13 μ s for MFM mode) then it may poll the Main Status Register and then bit D7 (ROM) functions just like the Interrupt signal. If a Write Command is in process, then the WR signal performs the reset to the Interrupt signal.

The 8272A always operates in a multi-sector transfer mode. It continues to transfer data until the TC input is active. In Non-DMA Mode, the system must supply the TC input.

If the 8272A is in the DMA Mode, no interrupts are generated during the Execution Phase. The 8272A generates DRQ's (DMA Requests) when each byte of data is available. The DMA Controller responds to this request with both a $\overline{\text{DACK}} = 0$ (DMA Acknowledge) and a $\overline{\text{RD}} = 0$ (Read signal). When the DMA Acknowledge signal goes low ($\overline{\text{DACK}} = 0$) then the DMA Request is reset (DRQ = 0). If a Write Command has been programmed then a $\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal will appear instead of $\overline{\text{RD}}$. After the Execution Phase has been completed (Terminal Count has occurred) then an Interrupt will occur (INT = 1). This signifies the beginning of the Result Phase. When the first byte of data is read during the Result Phase, the Interrupt is automatically reset (INT = 0).

It is important to note that during the Result Phase all bytes shown in the Command Table must be read. The Read Data Command, for example has seven bytes of data in the Result Phase. All seven bytes must be read in order to successfully complete the Read Data Command. The 8272A will not accept a new command until all seven bytes have been read. Other commands may require fewer bytes to be read during the Result Phase.

The 8272A contains five Status Registers. The Main Status Register mentioned above may be read by the processor at any time. The other four Status Registers (ST0, ST1, ST2, and ST3) are only available during the Result Phase, and may be read only after successfully completing a command. The particular command which has been executed determines how many of the Status Registers will be read.

The bytes of data which are sent to the 8272A to form the Command Phase, and are read out of the 8272A in the Result Phase, must occur in the order shown in the Table 4. That is, the Command Code must be sent first and the other bytes sent in the prescribed sequence. No foreshortening of the Command or Result Phases are allowed. After the last byte of data in the Command Phase is sent to the 8272A, the Execution Phase automatically starts. In a similar fashion, when the last byte of

Table 4. 8272A Command Set (Continued)

Phase	R/W	Data Bus								Remarks	
		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀		
READ A TRACK											
Command	W	0	MFM	SK	0	0	0	1	0	Command Codes	
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0		
	W					C					Sector ID Information Prior to Command Execution
	W					H					
	W					R					
	W					N					
	W					EOT					
	W					GPL					
Execution	W					DTL				Data Transfer Between the FDD and Main-System. FDC Reads all of Cylinders Contents from Index Hole to EOT	
Result	R					ST 0				Status Information After Command Execution	
	R					ST 1					
	R					ST 2					
	R					C					
	R					H				Sector ID Information After Command Execution	
	R					R					
	R					N					
	R										
READ ID											
Command	W	0	MFM	0	0	1	0	1	0	Commands	
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0		
Execution										The First Correct ID Information on the Cylinder is Stored in Data Register	
Result	R					ST 0				Status Information After Command Execution	
	R					ST 1					
	R					ST 2					
	R					C					
	R					H				Sector ID Information During Execution Phase	
	R					R					
	R					N					
	R										

Table 4. 8272A Command Set (Continued)

Table 10-12-1A Command Set (Continued)											
Phase	R/W	Data Bus								Remarks	
		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀		
FORMAT A TRACK											
Command	W	0	MFM	0	0	1	1	0	1	Command Codes	
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0		
	W					N					Bytes/Sector
	W					SC					Sectors/Cylinder
	W					GPL					Gap 3
Execution	W					D				Filler Byte	
										FDC Formats an Entire Cylinder	
Result	R					ST 0					Status Information After Command Execution
	R					ST 1					
	R					ST 2					
	R					C				In This Case, the ID Information has no Meaning	
	R					H					
	R					R					
	R					N					

Table 4. 8272A Command Set (Continued)

Table 4. 0272A Command Set (Continued)										
Phase	R/W	Data Bus								Remarks
		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀	
SCAN EQUAL										
Command	W	MT	MFM	SK	1	0	0	0	1	Command Codes
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0	
	W					C			Sector ID Information Prior to Command Execution	
	W					H				
	W					R				
	W					N				
	W					EOT				
	W					GPL				
W					STP					
Execution										Data Compared Between the FDD and Main-System
Result	R					ST 0				Status Information After Command Execution
	R					ST 1				
	R					ST 2				
	R					C				
	R					H				
	R					R				
	R					N				
SCAN LOW OR EQUAL										
Command	W	MT	MFM	SK	1	1	0	0	1	Command Codes
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0	
	W					C			Sector ID Information Prior to Command Execution	
	W					H				
	W					R				
	W					N				
	W					EOT				
	W					GPL				
W					STP					
Execution										Data Compared Between the FDD and Main-System
Result	R					ST 0				Status Information After Command Execution
	R					ST 1				
	R					ST 2				
	R					C				
	R					H				
	R					R				
	R					N				

Table 4. 8272A Command Set (Continued)

Table 4: SEVERA Command Set (Continued)											
Phase	R/W	Data Bus								Remarks	
		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀		
SCAN HIGH OR EQUAL											
Command	W	MT	MFM	SK	1	1	1	0	1	Command Codes	
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0		
	W					C					Sector ID Information Prior to Command Execution
	W					H					
	W					R					
	W					N					
	W					EOT					
	W					GPL					
Execution	W					STP				Data Compared Between the FDD and Main-System	
Result	R					ST 0				Status Information After Command Execution	
	R					ST 1					
	R					ST 2					
	R					C					
	R					H					Sector ID Information After Command Execution
	R					R					
	R					N					
	R										
RECALIBRATE											
Command	W	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	Command Codes	
Execution	W	0	0	0	0	0	0	DS1	DS0		
Head Retracted to Track 0											
SENSE INTERRUPT STATUS											
Command	W	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	Command Codes Status Information at the End of Each Seek Operation About the FDC	
Result	R					ST 0					
	R					PCN					

Table 4. 8272A Command Set (Continued)

Phase	R/W	Data Bus								Remarks
		D ₇	D ₆	D ₅	D ₄	D ₃	D ₂	D ₁	D ₀	
SPECIFY										
Command	W	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	Command Codes
	W	—	SRT	→		←		HUT	—	
	W	—	HLT	→					ND	
SENSE DRIVE STATUS										
Command	W	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Command Codes
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0	
Result	R	—			ST 3		—			Status Information about FDD
SEEK										
Command	W	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	Command Codes
	W	0	0	0	0	0	HDS	DS1	DS0	
	W	—			NCN		—			
Execution										Head is Positioned Over Proper Cylinder on Diskette
INVALID										
Command	W	Invalid Codes								Invalid Command Codes (NoOp—FDC Goes Into Standby State) ST 0 = 80 (16)
Result	R	ST 0								

Table 5. Command Mnemonics

Symbol	Name	Description
A ₀	Address Line 0	A ₀ controls selection of Main Status Register (A ₀ = 0) or Data Register (A ₀ = 1).
C	Cylinder Number	C stands for the current selected Cylinder track number 0 through 76 of the medium.
D	Data	D stands for the data pattern which is going to be written into a Sector.
D ₇ -D ₀	Data Bus	8-bit Data bus where D ₇ is the most significant bit, and D ₀ is the least significant bit.
DS0, DS1	Drive Select	DS stands for a selected drive number 0 or 1.
DTL	Data Length	When N is defined as 00, DTL stands for the data length which users are going to read out or write into the Sector.
EOT	End of Track	EOT stands for the final Sector number of a Cylinder.
GPL	Gap Length	GPL stands for the length of Gap 3 (spacing between Sectors excluding VCO Sync Field).
H	Head Address	H stands for head number 0 or 1, as specified in ID field.
HDS	Head Select	HDS stands for a selected head number 0 or 1 (H = HDS in all command words).
HLT	Head Load Time	HLT stands for the head load time in the FDD (2 to 254 ms in 2 ms increments).
HUT	Head Unload Time	HUT stands for the head unload time after a read or write operation has occurred (16 to 240 ms in 16 ms increments).
MFM	FM or MFM Mode	If MF is low, FM mode is selected and if it is high, MFM mode is selected.
MT	Multi-Track	If MT is high, a multi-track operation is to be performed (a cylinder under both HD0 and HD1 will be read or written).
N	Number	N stands for the number of data bytes written in a Sector.
NCN	New Cylinder Number	NCN stands for a new Cylinder number, which is going to be reached as a result of the Seek operation. Desired position of Head.
ND	Non-DMA Mode	ND stands for operation in the Non-DMA Mode.
PCN	Present Cylinder Number	PCN stands for the Cylinder number at the completion of SENSE INTERRUPT STATUS Command. Position of Head at present time.
R	Record	R stands for the Sector number, which will be read or written.
R/W	Read/Write	R/W stands for either Read (R) or Write (W) signal.
SC	Sector	SC indicates the number of Sectors per Cylinder.
SK	Skip	SK stands for Skip Deleted Data Address Mark.
SRT	Step Rate Time	SRT stands for the Stepping Rate for the FDD (1 to 16 ms in 1 ms increments). The same Stepping Rate applies to all drives (F = 1 ms, E = 2 ms, etc.).

Table 5. Command Mnemonics (Continued)

Symbol	Name	Description
ST 0 ST 1 ST 2 ST 3	Status 0 Status 1 Status 2 Status 3	ST 0-3 stand for one of four registers which store the status information after a command has been executed. This information is available during the result phase after command execution. These registers should not be confused with the main status register (selected by A ₀ = 0). ST 0-3 may be read only after a command has been executed and contain information relevant to that particular command.
STP		During a Scan operation, if STP = 1, the data in contiguous sectors is compared byte by byte with data sent from the processor (or DMA), and if STP = 2, then alternate sectors are read and compared.

data is read out in the Result Phase, the command is automatically ended and the 8272A is ready for a new command. A command may be aborted by simply sending a Terminal Count signal to pin 16 (TC = 1). This is a convenient means of ensuring that the processor may always get the 8272A's attention even if the disk system hangs up in an abnormal manner.

POLLING FEATURE OF THE 8272A

After power-up RESET, the Drive Select Lines DS0 and DS1 will automatically go into a polling mode. In between commands (and between step pulses in the SEEK command) the 8272A polls all four FDDs looking for a change in the Ready line from any of the drives. If the Ready line changes state (usually due to a door opening or closing) then the 8272A will generate an interrupt. When Status Register 0 (ST0) is read (after Sense Interrupt Status is issued), Not Ready (NR) will be indicated. The polling of the Ready line by the 8272A occurs continuously between instructions, thus notifying the processor which drives are on or off line. Approximate scan timing is shown in Table 6.

Table 6. Scan Timing

DS1	DS0	Approximate Scan Timing
0	0	220 μ s
0	1	220 μ s
1	0	220 μ s
1	1	440 μ s

COMMAND DESCRIPTIONS

During the Command Phase, the Main Status Register must be polled by the CPU before each byte is

written into the Data Register. The DIO (DB6) and RQM (BD7) bits in the Main Status Register must be in the "0" and "1" states respectively, before each byte of the command may be written into the 8272A. The beginning of the execution phase for any of these commands will cause DIO and RQM to switch to "1" and "0" states respectively.

READ DATA

A set of nine (9) byte words are required to place the FDC into the Read Data Mode. After the Read Data command has been issued the FDC loads the head (if it is in the unloaded state), waits the specified head settling time (defined in the Specify Command), and begins reading ID Address Marks and ID fields. When the current sector number ("R") stored in the ID Register (IDR) compares with the sector number read off the diskette, then the FDC outputs data (from the data field) byte-by-byte to the main system via the data bus.

After completion of the read operation from the current sector, the Sector Number is incremented by one, and the data from the next sector is read and output on the data bus. This continuous function is called a "Multi-Sector Read Operation." The Read Data Command must be terminated by the receipt of a Terminal Count signal. Upon receipt of this signal, the FDC stops outputting data to the processor, but will continue to read data from the current sector, check CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Count) bytes, and then at the end of the sector terminate the Read Data Command.

The amount of data which can be handled with a single command to the FDC depends upon MT (multi-track), MFM (MFM/FM), and N (Number of Bytes/Sector). Table 7 on the next page shows the Transfer Capacity.

Table 7. Transfer Capacity

Multi-Track MT	MFM/FM MFM	Bytes/Sector N	Maximum Transfer Capacity (Bytes/Sector)(Number of Sectors)	Final Sector Read from Diskette
0	0	00	(128) (26) = 3,328	26 at Side 0
0	1	01	(256) (26) = 6,656	or 26 at Side 1
1	0	00	(128) (52) = 6,656	26 at Side 1
1	1	01	(256) (52) = 13,312	
0	0	01	(256) (15) = 3,840	15 at Side 0
0	1	02	(512) (15) = 7,680	or 15 at Side 1
1	0	01	(256) (30) = 7,680	15 at Side 1
1	1	02	(512) (30) = 15,360	
0	0	02	(512) (8) = 4,096	8 at Side 0
0	1	03	(1024) (8) = 8,192	or 8 at Side 1
1	0	02	(512) (16) = 8,192	8 at Side 1
1	1	03	(1024) (16) = 16,384	

The "multi-track" function (MT) allows the FDC to read data from both sides of the diskette. For a particular cylinder, data will be transferred starting at Sector 1, Side 0 and completing at Sector L, Side 1 (Sector L = last sector on the side).

NOTE:

This function pertains to only one cylinder (the same track) on each side of the diskette.

When N = 0, then DTL defines the data length which the FDC must treat as a sector. If DTL is smaller than the actual data length in a Sector, the data beyond DTL in the Sector is not sent to the Data Bus. The FDC reads (internally) the complete Sector performing the CRC check, and depending upon the manner of command termination, may perform a Multi-Sector Read Operation. When N is non-zero, then DTL has no meaning and should be set to 0FFH.

At the completion of the Read Data Command, the head is not unloaded until after Head Unload Time Interval (specified in the Specify Command) has elapsed. If the processor issues another command before the head unloads then the head settling time may be saved between subsequent reads. This time out is particularly valuable when a diskette is copied from one drive to another.

If the FDC detects the Index Hole twice without finding the right sector, (indicated in "R"), then the FDC sets the ND (No Data) flag in Status Register 1 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Read Data Command. (Status Register 0 also has bits 7 and 6 set to 0 and 1 respectively.)

After reading the ID and Data Fields in each sector, the FDC checks the CRC bytes. If a read error is detected (incorrect CRC in ID field), the FDC sets the DE (Data Error) flag in Status Register 1 to a 1 (high), and if a CRC error occurs in the Data Field the FDC also sets the DD (Data Error in Data Field) flag in Status Register 2 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Read Data Command. (Status Register 0 also has bits 7 and 6 set to 0 and 1 respectively.)

If the FDC reads a Deleted Data Address Mark off the diskette, and the SK bit (bit D5 in the first Command Word) is not set (SK = 0), then the FDC sets the CM (Control Mark) flag in Status Register 2 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Read Data Command, after reading all the data in the Sector. If SK = 1, the FDC skips the sector with the Deleted Data Address Mark and reads the next sector.

During disk data transfers between the FDC and the processor, via the data bus, the FDC must be serviced by the processor every 27 μ s in the FM Mode, and every 13 μ s in the MFM Mode, or the FDC sets the OR (Over Run) flag in Status Register 1 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Read Data Command.

If the processor terminates a read (or write) operation in the FDC, then the ID Information in the Result Phase is dependent upon the state of the MT bit and EOT byte. Table 5 shows the values for C, H, R, and N, when the processor terminates the Command.

Table 8. ID Information When Processor Terminates Command

MT	EOT	Final Sector Transferred to Processor	ID Information at Result Phase			
			C	H	R	N
0	1A 0F 08	Sector 1 to 25 at Side 0 Sector 1 to 14 at Side 0 Sector 1 to 7 at Side 0	NC	NC	R + 1	NC
	1A 0F 08	Sector 26 at Side 0 Sector 15 at Side 0 Sector 8 at Side 0	C + 1	NC	R = 01	NC
	1A 0F 08	Sector 1 to 25 at Side 1 Sector 1 to 14 at Side 1 Sector 1 to 7 at Side 1	NC	NC	R + 1	NC
	1A 0F 08	Sector 26 at Side 1 Sector 15 at Side 1 Sector 8 at Side 1	C + 1	NC	R = 01	NC
1	1A 0F 08	Sector 1 to 25 at Side 0 Sector 1 to 14 at Side 0 Sector 1 to 7 at Side 0	NC	NC	R + 1	NC
	1A 0F 08	Sector 26 at Side 0 Sector 15 at Side 0 Sector 8 at Side 0	NC	LSB	R = 01	NC
	1A 0F 08	Sector 1 to 25 at Side 1 Sector 1 to 14 at Side 1 Sector 1 to 7 at Side 1	NC	NC	R + 1	NC
	1A 0F 08	Sector 26 at Side 1 Sector 15 at Side 1 Sector 8 at Side 1	C + 1	LSB	R = 01	NC

NOTES:

1. NC (No Change): The same value as the one at the beginning of command execution.
2. LSB (Least Significant Bit): The least significant bit of H is complemented.

WRITE DATA

A set of nine (9) bytes are required to set the FDC into the Write Data mode. After the Write Data command has been issued the FDC loads the head (if it is in the unloaded state), waits the specified head settling time (defined in the Specify Command), and begins reading ID Fields. When the current sector number ("R"), stored in the ID Register (IDR) compares with the sector number read off the diskette, then the FDC takes data from the processor byte-by-byte via the data bus, and outputs it to the FDD.

After writing data into the current sector, the Sector Number stored in "R" is incremented by one, and the next data field is written into. The FDC continues this "Multi-Sector Write Operation" until the issuance of a Terminal Count signal.

If a Terminal Count signal is sent to the FDC it continues writing into the current sector to complete the data field. If the Terminal Count signal is received while a data field is being written then the remainder of the data field is filled with 00 (zeros).

The FDC reads the ID field of each sector and checks the CRC bytes. If the FDC detects a read error (incorrect CRC) in one of the ID Fields, it sets the DE (Data Error) flag of Status Register 1 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Write Data Command. (Status Register 0 also has bits 7 and 6 set to 0 and 1 respectively.)

The Write Command operates in much the same manner as the Read Command. The following items

are the same; refer to the Read Data Command for details:

- Transfer Capacity
- EN (End of Cylinder) Flag
- ND (No Data) Flag
- Head Unload Time Interval
- ID Information when the processor terminates command (see Table 2)
- Definition of DTL when $N = 0$ and when $N \neq 0$

In the Write Data mode, data transfers between the processor and FDC must occur every 31 μ s in the FM mode, and every 15 μ s in the MFM mode. If the time interval between data transfers is longer than this then the FDC sets the OR (Over Run) flag in Status Register 1 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Write Data Command.

For mini-floppies, multiple track writes are usually not permitted. This is because of the turn-off time of the erase head coils—the head switches tracks before the erase-head turns off. Therefore the system should typically wait 1.3 ms before attempting to step or change sides.

WRITE DELETED DATA

This command is the same as the Write Data Command except a Deleted Data Address Mark is written at the beginning of the Data Field instead of the normal Data Address Mark.

READ DELETED DATA

This command is the same as the Read Data Command except that when the FDC detects a Data Address Mark at the beginning of a Data Field (and $SK = 0$ (low)), it will read all the data in the sector and set the CM flag in Status Register 2 to a 1 (high), and then terminate the command. If $SK = 1$, then the FDC skips the sector with the Data Address Mark and reads the next sector.

READ A TRACK

This command is similar to READ DATA Command except that the entire data field is read continuously from each of the sectors of a track. Immediately after encountering the INDEX HOLE, the FDC starts reading all data fields on the track as continuous blocks of data. If the FDC finds an error in the ID or DATA CRC check bytes, it continues to read data from the track. The FDC compares the ID information read from each sector with the value stored in the IDR, and sets the ND flag of Status Register 1 to

a 1 (high) if there is no comparison. Multi-track or skip operations are not allowed with this command.

This command terminates when EOT number of sectors have been read. If the FDC does not find an ID Address Mark on the diskette after it encounters the INDEX HOLE for the second time, then it sets the MA (missing address mark) flag in Status Register 1 to a 1 (high), and terminates the command. (Status Register 0 has bits 7 and 6 set to 0 and 1 respectively.)

READ ID

The READ ID Command is used to give the present position of the recording head. The FDC stores the values from the first ID Field it is able to read. If no proper ID Address Mark is found on the diskette, before the INDEX HOLE is encountered for the second time then the MA (Missing Address Mark) flag in Status Register 1 is set to a 1 (high), and if no data is found then the ND (No Data) flag is also set in Status Register 1 to a 1 (high) and the command is terminated.

FORMAT A TRACK

The Format Command allows an entire track to be formatted. After the INDEX HOLE is detected, Data is written on the Diskette: Gaps, Address Marks, ID Fields and Data Fields, all per the IBM System 34 (Double Density) or System 3740 (Single Density) Format are recorded. The particular format which will be written is controlled by the values programmed into N (number of bytes/sector), SC (sectors/cylinder), GPL (Gap Length), and D (Data Pattern) which are supplied by the processor during the Command Phase. The Data Field is filled with the Byte of data stored in D. The ID Field for each sector is supplied by the processor; that is, four data requests per sector are made by the FDC for C (Cylinder Number), H (Head Number), R (Sector Number) and N (Number of Bytes/Sector). This allows the diskette to be formatted with nonsequential sector numbers, if desired.

After formatting each sector, the processor must send new values for C, H, R, and N to the 8272A for each sector on the track. The contents of the R Register is incremented by one after each sector is formatted, thus, the R register contains a value of $R + 1$ when it is read during the Result Phase. This incrementing and formatting continues for the whole track until the FDC encounters the INDEX HOLE for the second time, whereupon it terminates the command.

If a FAULT signal is received from the FDD at the end of a write operation, then the FDC sets the EC flag of Status Register 0 to a 1 (high), and terminates the command after setting bits 7 and 6 of Status Register 0 to 0 and 1 respectively. Also the loss of a READY signal at the beginning of a com-

mand execution phase causes command termination.

Table 9 shows the relationship between N, SC, and GPL for various sector sizes:

Table 9. Sector Size Relationships

Format	Bytes/ Sector	8" Floppy				Bytes/ Sector	5¼" Floppy				Bytes/ Sector	3½" Mini Floppy			
		N	SC	GPL(1)	GPL(2)		N	SC	GPL(1)	GPL(2)		N	SC	GPL(1)	GPL(2)
FM Mode	128	00	1A	07	1B	128	00	12	07	09	128	0	0F	07	1B
	256	01	0F	0E	2A	128	00	10	10	19	—	—	—	—	—
	512	02	08	1B	3A	256	01	08	18	30	256	1	09	0F	2A
	1024	03	04	47	8A	512	02	04	46	87	512	2	05	1B	3A
	2048	04	02	C8	FF	1024	03	02	C8	FF	—	—	—	—	—
MPM Mode	4096	05	01	C8	FF	2048	04	01	C8	FF	—	—	—	—	—
	256	01	1A	0E	36	256	01	12	0A	0C	256	1	0F	CE	36
	512	02	0F	1B	54	256	01	10	20	32	—	—	—	—	—
	1024	03	08	35	74	512	02	08	2A	50	512	2	09	1B	54
	2048	04	04	99	FF	1024	03	04	80	F0	1024	3	05	35	74
	4096	05	02	C8	FF	2048	04	02	C8	FF	—	—	—	—	—
	8192	06	01	C8	FF	4096	05	01	C8	FF	—	—	—	—	—

NOTES:

1. Suggested values of GPL in Read or Write Commands to avoid splice point between data field and ID field of contiguous sections.
2. Suggested values of GPL in format command.

SCAN COMMANDS

The SCAN Commands allow data which is being read from the diskette to be compared against data which is being supplied from the main system (Processor in NON-DMA mode, and DMA Controller in DMA mode). The FDC compares the data on a byte-by-byte basis, and looks for a sector of data which meets the conditions of $D_{FDD} = D_{Processor}$, $D_{FDD} \leq D_{Processor}$, or $D_{FDD} \geq D_{Processor}$. Ones complement arithmetic is used for comparison (FF = largest number, 00 = smallest number). After a whole

sector of data is compared, if the conditions are not met, the sector number is incremented ($R + STP \rightarrow R$), and the scan operation is continued. The scan operation continues until one of the following conditions occur; the conditions for scan are met (equal, low, or high), the last sector on the track is reached (EOT), or the terminal count signal is received.

If the conditions for scan are met then the FDC sets the SH (Scan Hit) flag of Status Register 2 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Scan Command. If the

Table 10. Scan Status Codes

Command	Status Register 2		Comments
	Bit 2 = SN	Bit 3 = SH	
Scan Equal	0	1	$D_{FDD} = D_{Processor}$
	1	0	$D_{FDD} \neq D_{Processor}$
Scan Low or Equal	0	1	$D_{FDD} = D_{Processor}$
	0	0	$D_{FDD} < D_{Processor}$
	1	0	$D_{FDD} > D_{Processor}$
Scan High or Equal	0	1	$D_{FDD} = D_{Processor}$
	0	0	$D_{FDD} > D_{Processor}$
	1	0	$D_{FDD} < D_{Processor}$

conditions for scan are not met between the starting sector (as specified by R) and the last sector on the cylinder (EOT), then the FDC sets the SN (Scan Not Satisfied) flag of Status Register 2 to a 1 (high), and terminates the Scan Command. The receipt of a TERMINAL COUNT signal from the Processor or DMA Controller during the scan operation will cause the FDC to complete the comparison of the particular byte which is in process, and then to terminate the command. Table 10 shows the status of bits SH and SN under various conditions of SCAN.

If the FDC encounters a Deleted Data Address Mark on one of the sectors (and SK = 0), then it regards the sector as the last sector on the cylinder, sets CM (Control Mark) flag of Status Register 2 to a 1 (high) and terminates the command. If SK = 1, the FDC skips the sector with the Deleted Address Mark, and reads the next sector. In the second case (SK = 1), the FDC sets the CM (Control Mark) flag of Status Register 2 to a 1 (high) in order to show that a Deleted Sector had been encountered.

When either the STP (contiguous sectors STP = 01, or alternate sectors STP = 02 sectors are read) or the MT (Multi-Track) are programmed, it is necessary to remember that the last sector on the track must be read. For example, if STP = 02, MT = 0, the sectors are numbered sequentially 1 through 26, and we start the Scan Command at sector 21; the following will happen. Sectors 21, 23, and 25 will be read, then the next sector (26) will be skipped and the Index Hole will be encountered before the EOT value of 26 can be read. This will result in an abnormal termination of the command. If the EOT had been set at 25 or the scanning started at sector 20, then the Scan Command would be completed in a normal manner.

During the Scan Command data is supplied by either the processor or DMA Controller for comparison against the data read from the diskette. In order to avoid having the OR (Over Run) flag set in Status Register 1, it is necessary to have the data available in less than 27 μ s (FM Mode) or 13 μ s (MFM Mode). If an Overrun occurs the FDC terminates the command.

SEEK

The read/write within the FDD is moved from cylinder to cylinder under control of the Seek Command. The FDC compares the PCN (Present Cylinder Number) which is the current head position with the NCN

(New Cylinder Number), and performs the following operation if there is a difference:

PCN < NCN: Direction signal to FDD set to a 1 (high), and Step Pulses are issued. (Step In.)

PCN > NCN: Direction signal to FDD set to a 0 (low), and Step Pulses are issued. (Step Out.)

The rate at which Step Pulses are issued is controlled by SRT (Stepping Rate Time) in the SPECIFY Command. After each Step Pulse is issued NCN is compared against PCN, and when NCN = PCN, then the SE (Seek End) flag is set in Status Register 0 to a 1 (high), and the command is terminated.

During the Command Phase of the Seek operation the FDC is in the FDC BUSY state, but during the Execution Phase it is in the NON BUSY state. While the FDC is in the NON BUSY state, another Seek Command may be issued, and in this manner parallel seek operations may be done on up to 4 Drives at once.

If an FDD is in a NOT READY state at the beginning of the command execution phase or during the seek operation, then the NR (NOT READY) flag is set in Status Register 0 to a 1 (high), and the command is terminated.

Note that the 8272A Read and Write Commands do not have implied Seeks. Any R/W command should be preceded by: 1) Seek Command; 2) Sense Interrupt Status; and 3) Read ID.

RECALIBRATE

This command causes the read/write head within the FDD to retract to the Track 0 position. The FDC clears the contents of the PCN counter, and checks the status of the Track 0 signal from the FDD. As long as the Track 0 signal is low, the Direction signal remains 1 (high) and Step Pulses are issued. When the Track 0 signal goes high, the SE (SEEK END) flag in Status Register 0 is set to a 1 (high) and the command is terminated. If the Track 0 signal is still low after 77 Step Pulses have been issued, the FDC sets the SE (SEEK END) and EC (EQUIPMENT CHECK) flags of Status Register 0 to both 1s (highs), and terminates the command.

The ability to overlap RECALIBRATE Commands to multiple FDDs, and the loss of the READY signal, as described in the SEEK Command, also applies to the RECALIBRATE Command.

SENSE INTERRUPT STATUS

An Interrupt signal is generated by the FDC for one of the following reasons:

- 1) Upon entering the Result Phase of:
 - a) Read Data Command
 - b) Read a Track Command
 - c) Read ID Command
 - d) Read Deleted Data Command
 - e) Write Data Command
 - f) Format a Cylinder Command
 - g) Write Deleted Data Command
 - h) Scan Commands
- 2) Ready Line of FDD changes state
- 3) End of Seek or Recalibrate Command
- 4) During Execution Phase in the NON-DMA Mode

Interrupts caused by reasons 1 and 4 above occur during normal command operations and are easily discernible by the processor. However, interrupts caused by reasons 2 and 3 above may be uniquely identified with the aid of the Sense Interrupt Status Command. This command when issued resets the interrupt signal and via bits 5, 6, and 7 of Status Register 0 identifies the cause of the interrupt.

Neither the Seek or Recalibrate Command have a Result Phase. Therefore, it is mandatory to use the Sense Interrupt Status Command after these commands to effectively terminate them and to provide verification of the head position (PCN).

Table 11. Seek, Interrupt Codes

Seek End Bit 5	Interrupt Code		Cause
	Bit 6	Bit 7	
0	1	1	Ready Line Changed State, Either Polarity
1	0	0	Normal Termination of Seek or Recalibrate Command
1	1	0	Abnormal Termination of Seek or Recalibrate Command

SPECIFY

The Specify Command sets the initial values for each of the three internal timers. The HUT (Head Unload Time) defines the time from the end of the Execution Phase of one of the Read/Write Com-

mands to the head unload state. This timer is programmable from 16 to 240 ms in increments of 16 ms (01 = 16 ms, 02 = 32 ms . . . OF = 240 ms). The SRT (Step Rate Time) defines the time interval between adjacent step pulses. This timer is programmable from 1 to 16 ms in increments of 1 ms (F = 1 ms, E = 2 ms, D = 3 ms, etc.). The HLT (Head Load Time) defines the time between when the Head Load signal goes high and when the Read/Write operation starts. This timer is programmable from 2 to 254 ms in increments of 2 ms (01 = 2 ms, 02 = 4 ms, 03 = 6 ms . . . FE = 254 ms).

The step rate should be programmed 1 ms longer than the minimum time required by the drive.

The time intervals mentioned above are a direct function of the clock (CLK on pin 19). Times indicated above are for an 8 MHz clock, if the clock was reduced to 4 MHz (mini-floppy application) then all time intervals are increased by a factor of 2.

The choice of DMA or NON-DMA operation is made by the ND (NON-DMA) bit. When this bit is high (ND = 1) the NON-DMA mode is selected, and when ND = 0 the DMA mode is selected.

SENSE DRIVE STATUS

This command may be used by the processor whenever it wishes to obtain the status of the FDDs. Status Register 3 contains the Drive Status information.

INVALID

If an invalid command is sent to the FDC (a command not defined above), then the FDC will terminate the command. No interrupt is generated by the 8272A during this condition. Bit 6 and bit 7 (DIO and RQM) in the Main Status Register are both high ("1") indicating to the processor that the 8272A is in the Result Phase and the contents of Status Register 0 (ST0) must be read. When the processor reads Status Register 0 it will find an 80H indicating an invalid command was received.

A Sense Interrupt Status Command must be sent after a Seek or Recalibrate interrupt, otherwise the FDC will consider the next command to be an Invalid Command.

In some applications the user may wish to use this command as a No-Op command, to place the FDC in a standby or no operation state.

Table 12. Status Registers

Bit			Description
No.	Name	Symbol	
STATUS REGISTER 0			
D ₇	Interrupt Code	IC	D ₇ = 0 and D ₆ = 0 Normal Termination of Command, (NT). Command was completed and properly executed.
D ₆			D ₇ = 0 and D ₆ = 1 Abnormal Termination of Command, (AT). Execution of Command was started, but was not successfully completed.
			D ₇ = 1 and D ₆ = 0 Invalid Command issue, (IC). Command which was issued was never started.
			D ₇ = 1 and D ₆ = 1 Abnormal Termination because during command execution the ready signal from FDD changed state.
D ₅	Seek End	SE	When the FDC completes the SEEK Command, this flag is set to 1 (high).
D ₄	Equipment Check	EC	If a fault Signal is received from the FDD, or if the Track 0 Signal fails to occur after 77 Step Pulses (Recalibrate Command) then this flag is set.
D ₃	Not Ready	NR	When the FDD is in the not-ready state and a read or write command is issued, this flag is set. If a read or write command is issued to Side 1 of a single sided drive, then this flag is set.
D ₂	Head Address	HD	This flag is used to indicate the state of the head at Interrupt.
D ₁	Unit Select 1	US 1	These flags are used to indicate a Drive Unit Number at Interrupt.
D ₀	Unit Select 0	US 0	
STATUS REGISTER 1			
D ₇	End of Cylinder	EN	When the FDC tries to access a Sector beyond the final Sector of a Cylinder, this flag is set.
D ₆			Not used. This bit is always 0 (low).
D ₅	Data Error	DE	When the FDC detects a CRC error in either the ID field or the data field, this flag is set.
D ₄	Over Run	OR	If the FDC is not serviced by the main-systems during data transfers, within a certain time interval, this flag is set.
D ₃			Not used. This bit always 0 (low).
D ₂	No Data	ND	During execution of READ DATA, WRITE DELETED DATA or SCAN Command, if the FDC cannot find the Sector specified in the IDR Register, this flag is set.
			During executing the READ ID Command, if the FDC cannot read the ID field without an error, then this flag is set.
			During the execution of the READ A Cylinder Command, if the starting sector cannot be found, then this flag is set.

Table 12. Status Register (Continued)

Bit			Description
No.	Name	Symbol	
STATUS REGISTER 1 (Continued)			
D ₁	Not Writable	NW	During execution of WRITE DATA, WRITE DELETED DATA or Format A Cylinder Command, if the FDC detects a write protect signal from the FDD, then this flag is set.
D ₀	Missing Address Mark	MA	If the FDC cannot detect the ID Address Mark after encountering the index hole twice, then this flag is set.
			If the FDC cannot detect the Data Address Mark or Deleted Data Address Mark, this flag is set. Also at the same time, the MD (Missing Address Mark in Data Field) of Status Register 2 is set.
STATUS REGISTER 2			
D ₇			Not used. This bit is always 0 (low).
D ₆	Control Mark	CM	During executing the READ DATA or SCAN Command, if the FDC encounters a Sector which contains a Deleted Data Address Mark, this flag is set.
D ₅	Data Error in Data Field	DD	If the FDC detects a CRC error in the data field then this flag is set.
D ₄	Wrong Cylinder	WC	This bit is related with the ND bit, and when the contents of C on the medium is different from that stored in the IDR, this flag is set.
D ₃	Scan Equal Hit	SH	During execution, the SCAN Command, if the condition of "equal" is satisfied, this flag is set.
D ₂	Scan Not Satisfied	SN	During executing the SCAN Command, if the FDC cannot find a Sector on the cylinder which meets the condition, then this flag is set.
D ₁	Bad Cylinder	BC	This bit is related with the ND bit, and when the content of C on the medium is different from that stored in the IDR and the content of C is FF, then this flag is set.
D ₀	Missing Address Mark in Data Field	MD	When data is read from the medium, if the FDC cannot find a Data Address Mark or Deleted Data Address Mark, then this flag is set.
STATUS REGISTER 3			
D ₇	Fault	FT	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Fault signal from the FDD.
D ₆	Write Protected	WP	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Write Protected signal from the FDD.
D ₅	Ready	RDY	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Ready signal from the FDD.
D ₄	Track 0	T0	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Track 0 signal from the FDD.
D ₃	Two Side	TS	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Two Side signal from the FDD.
D ₂	Head Address	HD	This bit is used to indicate the status of Side Select signal to the FDD.
D ₁	Unit Select 1	US 1	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Unit Select 1 signal to the FDD.
D ₀	Unit Select 0	US 0	This bit is used to indicate the status of the Unit Select 0 signal to the FDD.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Operating Temperature	0°C to +70°C
Storage Temperature	-40°C to +125°C
All Output Voltages	-0.5 to +7V
All Input Voltages	-0.5 to +7V
Supply Voltage V_{CC}	-0.5 to +7V
Power Dissipation	1 Watt
* $T_A = 25^\circ\text{C}$	

*Notice: Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

D.C. CHARACTERISTICS $T_A = 0^\circ\text{C to } +70^\circ\text{C}, V_{CC} = +5\text{V} \pm 10\%$

Symbol	Parameter	Limits		Unit	Test Conditions
		Min	Max		
V_{IL}	Input Low Voltage	-0.5	0.8	V	
V_{IH}	Input High Voltage	2.0	$V_{CC} + 0.5$	V	
V_{OL}	Output Low Voltage		0.45	V	$I_{OL} = 2.0\text{ mA}$
V_{OH}	Output High Voltage	2.4	V_{CC}	V	$I_{OH} = -400\text{ }\mu\text{A}$
I_{CC}	V_{CC} Supply Current		120	mA	
I_{IL}	Input Load Current (All Input Pins)		10 -10	μA μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}$ $V_{IN} = 0\text{V}$
I_{LOH}	High Level Output Leakage Current		10	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}$
I_{OFL}	Output Float Leakage Current		± 10	μA	$0.45\text{V} \leq V_{OUT} \leq V_{CC}$

CAPACITANCE $T_A = 25^\circ\text{C}, f_c = 1\text{ MHz}, V_{CC} = 0\text{V}$

Symbol	Parameter	Limits		Unit	Test Conditions
		Min	Max		
$C_{IN(\phi)}$	Clock Input Capacitance		20	pF	All Pins Except Pin Under Test Tied to AC Ground
C_{IN}	Input Capacitance		10	pF	
$C_{I/O}$	Input/Output Capacitance		20	pF	

A.C. CHARACTERISTICS $T_A = 0^\circ\text{C to } +70^\circ\text{C}$, $V_{CC} = +5.0\text{V} \pm 10\%$

Symbol	Parameter	Typ ⁽¹⁾	Min	Max	Unit	Notes
CLOCK TIMING						
t_{CY}	Clock Period		120	500	ns	(Note 5)
t_{CH}	Clock High Period		40		ns	(Note 4, 5)
t_{RST}	Reset Width		14		t_{CY}	
READ CYCLE						
t_{AR}	Select Setup to $\overline{RD} \downarrow$		0		ns	
t_{RA}	Select Hold from $\overline{RD} \uparrow$		0		ns	
t_{RR}	\overline{RD} Pulse Width		250		ns	
t_{RD}	Data Delay from $\overline{RD} \downarrow$			200	ns	
t_{DF}	Output Float Delay		20	100	ns	
WRITE CYCLE						
t_{AW}	Select Setup to $\overline{WR} \downarrow$		0		ns	
t_{WA}	Select Hold from $\overline{WR} \uparrow$		0		ns	
t_{WW}	\overline{WR} Pulse Width		250		ns	
t_{DW}	Data Setup to $\overline{WR} \uparrow$		150		ns	
t_{WD}	Data Hold from $\overline{WR} \uparrow$		5		ns	
INTERRUPTS						
t_{RI}	INT Delay from $\overline{RD} \uparrow$			500	ns	(Note 6)
t_{WI}	INT Delay from $\overline{WR} \uparrow$			500	ns	(Note 6)
DMA						
t_{RQCY}	DRQ Cycle Period		13		μs	(Note 6)
t_{AKRO}	$\overline{DACK} \downarrow$ to $\text{DRQ} \downarrow$			200	ns	
t_{RQR}	$\text{DRQ} \uparrow$ to $\overline{RD} \downarrow$		800		ns	(Note 6)
t_{ROW}	$\text{DRQ} \uparrow$ to $\overline{WR} \downarrow$		250		ns	(Note 6)
t_{RORW}	$\text{DRQ} \uparrow$ to $\overline{RD} \uparrow$ or $\overline{WR} \uparrow$			12	μs	(Note 6)

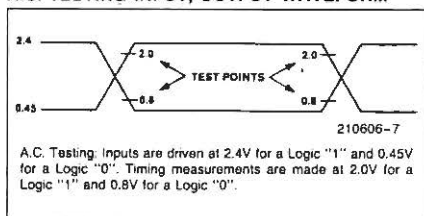
A.C. CHARACTERISTICS $T_A = 0^\circ\text{C}$ to $+70^\circ\text{C}$, $V_{CC} = +5.0\text{V} \pm 10\%$ (Continued)

Symbol	Parameter	Typ ⁽¹⁾	Min	Max	Unit	Notes
FDD INTERFACE						
t_{WCY}	WCK Cycle Time	2 or 4 1 or 2			μs	MFM = 0 MFM = 1 (Note 2)
t_{WCH}	WCK High Time	250	80	350	ns	
t_{CP}	Pre-Shift Delay from WCK \uparrow		20	100	ns	
t_{CD}	WDA Delay from WCK \uparrow		20	100	ns	
t_{WDD}	Write Data Width		$t_{WCH} - 50$		ns	
t_{WE}	WE \uparrow to WCK \uparrow or WE \downarrow to WCK \downarrow Delay		20	100	ns	
t_{WWCY}	Window Cycle Time	2 1			μs	MM = 0 MFM = 1
t_{WRD}	Window Setup to RDD \uparrow		15		ns	
t_{RDW}	Window Hold from RDD \downarrow		15		ns	
t_{RDD}	RDD Active Time (HIGH)		40		ns	
FDD SEEK/DIRECTION/STEP						
t_{US}	US _{0,1} Setup to \overline{RW} /SEEK \uparrow		12		μs	(Note 6)
t_{SU}	US _{0,1} Hold after \overline{RW} /SEEK \downarrow		15		μs	(Note 6)
t_{SD}	\overline{RW} /SEEK Setup to LCT/DIR		7		μs	(Note 6)
t_{DS}	\overline{RW} /SEEK Hold from LCT/DIR		30		μs	(Note 6)
t_{DST}	LCT/DIR Setup to FR/STEP \uparrow		1		μs	(Note 6)
t_{STD}	LCT/DIR Hold from FR/STEP \downarrow		24		μs	(Note 6)
t_{STU}	DS _{2,1} Hold from FR/Step \downarrow		5		μs	(Note 6)
t_{STP}	STEP Active Time (High)	5			μs	(Note 6)
t_{SC}	STEP Cycle Time		33		μs	(Note 3, 6)
t_{FR}	FAULT RESET Active Time (High)		8	10	μs	(Note 6)
t_{IDX}	INDEX Pulse Width	10			t_{CY}	
t_{TC}	Terminal Count Width		1		t_{CY}	

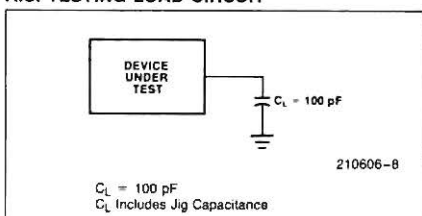
NOTES:

- Typical values for $T_A = 25^\circ\text{C}$ and nominal supply voltage.
- The former values are used for standard floppy and the latter values are used for mini-floppies.
- $t_{SC} = 33 \mu\text{s}$ min. is for different drive units. In the case of same unit, t_{SC} can be ranged from 1 ms to 16 ms with 8 MHz clock period, and 2 ms to 32 ms with 4 MHz clock, under software control.
- From 2.0V to +2.0V.
- At 4 MHz, the clock duty cycle may range from 16% to 76%. Using an 8 MHz clock the duty cycle can range from 32% to 52%. Duty cycle is defined as: D.C. = $100 (t_{CH} \div t_{CY})$ with typical rise and fall times of 5 ns.
- The specified values listed are for an 8 MHz clock period. Multiply timings by 2 when using a 4 MHz clock period.

A.C. TESTING INPUT, OUTPUT WAVEFORM

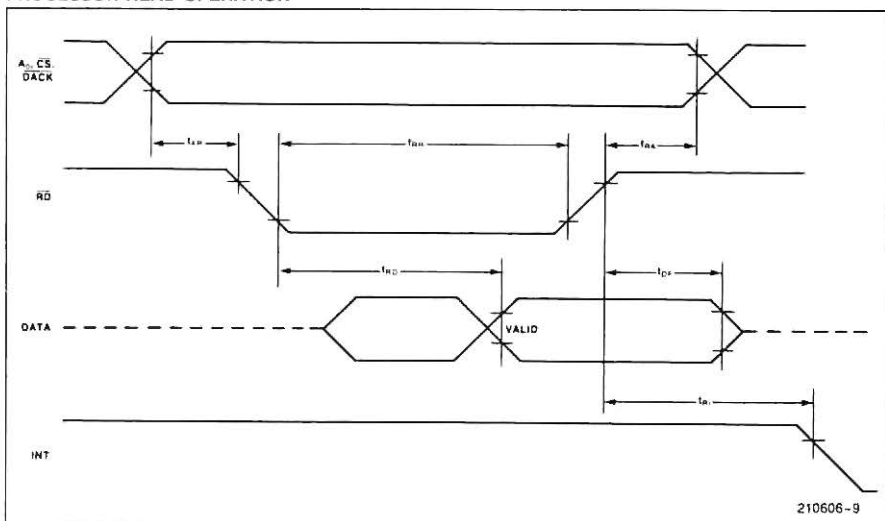


A.C. TESTING LOAD CIRCUIT



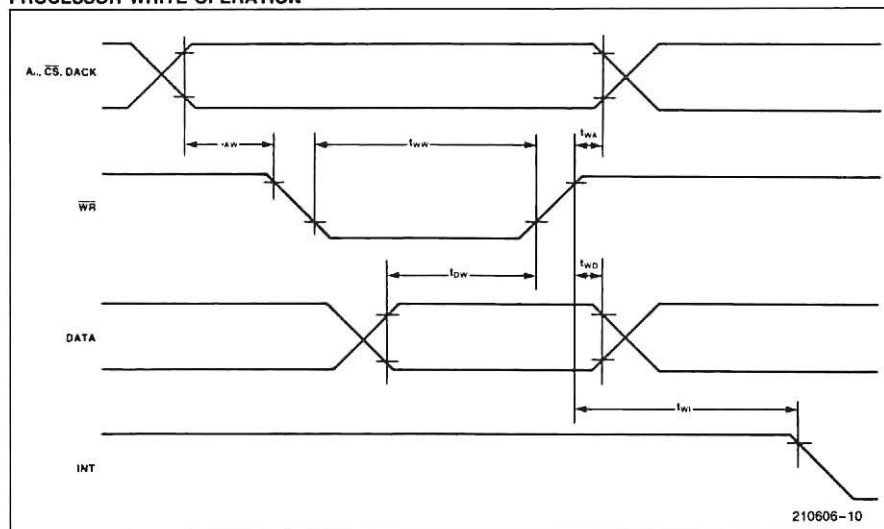
WAVEFORMS

PROCESSOR READ OPERATION

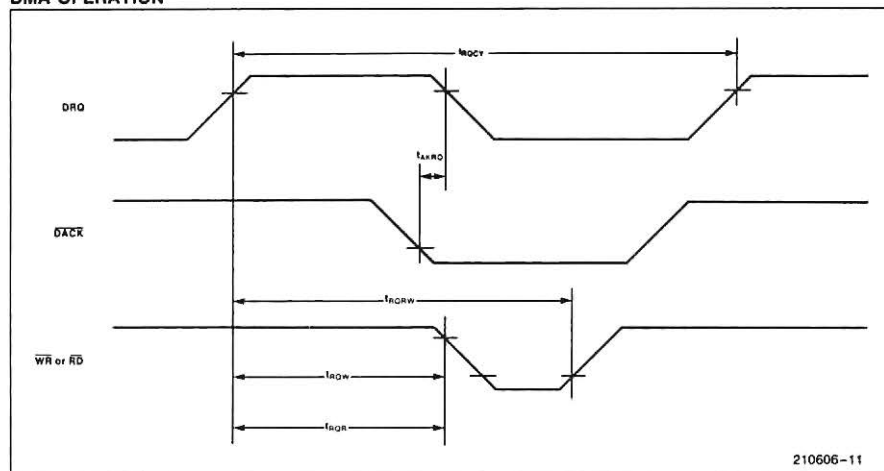


WAVEFORMS (Continued)

PROCESSOR WRITE OPERATION

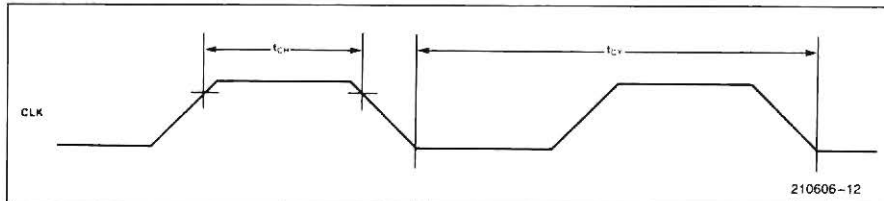


DMA OPERATION

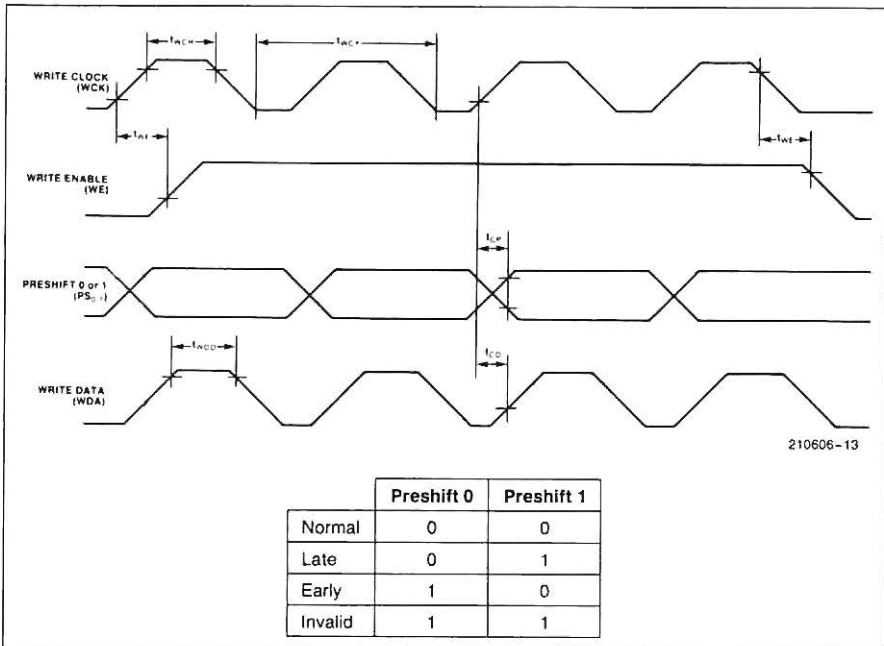


WAVEFORMS (Continued)

CLOCK TIMING

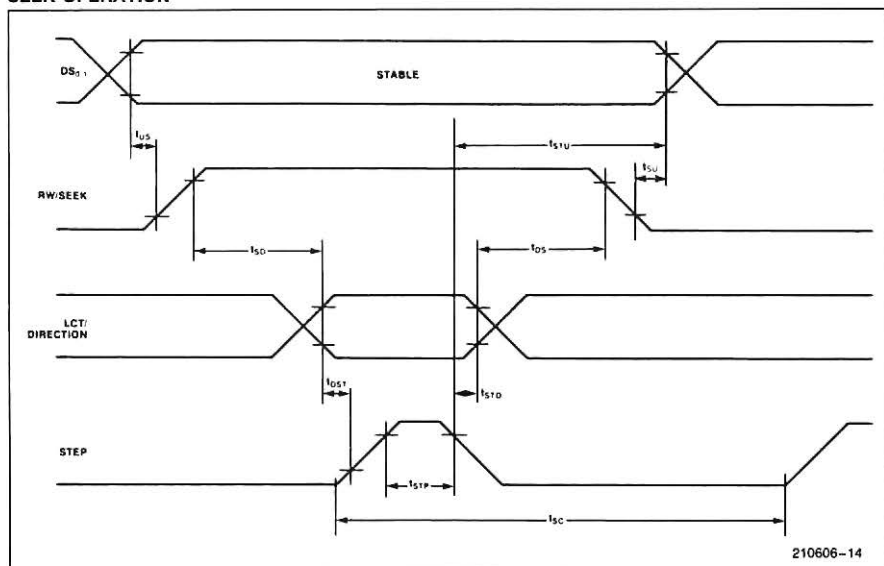


FDD WRITE OPERATION

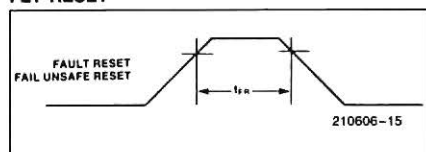


WAVEFORMS (Continued)

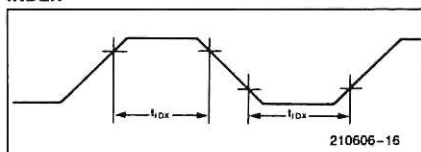
SEEK OPERATION



FLT RESET



INDEX



Tandy Video II

Custom IC

Part Number 8079020



Table Of Contents

VIDEO CONTROLLER FEATURES	1
Improved Tandy 1000 Video Controller Pin-Out	2
General Description	3
OPERATING MODES	3
ALPHANUMERIC MODES	4
TANDY 1000 IMPROVED VIDEO CONTROLLER MODES	5
GRAPHIC MODES	6
GRAPHICS MEMORY USAGE	6
2 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 640 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (6)	8
4 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 640 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (A)	8
16 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 320 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (9)	9
16 COLOR LOW RESOLUTION 160 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (8)	9
4 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 160 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (4/5)	10
HERCULES GRAPHICS (7H)	10
16 COLOR HIGH RESOLUTION 640 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (E)	11
VIDEO I/O MAP	11
CRTC CONTROLLER AND MISCELLANEOUS CONTROL REGISTERS	14
HORIZONTAL TOTAL REGISTER, INDEX 00:	15
HORIZONTAL DISPLAYED REGISTER, INDEX 01:	15
HORIZONTAL SYNC POSITION REGISTER, INDEX 02:	15
SYNC WIDTH REGISTER, INDEX 03:	16
VERTICAL TOTAL REGISTER, INDEX 04:	16
VERTICAL TOTAL ADJUST REGISTER, INDEX 05:	17
VERTICAL DISPLAYED REGISTER, INDEX 06:	17
VERTICAL SYNC POSITION REGISTER, INDEX 07:	17
SCAN LINES PER CHARACTER REGISTER, INDEX 09:	18
CURSOR START REGISTER, INDEX 0A:	18
CURSOR END REGISTER, INDEX 0B:	19
START OF SCREEN HIGH REGISTER, INDEX 0C:	19
START OF SCREEN LOW REGISTER, INDEX 0D:	19
CURSOR POSITION HIGH REGISTER, INDEX 0E:	19
CURSOR POSITION LOW REGISTER, INDEX 0F:	20
MODE CONTROL REGISTER, INDEX 10:	20
CHARACTER GENERATOR INTERFACE AND SYNC POLARITY REGISTER, INDEX 12:	21
CHARACTER FONT REGISTER, INDEX 13:	21
TEST MODE REGISTER 1, INDEX 20	21
TEST MODE REGISTER 2, INDEX 21	22
VIDEO ARRAY REGISTERS	22
ARRAY PALETTE MASK REGISTER	23
ARRAY BORDER COLOR	23
ARRAY MODE CONTROL REGISTER	24
ARRAY PALETTE REGISTERS	25
CRTC PROGRAMMING TABLE	33
VIDEO/SYSTEM MEMORY ADDRESS MAP	34
VIDEO MEMORY ADDRESSING MODES	34



IMPROVED TANDY 1000 VIDEO CONTROLLER

VIDEO CONTROLLER FEATURES

- 1) 100 % software compatible with the current Tandy 1000 video controller design.
- 2) Provides international support with alternate character sets and video mode control locking.
- 3) 128K of Video/System memory.
- 4) External character ROM for all 200 line and 350 line modes.
- 5) Supports 720 X 350 Monochrome text and 720 X 348 Hercules graphics.

Improved Tandy 1000 Video Controller Pin-Out

PIN#	NAME	DESCRIPTION	DRIVE	PIN#	NAME	DESCRIPTION	DRIVE
1	MEMR-	Mem read	IN	51	CFNT3	Font dat/adr 3	2MA
2	MEMW-	Mem write	IN	52	CFNT4	Font dat/adr 4	2MA
3	GND	GROUND	IN	53	GND	GROUND	IN
4	IOR-	I/O Read	IN	54	CFNT5	Font dat/adr 5	2MA
5	IOW-	I/O Write	IN	55	CFNT6	Font dat/adr 6	2MA
6	BHE-	CPU CTL	IN	56	CFNT7	Font dat/adr 7	2MA
7	RESET	Sys Reset	IN	57	CFNT8	Cfont add	2MA
8	ADRLTCH	Add latch	IN	58	CFNT9	Cfont add	2MA
9	VIDWT	Video wait	8MA	59	CFNT10	Cfont add	2MA
10	XMD0	Memory A/D	4MA	60	CFNT11	Cfont add	2MA
11	XMD1	Memory A/D	4MA	61	CFNT12	Cfont add	2MA
12	XMD2	Memory A/D	4MA	62	CFNT13	Cfont add	2MA
13	XMD3	Memory A/D	4MA	63	N/C	NO CONNECT	2MA
14	XMD4	Memory A/D	4MA	64	CLTH	Cfont latch	2MA
15	VCC	+ 5 Volts	IN	65	VCC	+ 5 Volts	IN
16	XMD5	Memory A/D	4MA	66	14.3	SYS CLOCK	4MA
17	XMD6	Memory A/D	4MA	67	REFSH	REFRESH IN	IN
18	XMD7	Memory A/D	4MA	68	D0	CPU Data	4MA
19	YMD0	Memory A/D	4MA	69	D1	CPU Data	4MA
20	YMD1	Memory A/D	4MA	70	D2	CPU Data	4MA
21	YMD2	Memory A/D	4MA	71	D3	CPU Data	4MA
22	YMD3	Memory A/D	4MA	72	D4	CPU Data	4MA
23	YMD4	Memory A/D	4MA	73	D5	CPU Data	4MA
24	YMD5	Memory A/D	4MA	74	D6	CPU Data	4MA
25	YMD6	Memory A/D	4MA	75	D7	CPU Data	4MA
26	YMD7	Memory A/D	4MA	76	N/C	No Connect	
27	OEXY-	RAM CTL	4MA	77	DOTCLK	DOT CLOCK	4MA
28	GND	Ground	IN	78	GND	Ground	IN
29	RAS-	RAM CTL	8MA	79	25	25.175	IN
30	CAS-	RAM CTL	8MA	80	28MHZ	Clock	IN
31	MWEX-	RAM Write	4MA	81	A0/MD0	CPU A/D	4MA
32	MWEY-	RAM Write	4MA	82	A1/MD1	CPU A/D	4MA
33	MEMIOS-	Mem & I/O sel	2MA	83	A2/MD2	CPU A/D	4MA
34	N/C	NO CONNECT		84	A3/MD3	CPU A/D	4MA
35	N/C	NO CONNECT		85	A4/MD4	CPU A/D	4MA
36	OUTR	RED VIDEO	4MA	86	A5/MD5	CPU A/D	4MA
37	OUTG	GREEN/MONO	4MA	87	A6/MD6	CPU A/D	4MA
38	OUTB	BLUE VIDEO	4MA	88	A7/MD7	CPU A/D	4MA
39	OUTI	INTENSITY	4MA	89	A8/MD8	CPU A/D	4MA
40	OUTH SYNC	Horz Sync	4MA	90	A9/MD9	CPU A/D	4MA
41	OUTV SYNC	Vert Sync	4MA	91	A10/MD10	CPU A/D	4MA
42	N/C	NO CONNECT		92	A11/MD11	CPU A/D	4MA
43	N/C	NO CONNECT		93	A12/MD12	CPU A/D	4MA
44	N/C	NO CONNECT		94	A13/MD13	CPU A/D	4MA
45	N/C	NO CONNECT		95	A14/MD14	CPU A/D	4MA
46	FRMOE*	ROM Enable	2MA	96	A15/MD15	CPU A/D	4MA
47	N/C	NO CONNECT	2MA	97	A16	CPU Address	IN
48	CFNT0	Font dat/adr 0	2MA	98	A17	CPU Address	IN
49	CFNT1	Font dat/adr 1	2MA	99	A18	CPU Address	IN
50	CFNT2	Font dat/adr 2	2MA	100	A19	CPU Address	IN

General Description

The new improved Tandy 1000 video controller chip is designed to operate with one of two types of monitors, an RGBI 200 line Color monitor or a Monochrome 350 line monitor. This custom controller implements all of the video logic for the Tandy 1000. Figure 1 shows a block diagram of this custom video controller chip.

If an RGBI 200 line monitor is used, the display system supports up to 16 colors. These sixteen colors are defined by combinations of the R, G, B, and I bits as shown in the chart below.

I	R	G	B	COLOR
0	0	0	0	BLACK
0	0	0	1	BLUE
0	0	1	0	GREEN
0	0	1	1	CYAN
0	1	0	0	RED
0	1	0	1	MAGENTA
0	1	1	0	BROWN
0	1	1	1	LIGHT GRAY
1	0	0	0	DARK GRAY
1	0	0	1	LIGHT BLUE
1	0	1	0	LIGHT GREEN
1	0	1	1	LIGHT CYAN
1	1	0	0	PINK
1	1	0	1	LIGHT MAGENTA
1	1	1	0	YELLOW
1	1	1	1	WHITE

TABLE 1
AVAILABLE COLORS

OPERATING MODES

The operating modes supported by the Tandy 1000 video controller may be grouped in two categories: Alphanumeric and Graphic. A list of these modes is shown in Table 1A.

ALPHANUMERIC MODES

The Alphanumeric modes have two basic types of operation:

80 character and 40 character. In both modes the character font tables are stored in a separate character ROM and consist of one or two pages of 256 characters. Two bytes of data are used to define each character on the screen. The even address is the character code and is used to address the character font pattern stored in ROM. The odd address is the attribute byte, that defines the foreground and the background color of the character. The following chart shows how the attribute byte controls the colors.

ATTRIBUTE BYTE							
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
BACKGROUND				FOREGROUND			
I	R	G	B	I	R	G	B
*	R	G	B	*	R	G	B
^ Selects blink				^ Selects font page			

TABLE 2
ALPHANUMERIC MODE ATTRIBUTE BYTE DEFINITION

TANDY 1000 IMPROVED VIDEO CONTROLLER MODES

BIOS MODE	TYPE	COLORS	ALPHA FORMAT	BUFFER START	BOX SIZE	MONITOR	RESOLUTION	TYPE
0/1	ALPHA	16	40 X 25	B8000	8X9	CM-5/11	320 X 225	CGA
2/3	ALPHA	16	80 X 25	B8000	8X9	CM-5/11	640 X 225	CGA
4/5	GRAPHICS	4	40 X 25	B8000	8X8	CM-5/11	320 X 200	CGA
6	GRAPHICS	2	80 X 25	B8000	8X8	CM-5/11	640 X 200	CGA
7	ALPHA	4	80 X 25	B0000	9X14	VM-5	720 X 350	MDA
7H	GRAPHICS	2	80 X 25	B0000	9X14	VM-5	720 X 348	MDA
8	GRAPHICS	16	20 X 25	B8000	8X8	CM-5/11	160 X 200	PCjr
9	GRAPHICS	16	40 X 25	B8000	8X8	CM-5/11	320 X 200	PCjr
A	GRAPHICS	4	80 X 25	B8000	8X8	CM-5/11	640 X 200	PCjr
B	RESERVED	Used by the BIOS to load the color character font						
C	RESERVED	Used by the BIOS to load the mono character font						
E	GRAPHICS	16	80 X 25	A0000	8X8	CM-5/11	640 X 200	TDA

TABLE 1A

To take advantage of the type of monitor used, the Tandy 1000 supports two different types of character box sizes depending on the type of monitor that is used. With a standard 200 line RGBI monitor, the Tandy 1000 video controller supports an 8 X 9 character box. On the 350 line monochrome monitor, a 9 X 14 character box is used.

GRAPHIC MODES

The Tandy 1000 video controller supports a variety of graphics modes.

GRAPHICS MEMORY USAGE

*200 Line Low or Medium Resolution Graphics Memory uses either 2 or 4 banks of 8000 bytes. In either case, pixel information for the display's upper left corner is found at address B8000.

The 4 Color High Resolution 640 X 200 (A) and
 #### the 16 Color Medium Resolution 320 X 200 (9)
 #### use 4 banks of 8000 bytes as follows:

Offset From B8000	<-----160 Bytes----->	
0000		00 Scans (0,4,8,...,196)
1F3F		
2000		01 Scans (1,5,9,...,197)
3F3F		
4000		10 Scans (2,6,10,...,198)
5F3F		
6000		11 Scans (3,7,11,...,199)
7F3F		

```
#### The 2 Color High Resolution 640 X 200 (6) and
#### the 4 Color Medium Resolution 320 X 200 (4/5) and
#### the 16 Color Low Resolution 160 X 200 (8)
#### use only 2 banks of 8000 bytes as follows:
```

Offset

From B8000 <--80 Bytes-->

0000		Even Scans (0,2,4,6,8,...,198)
1F3F		
2000		Odd Scans (1,3,5,7,9,...,199)
3F3F		

*350 Line Graphics Memory uses 4 banks of 8K bytes. The pixel information for the display's upper left corner is found at address B0000.

```
#### Hercules Graphics 720 x 348 (7H)
#### uses 4 banks of 8K bytes
```

<----- 90 Bytes ----->

B0000		00 SCANS (0,4,8,...,344)
B1E96		
B2000		10 SCANS (1,5,9,...,345)
B3E96		
B4000		01 SCANS (2,6,10,...,346)
B5E96		
B6000		11 SCANS (3,7,11,...,347)
B7E96		

2 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 640 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (6)

The 2 Color Medium Resolution 640 x 200 Graphics mode may require a high resolution monitor for proper operation. Available in the IBM PC and IBM PCjr, this mode has the following characteristics:

Contains a maximum of 200 rows of 640 PELs.
Can display 2 of 16 possible colors.
Requires 16k bytes of read/write memory.
Formats 8 PELs per byte for each byte in the following manner:

7 PA0	6 PA0	5 PA0	4 PA0	3 PA0	2 PA0	1 PA0	0 PA0
|First |Dsply |PEL	|Secnd |Dsply |PEL	|Third |Dsply |PEL	|Forth |Dsply |PEL	|Fifth |Dsply |PEL	|Sixth |Dsply |PEL	|Svnth |Dsply |PEL	|Eghth |Dsply |PEL

4 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 640 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (A)

The 4 Color Medium Resolution 640 X 200 Graphics mode may require a high resolution monitor for proper operation. Only supported on the IBM PCjr, this mode has the following characteristics:

Contains a maximum of 200 rows of 640 PELs
Can display 4 of 16 possible colors
Each pixel selects 1 of 4 colors
Requires 32K bytes of read/write memory
Formats 8 PELs per two bytes (1 even byte and 1 odd byte) in the following manner:

EVEN BYTES

7 PA0	6 PA0	5 PA0	4 PA0	3 PA0	2 PA0	1 PA0	0 PA0
First Dsply PEL	Second Dsply PEL	Third Dsply PEL	Forth Dsply PEL	Fifth Dsply PEL	Sixth Dsply PEL	Seventh Dsply PEL	Eighth Dsply PEL
PA1 7	PA1 6	PA1 5	PA1 4	PA1 3	PA1 2	PA1 1	PA1 0

ODD BYTES

16 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 320 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (9)

The 16 Color Medium Resolution 320 X 200 Graphics mode works with all types of display devices. This mode is available on the IBM PCjr only and has the following characteristics:

Contains a maximum of 200 rows of 320 PELs
Can display 16 of 16 possible colors
Each pixel selects 1 of 16 colors
Requires 32K bytes of read/write memory
Formats 2 PELs per byte in the following manner:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0

First Display PEL	Second Display PEL
-------------------------	--------------------------

16 COLOR LOW RESOLUTION 160 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (8)

The 16 Color Medium Resolution 160 X 200 Graphics mode works with all types of display devices. This mode is available on the IBM PCjr only and has the following characteristics:

Contains a maximum of 200 rows of 160 PELs
Can display 16 of 16 possible colors
Each pixel selects 1 of 16 colors
Requires 16K bytes of read/write memory
Formats 2 PELs per byte in the following manner:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0

First Display PEL	Second Display PEL
-------------------------	--------------------------

4 COLOR MEDIUM RESOLUTION 160 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (4/5)

The 16 Color Medium Resolution 320 X 200 Graphics mode works with all types of display devices. This mode is available on the IBM PC and IBM PCjr modes and has the following characteristics:

Contains a maximum of 200 rows of 320 PELs
Can display 4 of 16 possible colors
Each pixel selects 1 of 4 colors
Requires 16K bytes of read/write memory
Formats 4 PELs per byte in the following manner:

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0

First Display PEL	Second Display PEL	Third Display PEL	Fourth Display PEL
-------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

HERCULES GRAPHICS (7H)

2 Color Hercules graphics works with a 350 line Monochrome display. This mode has the following characteristics:

720 PELs by 348 Rows
2 color Monochrome Graphics requires 32k bytes of RAM
Formats 8 PELs per bytes in the following manner :

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PA0	PA0	PA0	PA0	PA0	PA0	PA0	PA0

First Dsply PEL	Second Dsply PEL	Third Dsply PEL	Forth Dsply PEL	Fifth Dsply PEL	Sixth Dsply PEL	Seventh Dsply PEL	Eighth Dsply PEL
-----------------------	------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

16 COLOR HIGH RESOLUTION 640 X 200 GRAPHICS MODE (E)

The 16 Color High Resolution 640 x 200 Graphics mode works with a 200 line high resolution RGBI monitor. This mode has the following characteristics:

Contains 200 rows of 640 PELs
 Can display 16 of 256K possible colors
 Requires 64k bytes of read/write memory
 Formats 2 PELs per byte for each byte in the following manner:

7 PA3	6 PA2	5 PA1	4 PA0	3 PA3	2 PA2	1 PA1	0 PA0
First Display PEL				Second Display PEL			

VIDEO I/O MAP

Hex Address	Register
0065	System Chip Select Register
FFE8	Video Configuration Register
03B4	CRTC Address Register
03B5	CRTC Data Register
03B8	Monochrome Control Register
03BA	Monochrome Status Register
03BF	Monochrome Configuration Switch
03D0	Not Used
03D1	Not Used
03D2	Not Used
03D3	Not Used
03D4	CRTC Address Register
03D5	CRTC Data Register
03D6	Not Used
03D7	Not Used
03D8	Mode Select Register
03D9	Color Select Register
03DA	Video Array Address & Status
03DB	Not Used
03DC	Not Used
03DD	Not Used
03DE	Video Array Data
03DF	CRT Processor Page Register

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
0065	System Chip Selects	^	X	X	^	^	^	^	X	Write Only
VIDCS	(Parallel OE)									
	(Serial CS)									
	(Disk CS)									
	Video CS 1 = video on									
	(Parallel CS)									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
FFE8	Video Config.	X	X	^	X	^	^	^	X	Write Only
16BIT	16 Bit CPU Memory = 1									
MC3	Memory Configuration 3									
MC2	Memory Configuration 2									
MC1	Memory Configuration 1									

3B4 CRTC ADDRESS REGISTER (see 3D4)

3B5 CRTC DATA REGISTER (see 3D5)

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3B8	Monochrome Control	^	X	^	X	^	X	^	^	Write Only
MSTART	Display start_									
	0 = B0000 1 = B8000									
MNOBLK	Disable blink = 0									
MNOVID	Disable video = 0									
HRCULES	Hercules Graphics = 1									
MTEXT	Monochrome text = 1									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3BA	Monochrome Status	^	^	X	X	^	X	X	^	Read Only
CVSYNC*	Vertical Sync_									
HRGRP	= 1 if 3B8 bit 1 and 3BF bit 0 are both 1									
OUTG	Video									
CHSYNC	Horizontal Sync									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3BF	Monochrome Config.	X	X	X	X	X	X	^	^	Write Only
MSKCLMP	Mask B8000 and lock at B0000 = 0									
HERCOK	Disable Hercules Graphics = 0									

CRTC CONTROLLER AND MISCELLANEOUS CONTROL REGISTERS

The CRTC and Miscellaneous control registers are accessed by two I/O commands. The two I/O commands function by first writing the desired index value to address hex 3D4 (3B4), and then writing the data to address hex 3D5 (3B5).

Index Register, Hex 3D4 (3B4): This register is read and write, and points to the specific data register addressed through hex 3D5 (3B5).

Bit	Function
7	Not Used
6	Not Used
5	Index5
4	Index4
3	Index3
2	Index2
1	Index1
0	Index0

Figure 1B CRTC Controller Index Register

The following is a list of the data registers and their functions.

Index (Hex)	Register Description
00	Horizontal Total
01	Horizontal Characters Displayed
02	Start Horizontal Sync
03	Sync Pulse Width
04	Vertical Total
05	Vertical Total Adjust
06	Vertical Characters Displayed
07	Start Vertical Sync
08	Reserved
09	Scan Lines per Character
0A	Cursor Start
0B	Cursor End
0C	Start of Screen High
0D	Start of Screen Low
0E	Cursor Position High
0F	Cursor Position Low
10	Mode Control
12	Character Generator Interface and Sync Polarity, or Display Sense
13	Character Font Pointer
21	Test Mode Register 2

HORIZONTAL TOTAL REGISTER, INDEX 00:

This register contains the total number of characters in the horizontal scan interval. The number consists of the total of the displayed and non-displayed characters, minus one. This register determines the frequency of the 'horizontal sync' signal.

HORIZONTAL DISPLAYED REGISTER, INDEX 01:

This register determines the total number of characters to be displayed during a horizontal line. This register must be loaded with a value that is less than the horizontal total register.

HORIZONTAL SYNC POSITION REGISTER, INDEX 02:

This register specifies the character position count at which the 'horizontal sync' signal becomes active. The specified value -1 must be programmed.

SYNC WIDTH REGISTER, INDEX 03:

This register specifies the pulse widths of the horizontal and vertical synchronization signals. The horizontal pulse width is programmed in units of character clocks. The vertical pulse width is programmed in units of the horizontal synchronization period. This register is programmed to match the display specifications.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I03	Sync Pulse Width Reg.	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	Width VSync3									
	VSync2									
	VSync1									
	VSync0									
	Width HSync3									
	HSync2									
	HSync1									
	HSync0									

Figure 1-31. Sync Pulse Width Register

VERTICAL TOTAL REGISTER, INDEX 04:

This register contains the 8 bits for the total number of horizontal scan lines in the vertical scan interval. The total number consists of both the displayed and non-displayed scan lines minus 1. This register and the Vertical Total Adjust register determine the frequency of the 'vertical sync' signal.

VERTICAL TOTAL ADJUST REGISTER, INDEX 05:

This register is used to adjust the total number of horizontal scan lines in the vertical scanning interval. It allows for an odd number of horizontal lines (525 for 60 Hz).

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I05	Vertical Tot Adjust Reg.	X	X	^	^	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	VAdjust5									
	VAdjust4									
	VAdjust3									
	VAdjust2									
	VAdjust1									
	VAdjust0									

Figure 1-32. Vertical Total Adjust Register

VERTICAL DISPLAYED REGISTER, INDEX 06:

This register contains the 8 least-significant bits for the number of horizontal scan lines displayed during the vertical scan interval. The ninth bit is the inversion of bit 6 of the Mode Control register.

VERTICAL SYNC POSITION REGISTER, INDEX 07:

This register contains the 8 bits for the vertical scan line count. It determines when the 'vertical sync' signal becomes active. The specified value -1 must be programmed.

SCAN LINES PER CHARACTER REGISTER, INDEX 09:

This register determines the number of horizontal scan lines in a character row.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I09	Scan Lines per Char. Register	X	X	X	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	Row Size3									
	Row Size2									
	Row Size1									
	Row Size0									

Figure 1-33. Scan Lines per Character Register

CURSOR START REGISTER, INDEX 0A:

Bits 3 through 0 in this register determine the horizontal scan line count at which the cursor output becomes active.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I0A	Cursor Start Register	X	X	0	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	Reserved 0									
	Cursor Start3									
	Cursor Start2									
	Cursor Start1									
	Cursor Start0									

Figure 1-34. Cursor Start Register

CURSOR END REGISTER, INDEX 0B:

This register determines the horizontal scan line count when the cursor output becomes inactive.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I0B	Cursor End	X	X	X	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	Cursor End3									
	Cursor End2									
	Cursor End1									
	Cursor End0									

Figure 1-35. Cursor End Register

START OF SCREEN HIGH REGISTER, INDEX 0C:

This register contains the 6 most-significant bits for the starting memory address of the video display buffer. Fourteen address bits determine the starting address. This register is initialized to a value of hex 00.

START OF SCREEN LOW REGISTER, INDEX 0D:

This register, together with the Start of Screen High register, gives the starting address of the display buffer. For all modes, this register is initialized to a value of hex 00.

CURSOR POSITION HIGH REGISTER, INDEX 0E:

This register contains the 4 most-significant bits for the cursor location.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I0E	Cursor Pos. High Reg.	X	X	X	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	Cursor PositionB									
	Cursor PositionA									
	Cursor Position9									
	Cursor Position8									

Figure 1-36. Cursor Position High Register

CURSOR POSITION LOW REGISTER, INDEX 0F:

This register contains the 8 least-significant bits for the location of the cursor. A value of hex 00 in both of these registers will locate the cursor in the upper left-hand corner. The cursor is not supported in any graphics mode.

MODE CONTROL REGISTER, INDEX 10:

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I10	Mode Control Register	^	^	X	x	^	X	X	X	Write Only
NOCRTCW	Inhibit Write									
	Reserved = 0									
	Reserved = 1									

Figure 1-37. Mode Control, Write

WRITE

BIT 7 When set to 1, the inhibit write bit prevents any writes to the horizontal and vertical registers.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I10	Mode Control Register RD	^	X	^	^	^	^	X	X	Read Only
HRESCK	80 X 25									
HRESAD	Clock Select									
25CLK	Clock									
ALPHAMD	Alpha Mode									
SPCTL1	Double Scan									

Figure 1-38. Mode Control, Read

CHARACTER GENERATOR INTERFACE AND SYNC POLARITY REGISTER, INDEX 12:

The register controls the character font ROM.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
112	Character Gen. I/F & Sync Polarity	X	X	^	^	X	X	X	X	Write Only
SWPFONT	Swap Active Font									
512CHAR	Enable 512 Characters									

**Figure 1-40. Character Generator Interface and Sync
Polarity Register**

BIT 5 This bit selects the font page that is used as the font table. When set to 1, font page 1 is selected; when clear to 0, font page 0 is selected.

BIT 4 When this bit is set to 1, 512 character codes are displayable in the text modes. Bit 3 of the attribute byte then determines the font page when displaying the character. When this bit is set to 1, only eight foreground colors are supported. When this bit is cleared to 0, only 256 character codes are displayed, and bit 5 of this register determines the active font.

CHARACTER FONT REGISTER, INDEX 13:

Bit 4 of this register is used to select between the 200 line RGBI character set and the 350 line monochrome character set. A 0 in bit 4 selects the 200 line character set.

TEST MODE REGISTER 1, INDEX 20

This register is reserved for future test purposes and should be cleared to zero at all times.

TEST MODE REGISTER 2, INDEX 21

This register is used only during manufacturing tests and must be cleared to zero at all other times.

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I21	Test Register	X	X	X	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
1 = Clock 6845 & Blink with 28 MHz and mux out blink 1 = Enable a test reset 1 = Force access to active 1 = Mux out Dotclk on OUTB										

VIDEO ARRAY REGISTERS

The following registers can be accessed by writing their Hex address to 3DA and their Hex Data to 3DE.

Hex Address	Video Array Register
01	Palette Mask
02	Border Color
03	Mode Control
05	Extended RAM Page Register
08	Monitor / Mode Selection
10 - 1F	Palette Registers

ARRAY PALETTE MASK REGISTER

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I01	Palette Mask	X	X	X	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
MSK(3)	Palette Mask 3									
MSK(2)	Palette Mask 2									
MSK(1)	Palette Mask 1									
MSK(0)	Palette Mask 0									

When bits 0-3 are 0, they force the appropriate palette address to be 0 regardless of the incoming color information. This feature allows some of the color information in memory to hidden until it is required.

ARRAY BORDER COLOR

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I02	Border Color	X	X	0	X	^	^	^	^	Write Only
	Reserved = 0									
BORI	I (Iten) Border Color Select									
BORR	R (Red) Border Color Select									
BORG	G (Green) Border Color Select									
BORB	B (Blue) Border Color Select									

A combination of bits 0-3 selects the screen border as one of 16 colors, as listed in Table 1 "Available Color Table" at the beginning of this section.

ARRAY MODE CONTROL REGISTER

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I03	Mode Control	X	X	X	^	^	^	0	X	Write Only
Cl6COL	1 for 16 Color Modes _____									
C4COLHR	1 for 4 color 640x200 Mode _____									
BORENB	Enables the Border color register. For PC compatibility, this bit should be set to 0. For PCjr compatibility, this bit should be 1. Reserved for future implementations.____ Must always be set to 0									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I05	Extended RAM Page Register	^	X	X	X	X	X	X	^	Write Only
SWTCK	Select Video Clock 0 = 28.6 1 = 32.5									
EXTADR	Extended addressing mode bit _____									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
I08	Monitor Mode Selection	X	X	X	^	X	X	^	X	Write Only
MONO	1=350 line mono display__									
MODEE	1=Graphics mode E _____									

ARRAY PALETTE REGISTERS

There are sixteen 4 bit wide palette registers implemented by a 16x4 bit RAM. These registers are Read/Write. Their address in the video array are from 10 - 1F Hex, and can be used to re-define any color.

To load the palette, write the hex address to the Video Array Register at 3DA hex. Then, the new palette color is written to 3DE hex.

Palette address 10 hex is accessed whenever the color code from memory is a hex 0, and address 11 hex is accessed whenever the color code from memory is a hex 1, and so forth. A description of the color codes can be found in the "Available Colors Table" at the beginning of this section.

Note: The palette address can be 'masked' by using the palette mask register.

The following is a description of the register's bit functions:

Bit Number	Function
0	Blue
1	Green
2	Red
3	Intensity

When loading the palette, the video is 'disabled' and the color viewed on the screen is the data contained in the register being addressed by the processor.

When the program has completed loading the palette, it must change the hex address to some address less than 10 hex for video to be 'enabled, again.

If a programmer does not wish a user to see the adverse effects of loading the palette, the palette should be loaded during the vertical retrace time. The program must modify the palette and change the address to less than 10 hex within the vertical retrace time. A vertical retrace interrupt and a status bit are provided to facilitate this procedure.

In two color modes, the palette is defined by using one bit, PA0, with the following logic:

I=====I			I
I	PA0	Function	I
I=====I			I
I	0	Palette Register 0	I
I	1	Palette Register 1	I
I=====I			I

In four color modes, the palette is defined by using two bits, PA1 and PA0, with the following logic:

I=====I				
I	PA1	PA0	Function	I
I=====I				
I	0	0	Palette Register 0	I
I	0	1	Palette Register 1	I
I	1	0	Palette Register 2	I
I	1	1	Palette Register 3	I
I=====I				

In sixteen color modes, the palette is defined by using four bits, PA3, PA2, PA1 and PA0, with the following logic:

I=====I						
IPA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	Function		I
I=====I						
I 0	0	0	0	Palette Register 0		I
I 0	0	0	1	Palette Register 1		I
I 0	0	1	0	Palette Register 2		I
I 0	0	1	1	Palette Register 3		I
I 0	1	0	0	Palette Register 4		I
I 0	1	0	1	Palette Register 5		I
I 0	1	1	0	Palette Register 6		I
I 0	1	1	1	Palette Register 7		I
I 1	0	0	0	Palette Register 8		I
I 1	0	0	1	Palette Register 9		I
I 1	0	1	0	Palette Register 10		I
I 1	0	1	1	Palette Register 11		I
I 1	1	0	0	Palette Register 12		I
I 1	1	0	1	Palette Register 13		I
I 1	1	1	0	Palette Register 14		I
I 1	1	1	1	Palette Register 15		I
I=====I						

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3D8	Mode Control	X	X	^	^	^	^	0	^	Write Only
ENA										
BLINK	Set to 1 for _____ blink if attribute bit 7 is set. Set to 0 = 16 Color background. A 1 selects 8 color background									
HRESAD	Set to 1 640X200 2 or 4 _____ color graphics									
VIDEN	1 = enable video display _____									
BW	Black and White select. A _____ different color palette is selected by this bit in 320 X 200 4 color mode.									
GRPH	Set to 1 for Graphics _____ and 0 for Alpha Numeric Mode									
HRESEK	High Resolution Dot Clock _____ A 0 selects lower speed for 40 character text or low resolution graphics. A 1 selects high speed for for 80 character text or high resolution graphics									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3D9	Mode Control	X	X	^	^	^	^	0	^	Write Only
COLSEL	320X200 4 color blue control									
BACK GROUNDI	Alpha background _____ /320 Graphics Foreground intensity. When blink is enabled in Alpha mode, this bit is used to select intensity. In the 320 X 200 4 color mode it selects the intensity of the foreground									
OVER SCANI	In Alpha Mode Screen Border _____ intensity In 320 X 200 4 color mode sets Background intensity if PA0 and PA1 = 0 In 640 X 200 2 color selects Foreground Intensity									
OVER SCANR	In Alpha Mode Screen Border Red _____ In 320 X 200 4 color mode sets Background Red if PA0 and PA1 = 0 In 640X200 2 color selects Foreground Red									
OVER SCANG	In Alpha Mode Screen Border Green _____ In 320 X 200 4 color mode sets Background Green if PA0 and PA1 = 0 In 640X200 2 color selects Foreground Green									
OVER SCANB	In Alpha Mode Screen Border Blue _____ In 320 X 200 4 color mode sets Background Blue if PA0 and PA1 = 0 In 640X200 2 color selects Foreground Blue									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3DA	Video Status	X	X	^	X	^	X	X	^	Read Only
CHSYNV	1 during horiz. sync_									
CVSYNV	Equal 1 during vertical sync_									
DISPENB	Equal 0 when the display is active_____									

Address (Hex)	Register	Bit Programming								Notes
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
3DF	CRT/Proc. Page Reg.	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	Write Only
ADRM1 (**)	Video Address Mode 1 with Reg. 3DE index 5 bit 0 selects Video Address supplied to RAM									
ADRM0 (**)	Video Address Mode 0 with Register 3DE index 5 bit 0 selects Video Address supplied to RAM									
CPUPG2	Processor Page 2									
CPUPG1	Processor Page 1									
CPUPG0	Processor Page 0									
CRTPG2	CRT Page 2									
CRTPG1	CRT Page 1									
CRTPG0	CRT Page 0									

The processor page bits are combined with the CPU address to select the 32K segment of memory accessed at B8000 hex. If an odd pagenumber is selected, the window is reduced to 16K.

The CRT page bits select the 16K Page used by the Video. In 32K modes bit 0 is ignored.

Note (**): These bits are used in conjunction with register 3DE index 5, bit 0 to select the video addresses to RAM. See the Video Addressing Modes Table. Also the Graphics control bit ,3D8 bit 1, (GRPH) will force the same condition as ADRM0.

CONTROL BIT PROGRAMMING CHART

[illegible]

CRTC PROGRAMMING TABLE

CRTC INDEX VALUE	CRTC REGISTER	0	1	2	4	9	7	17H	E
00	HORIZONTAL TOTAL	138	171	138	171	161	135	171	
01	HORIZONTAL DISPLAYED	128	150	128	150	150	12D	150	
02	HORIZONTAL SYNC POS	12D	15A	12D	15A	152	12E	15A	
03	HORIZONTAL SYNC WIDTH	1F8	1FE	1F8	1FE	1FF	1F7	1FE	
04	VERTICAL TOTAL	11C	11C	17F	13F	119	15B	1FF	
05	VERTICAL ADJUST	101	101	106	106	106	102	106	
06	VERTICAL DISPLAYED	119	119	164	132	119	157	1C8	
07	VERTICAL SYNC POS	11A	11A	170	138	119	157	1E2	
09	SCAN LINES /CHARACTER	108	108	102	103	10D	103	100	
0A	CURSOR START	106	106	1XX	1XX	10B	1XX	1XX	
0B	CURSOR END	107	107	1XX	1XX	10C	1XX	1XX	
0C	SCREEN HIGH	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	
0D	SCREEN LOW	100	100	100	100	100	100	100	
0E	CURSOR HIGH	100	100	1XX	1XX	100	1XX	1XX	
0F	CURSOR LOW	100	100	1XX	1XX	100	1XX	1XX	
10	MODE CONTROL	118	118	118	118	118	118	118	
12	CHAR GEN	107	107	107	107	107	107	107	
13	CHAR FNT PTR	100	100	1XX	1XX	110	1XX	1XX	

VIDEO/SYSTEM MEMORY ADDRESS MAP

FFB8 BITS 3 2 1	VIDEO/SYSTEM MEMORY START ADDRESS	VIDEO/SYSTEM MEMORY ADDRESS RANGE
0 0 0	00000	00000 - 1FFFF
0 0 1	20000	20000 - 3FFFF
0 1 0	40000	40000 - 5FFFF
0 1 1	60000	60000 - 7FFFF
1 0 0	80000	80000 - 9FFFF
1 1 1	-	No System Memory

VIDEO MEMORY ADDRESSING MODES

03DA15 BIT 0 EXTADR	03DF BIT 7 ADRM1	03DF BIT 6 ADRM0	VIDEO MEMORY ORGANIZATION
0	0	0	1 - 16K segment of memory (8 pages)
0	0	1	2 - 8K segments of memory (8 pages) Switched on RA0
0	1	0	2 - 16K segments of memry (4 pages) Switched on RA0
0	1	1	4 - 8K segments of memory (4 pages) Switched on RA0 & RA1
1	0	0	1 - 32K (64K)segment of memory (4/2 pages)
Mode E uses the larger memory size (64K).			
For 8 Page Modes the Video Pages are selected by CRTPG[2:0].			
For 4 Page Modes the Video Pages are selected by CRTPG[1:0].			
For 2 Page Modes the Video Pages are selected by CRTPG2.			

JACKSBORO SPECIFICATION
jmp 05-26-88



Table of Contents

1.0	GENERAL		1
1.1	Functional Description		1
2.0	PIN LIST		1
3.0	ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS		4
4.0	D. C. ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS		4
4.1	Inputs		4
4.2	PD0 - PD7, INIT, /AFXT, /STROBE		4
4.3	/WAIT		4
4.4	DRQ, /TXD, /DTR, /RTS, PINT, SINT		4
4.5	IOD0 - IOD7		5
5.0	AC CHARACTERISTICS		6
6.0	Modifications to the 76496		7
6.1	Extra Bit of Division by each channel.		7
6.2	Synchronization of frequency dividers.		7
6.3	Minimum Wait State Generation		7
7.0	Software Specification		8
	Port C0 - C3 Write		8
	Port C4 Read		9
	Port C5 Write		9
	Port C5 Read		9
	Port C6 R/W		10
	Port C7 R/W		10
	Port 200 - 207 WR -- Clear Joystick DAC counter		10
	Port 200 - 207 RD -- Joystick Status		11
	Planar Control		11
	I/O Map Summary		12



1.0 GENERAL

1.1 Functional Description

The PSSJ Tandy ASIC is contained in a 68 pin PLCC package, and comprises the Printer port, a Serial (RS232) port, the Sound function, and the Joystick function of the Tandy 1000 computers.

2.0 PIN LIST

PIN NAME	PIN NO.	DRIVE	DESCRIPTION
VCC	1,35	--	Power inputs
VBB	59	--	Analog Power input
GND	18,52	--	Grounds
RST	25	TTL in	System reset signal, active high.
CLK14M	2	TTL in	Clock signal input, 14.31313 MHz, 50% duty cycle.
CLK2IN	37	TTL in	Clock signal input, either 24 MHz or 1.8432 MHz, 50% duty cycle.
IOD0 - IOD7	14,15,16,17 19,20,21,22	DS1218, 8 mA TS	Eight bit peripheral data bus intended to drive 5 XT type I/O slots, as well as all on board peripherals.
IOR-	10	TTL in	CPU/DMA I/O Read signal, active low. System control line.
IOW-	11	DS1218	CPU/DMA I/O Write signal, active low. System control line.
A0 - A2, A7	6,7,8,9	TTL in	System address lines.
CS0 - CS2	3,4,5	TTL in	Address decode inputs.
PINT	12	2 mA TS	Printer Interrupt, tristate.

PIN NAME	PIN NO.	DRIVE	DESCRIPTION
SINT	13	2 mA TS	Serial Interrupt, tristate.
PPITIM	68	TTL in	Low frequency sound input.
AUDIO_IN	55	An in.	Analog audio input, 1 V p-p.
SND_OUT	57	An out	Analog audio output, 2 V p-p.
GAIN_OUT	56	An out	Analog audio output, 2 V p-p
DRQ	23	2 mA TS	Data request for DMA operations, tristate.
TC	27	TTL in	Terminal Count input.
DACK1	26	TTL in	Data acknowledge for DMA ops.
WAIT-	24	2 mA OD	Sound chip wait output, open drain.
JPOS1 - JPOS4	60,61,62,63	DS1218	Digital joystick position input.
JSW1 - JSW4	64,65,66,67	DS1218	Digital joystick switch inputs.
DAC_OUT	58	An out	Analog DAC output for external integration, comparison with joystick voltages.
PD0 - PD7	51,50,49,48 47,46,45,44	DS1218 4 mA TS	Printer data inputs/outputs.
INIT	40	4 mA OD	Printer initialization output.
AFXT-	39	4 mA OD	Printer auto feed output.
STROBE-	38	4 mA OD	Printer strobe output.
ACK-	41	TTL in	Printer acknowledge input.

PIN NAME	PIN NO.	DRIVE	DESCRIPTION
PE	43	TTL in	Printer paper empty input.
SLCTIN-	53	TTL in	Printer select input.
BUSY-	42	TTL in	Printer busy input.
FAULT-	54	TTL in	Printer fault input.
DTR-	36	2 mA	RS232 data terminal ready output.
RTS-	33	2 mA	RS232 request to send output.
TXD-	34	2 mA	RS232 transmit data output.
RI-	29	TTL in	RS232 ring indicator input.
DCD-	30	TTL in	RS232 carrier detect input.
DSR-	28	TTL in	RS232 data set ready input.
CTS-	32	TTL in	RS232 clear to send input.
RXD-	31	TTL in	RS232 receive data input.

3.0 ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Storage Temperature:	-65		150	degrees C
Operating Temperature:	0	25	55	degrees C
All output pins	-0.5		7.0	volts DC
All input pins	-0.5		7.0	volts DC
Power Supply (Vcc)	-0.5		7.0	volts DC
Power dissipation			700	milliwatts

4.0 D. C. ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

4.1 Inputs

Leakage current	Min	Typ	Max	Units
			+/-10	uA
Vih (TTL in)	2.0		Vcc+.5	volts DC
Vih (DS1218)	2.1		Vcc+.5	volts DC
Vil	-0.5		0.8	volts DC
Input capacitance			10	pF

4.2 PD0 - PD7, INIT, /AFXT, /STROBE

	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Iol	4			mA
Vol			0.4	volts DC
Ioh	1			mA
Voh	2.4			volts DC
Capacitive load	100			pF

4.3 /WAIT

	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Iol	4			mA
Vol			0.4	volts DC
Capacitive load	100			pF

4.4 DRQ, /TXD, /DTR, /RTS, PINT, SINT

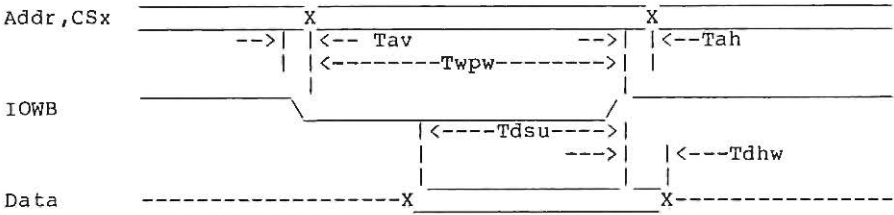
	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Iol	2			mA
Vol			0.4	volts DC
Ioh	1			mA
Voh	2.4			volts DC
Capacitive load	40			pF

4.5 IOD0 - IOD7

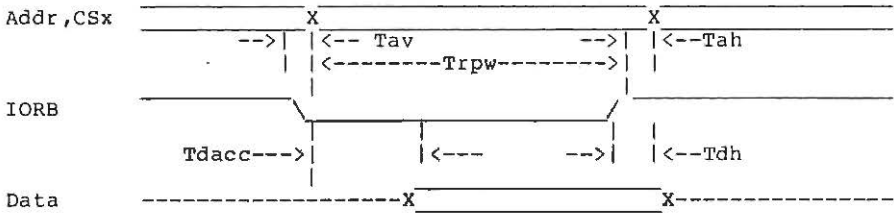
	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Iol	8			mA
Vol			0.4	volts DC
Ioh	2			mA
Voh	2.4			volts DC
Capacitive load	100			pF

5.0 AC CHARACTERISTICS

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Tav (Address Valid)	-15			nSec
Tah (Address Hold)	30			nSec
Trpw (Read Pulse Width)	120			nSec
Twpw (Write Pulse Width)	125			nSec
Tdsu (Data Setup (Write))	65			nSec
Tdacc (Data Access (Read))			100	nSec
Tdhr (Data Hold (Read))	10		30	nSec
Tdhw (Data Hold (Write))	25			nSec



I/O Write Cycle



I/O Read Cycle

6.0 Modifications to the 76496

6.1 Extra Bit of Division by each channel.

When clocked by a 3.579545 MHz signal, the lowest frequency generated by the 76496 (with its 10 bit dividers) is 109.24 Hz. It is desired to be able to generate lower frequencies. An extra bit of division will allow frequencies down to 54.62 Hz, or an octave lower than the lowest note currently available. Since there is an extra bit in the frequency update register (second byte), it makes sense to implement this feature here. However, to maintain backwards compatibility, since it is not known what is programmed in this bit, there needs to be a way of defeating the extra bit of division. Therefore, there is a signal (SEDE), which enables the extra bit for all three channels. This bit defaults to a logic zero (low) on reset. When it is set, by writing to port C4 with bit 6 high, the extra divider will be enabled.

6.2 Synchronization of frequency dividers.

The current 76496 design loads each divider when initially written to, with no provision for synchronization of the dividers. This is a handicap when programming frequencies of low integer relationships to each other, because it is not possible to guarantee the phase of the signals. Therefore, if synchronization is desired, it is enabled by writing to port C4, with bit 5 set (which defaults to reset). When this bit is high, any write to a frequency register of the new sound channel will not only load its divider, but reload the dividers in the present 76496.

6.3 Minimum Wait State Generation

The 32 wait states generated by the 76496 need to be reduced. The chip must be guaranteed to latch the data written in the same time allotted for the 8250A megacell. Any wait states generated should only apply to a successive write (not the first in a series). All write timing should be referenced to the rising edge of the IOW- strobe.

7.0 Software Specification

Port C0 - C3 Write

Access 76496 megacell

Port	R/W	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
C4	W	(res)	SEDE	SDSE	DIEN	DICL-	DMAEN	DF1	DF0

Where:

DF1	DF0	=	Dac Function Select
0	0	=	Joystick
0	1	=	Sound Channel
1	0	=	Successive Approximation
1	1	=	Direct write to DAC
DMAEN		=	DMA Enable (for SA, direct R/W)
0		=	DMA Disabled
1		=	DMA Enabled for SA, DA
DICL-		=	DMA interrupt clear
0		=	DMA interrupt held clear
1		=	DMA interrupt allowed
DIEN		=	DMA Interrupt enable
0		=	DMA EOP interrupt disabled
1		=	DMA EOP interrupt enabled
SDSE		=	Sound Divider Sync Enable
0		=	Synchronization Disabled
1		=	Sync Enabled: Write to C6 or C7 reloads all dividers
SEDE		=	Sound Chip Extra Divide Enable
0		=	Extra Divide disabled
1		=	Extra Divide enabled
(res)		=	reserved

Port C4 Read

[Readback all bits except bit 3. In addition:]

bit 7	=	SAD-	=	Successive Approximation done. Useful when polling instead of DMA for successive approximation.
bit 3	=	DIO	=	DMA interrupt has occurred. To clear the interrupt it is necessary bring DICL low, then back high.

Port C5 Write

Direct write to DAC (DF1,0 = 11 bin).
Pulse width and waveshape (DF1,0 = 01 bin).

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
=====								
					=			
	WS1	WS0	(res)	(res)	(res)	PW2	PW1	PW0

Where:

WS1	WS0	=	Waveshape select bits
0	0	=	Pulse
0	1	=	Ramp
1	0	=	Triangle
1	1	=	Reserved
PW2	PW1	PW0	
0	0	0	= 6.25% duty cycle
0	0	1	= 12.5% duty cycle
0	1	0	= 18.75% duty cycle
0	1	1	= 25.0% duty cycle
1	0	0	= 31.25% duty cycle
1	0	1	= 37.5% duty cycle
1	1	0	= 43.75% duty cycle
1	1	1	= 50% duty cycle

Port C5 Read

Direct read of DAC (Succ. Approx.) (DF1,0 = 1X bin).
Direct read of Snd Control register (DF1,0 = 01 bin).

Port C6 R/W

Frequency LSB for DAC sound channel.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
=====							
F7	F6	F5	F4	F3	F2	F1	F0

Port C7 R/W

Amplitude/frequency MSN for DAC sound channel.

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
=====							
SAMP3	SAMP2	SAMP1	res	F11	F10	F9	F8

The amplitude will be programmable in 7 levels, with approximately 3 dB per level. The maximum level ('111') will closely approximate that in the existing sound chip. A value of '000' will result in no output. This level control also applies to the raw DAC output when outputting digitized sound.

The ramp will count up the five MSB's of the DAC. The triangle will count up the four MSB's of the DAC for the first half of the wave, then count them back down for the second half. The frequency range of the DAC as a sound channel will have the same upper limit and a lower limit of one octave lower than the new frequency range of the sound chip (down to 27.3 Hz.). Obviously, the bit programming order of the frequency is different. The actual frequency will be 111.86 KHz divided by the number programmed into the sound frequency register(s).

Port 200 - 207 WR -- Clear Joystick DAC counter

A write to port 20X, where X = 0 to 7, will clear a free-running counter, and load a value of 16 into the 12-bit divider. The eight bit free-running counter will be clocked by the 3.58 MHz signal divided by 24, or 149.1 KHz. The output of the eight bit counter will drive the DAC to produce a staircase wave, which simulates a ramp for use by the joystick comparators. When the counter reaches a count of 255, it will stop until port 20X is written to again.

The elapsed time for the complete ramp will be approximately 1.7 milliseconds, closely approximating the elapsed time of the current Tandy 1000 Joystick circuitry.

Port 200 - 207 RD -- Joystick Status

The data read at port 20X, where X = 0 to 7, will be the outputs of the joystick position comparators and the states of the joystick pushbuttons, in the same manner as the current Tandy 1000 Joystick circuitry.

Planar Control

Port 65 contains three bits which are used to enable the printer interface (bit 1), the printer output (bit 7), and the serial port (bit 4). These bits are all enabled (set high) on reset, and must be cleared by software to disable the appropriate function. The printer output enable function is logically "or-ed" with the current Tandy 1000 printer output enable bit, so that either one will enable the printer output buffer.

Additional control is available at port FFEB. Bit D0 selects whether the serial clock is divided by 13 or 1. Bit D1 must be high to enable the joystick function, and bit D2 must be high to enable the sound chip functions. Bits D1 and D2 default to high on power up.

I/O Map Summary

The following ports are utilized in the PSSJ part:

PORT	R/W	BITS	FUNCTION
=====	=====	=====	=====
0061	W	4	Sound Chip Enable
0065	R/W	1,4,7	Planar Control
00C0-00C3	W	all	Sound Chip Data
00C4-00C7	R/W	all	DAC Functions
0200-0207	R/W	all	Joystick Function
0378-037A	R/W	all	Printer Interface
03F8-03FF	R/W	all	Serial Interface
FFEB	R/W	0,1,2	UART clock select,JSE,DSE

Floppy Disk Support Chip Specification



Floppy Disk Support Chip Specification
Contents

Section	Page
General Description	1
Pin Description	2
Block Diagram	3
Environmental Specifications	5
DC Electrical Specifications	5
AC Characteristics	6
Timing Diagrams	9



Floppy Disk Support Logic
Tandy Part #8041404
January 29, 1987

1.0 General Description

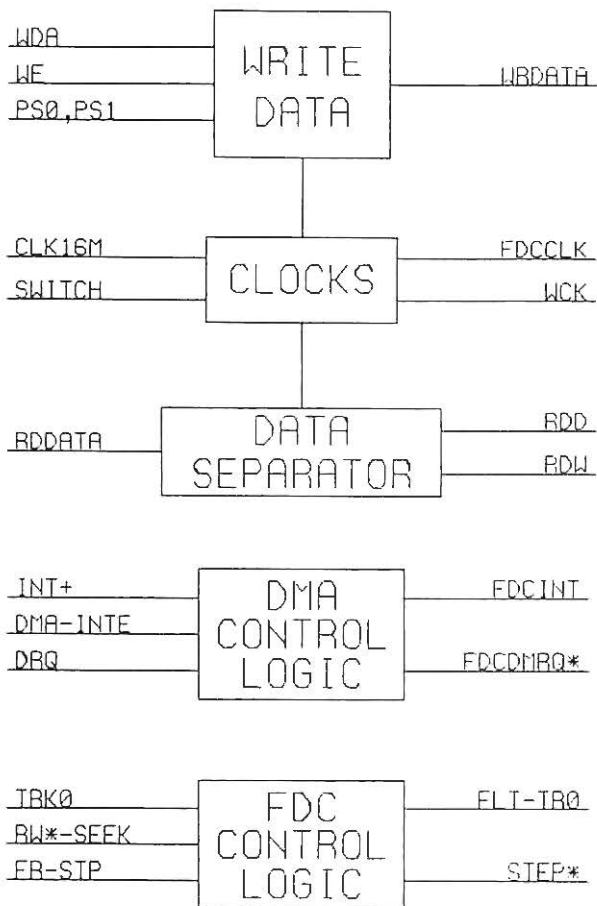
- 1.1 The Tandy Part #8041404 - Floppy Disk Support Logic:
- Generates the clock to the 765 Floppy Disk Controller.
 - Generates the write clock to the Floppy Disk.
 - Generates step pulses, track 0 indicator, DMA request, and FDC interrupt signals.

1--	CLK16M	+5V	--24
2--	WCK	SWITCH	--23
3--	FDCCLK	INT+	--22
4--	RDDATA*	DMA/INTE	--21
5--	RDD	DRQ	--20
6--	RDW	FDCINT	--19
7--	FRES/S	FDCDMRQ*	--18
8--	RW*/SEEK	PSO	--17
9--	TRKO*	PS1	--16
10--	F/TRKO	WRD	--15
11--	STEP*	WRE	--14
12--	GND	WRDATA*	--13

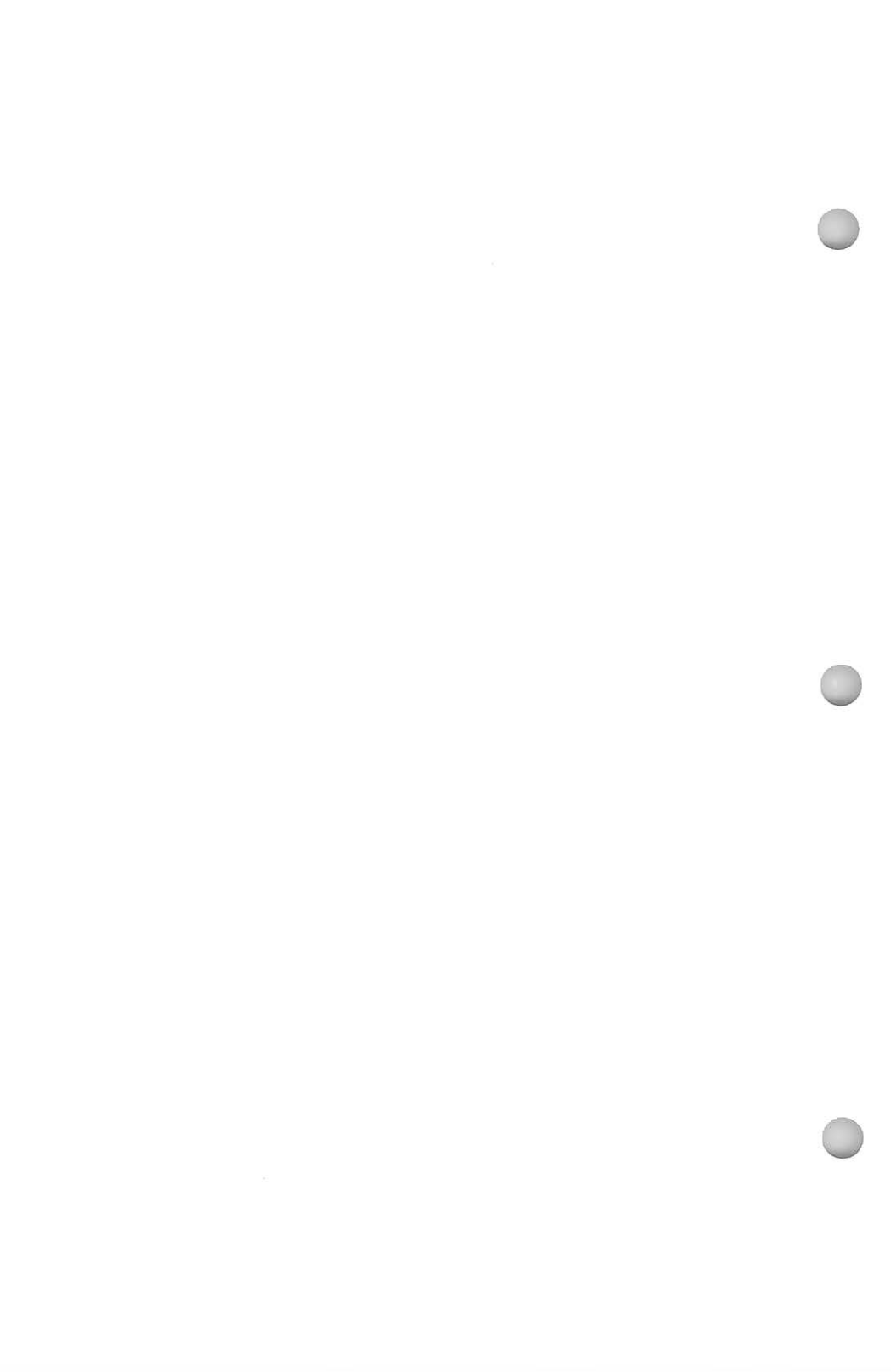
Figure 1. Pin Assignment

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF PINS:

PIN #	PIN NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
1	CLK16M	INPUT	Frequency = 16.0000 Tolerance = 100ppm
2	WCK	OUTPUT	If SWITCH = 0, period = 2 us, 250 ns pulse If SWITCH = 1, period = 1 us, 250 ns pulse
3	FDCCLK	OUTPUT	If SWITCH = 0, then CLK16M/4 If SWITCH = 1, then CLK16M/2
4	RDDATA	INPUT	Serial data from FDD
5	RDD	OUTPUT	Serial data from FDC
6	RDW	OUTPUT	Read Data Window
7	FRES/S	INPUT	Step pulses to move head to another cylinder
8	RW*/SEEK	INPUT	Specifies seek mode when high
9	TRK0*	INPUT	From FDD, indicating head is on track 0
10	F/TRK0	OUTPUT	To FDC, indicating head is on track 0
11	STEP*	OUTPUT	Moves head of FDD
12	GND		Ground
13	WRDATA*	OUTPUT	Serial Data to FDD
14	WRE	INPUT	Write Enable
15	WRD	INPUT	Serial Data from FDC
16	PS1	INPUT	Write precompensation status
17	PS0	INPUT	Write precompensation status
18	FDCDMRQ*	OUTPUT	DRQ delayed by 1.0 usec.
19	FDCINT	OUTPUT	Interrupt request
20	DRQ	INPUT	FDC DMA Request
21	DMA/INTE	INPUT	DMA request and FDC interrupt enable
22	INT+	INPUT	Interrupt request generated by FDC
23	SWITCH	INPUT	0 = low density drive 1 = high density drive
24	+5V		+5 Volts



BLOCK DIAGRAM



2.0 ENVIRONMENTAL SPECIFICATIONS

- 2.1 Storage temperature: -65°C min., +150°C max.
 2.2 Operating temperature: 0°C min., +25°C typ, +70°C max.

3.0 DC ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

- 3.1 Absolute Maximum Rating:
 Voltage on any pin
 w.r.t. Ground: -0.5 min., 7.0 max. volts

3.2 Operating Electrical Specifications:

	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
3.2.1 Operating Ambient: Air Temperature Range	0	25	70	°C
3.2.2 Power Supplies:				
VCC	4.5	5.0	5.5	volts
VSS	0	0	0	volts
ICC				milli-amps
Total Power				milli-watts
3.2.3 Leakage Current, All Inputs:				
Vin = 0.0 v			-10	micro-amps
Vin = 5.0 v			+10	micro-amps
3.2.4 Input voltages:				
3.2.4.1 Except RDDATA*, TRK*				
Logic "0"			.8	volts
Logic "1"	2.0			volts
3.2.4.2 RDDATA*, TRK*				
Positive going threshold		1.8		volts
Negative going threshold		1.2		volts
Hysteresis voltage	220			milli-volts
3.2.5 Output Voltages:				
3.2.5.1 Except WRDATA*, STEP*				
Logic "0" @ 4.0 mA load			.4	volts
Logic "1" @ 4.0 mA load	2.4			volts
3.2.5.2 WRDATA*, STEP*				
Logic "0" @ 48 mA			.5	volts
3.2.6 Input Capacitance (0.0 < Vin < 5.0)				
All inputs			10	pf
3.2.7 Output Capacitance				
All loads			50	pf

4.0 AC CHARACTERISTICS

4.1 FDCCLK Timing

Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
t_H	90	120	130	nSec
t_R, t_F		5	10	nSec
t_L	100	120	160	nSec
t_{CY}	245	250	255	nSec

4.2 WCK Timing

t_H	100	250	250	nSec
t_R, t_F		5	10	nSec
t_L		$t_{CY} - (t_H + t_R + t_F)$		
t_{CY}		2.0		μ Sec

4.3 WRDATA* Timing

WCK _H -WE _H	20		nSec	
WCK _L -WE _L	20		nSec	
PSD _L	20	100	nSec	
WDD	20	100	nSec	
WDA _W		WCK _H -50	nSec	
WRD _W	115	125	135	nSec
WDD _H -WRD _L early	150	250	nSec	
WDD _H -WRD _L nominal	275	375	nSec	
WDD _H -WRD _L late	400	500	nSec	

4.4 DMA/INTERRUPT Timing

$I_H - FI_H$		30	nSec
$I_L - FI_L$		30	nSec
$DI_L - FI_L$		30	nSec
$WCK_H - DRQ_H$	0		nSec
$WCK_L - DRQ_H$		-20	nSec
$DRQ_H - FDRQ_H$	750	1050	nSec
$DRQ_L - FDRQ_L$		30	nSec
$DI_L - FDRQ_L$		30	nSec
$FCK_H - FDRQ_H$		30	nSec

4.5 CONTROL Timing

Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Units
T _L -FT _H			30	nSec
T _H -FT _L			30	nSec
RS _L -FT _L			30	nSec
F _H -S _L			30	nSec
F _L -S _H			30	nSec
RS _L -S _H			30	nSec

4.6 DATA SEPARATOR Timing

RDA _W	200	350	550	nSec
RDA _L -RDD _H	188		313	nSec
RDD _W	240	250	260	nSec
RDD _H -RDW _C	850	875	900	nSec
RDW(ND) _W		2.0		μSec

"A"

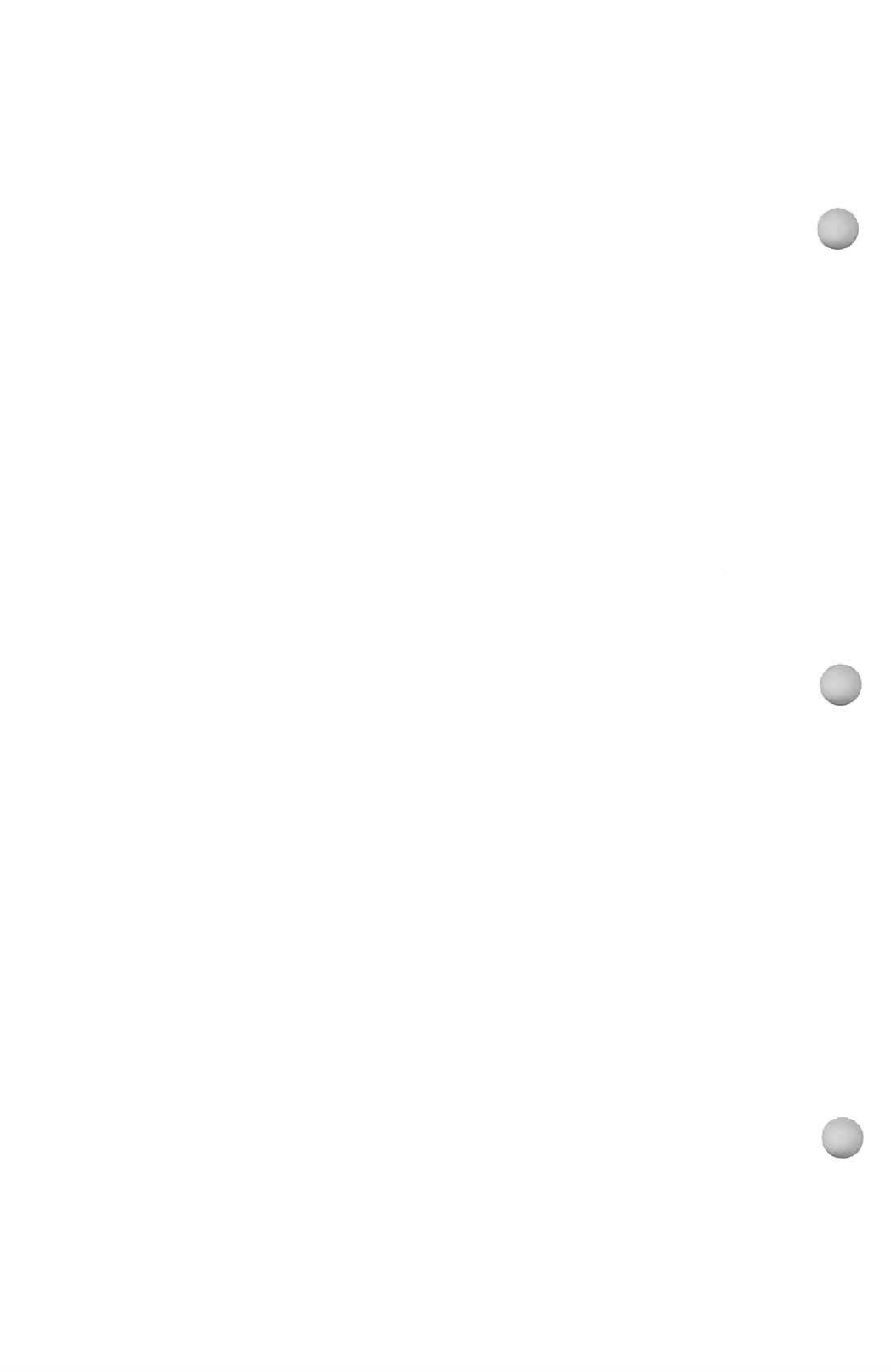
RDA _S	3062			nSec
RDW _C -RDD _H	15			nSec

"B"

RDA _S	4812			nSec
RDW _C -RDD _H		1938		nSec

"C"

RDA _S	5062			nSec
RDW _C -RDD _H	15			nSec



FDSL AC TIMING

FIG. 1 FDCCLK

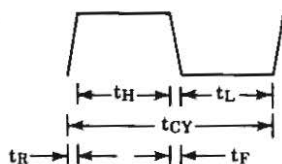


FIG. 2 WCK

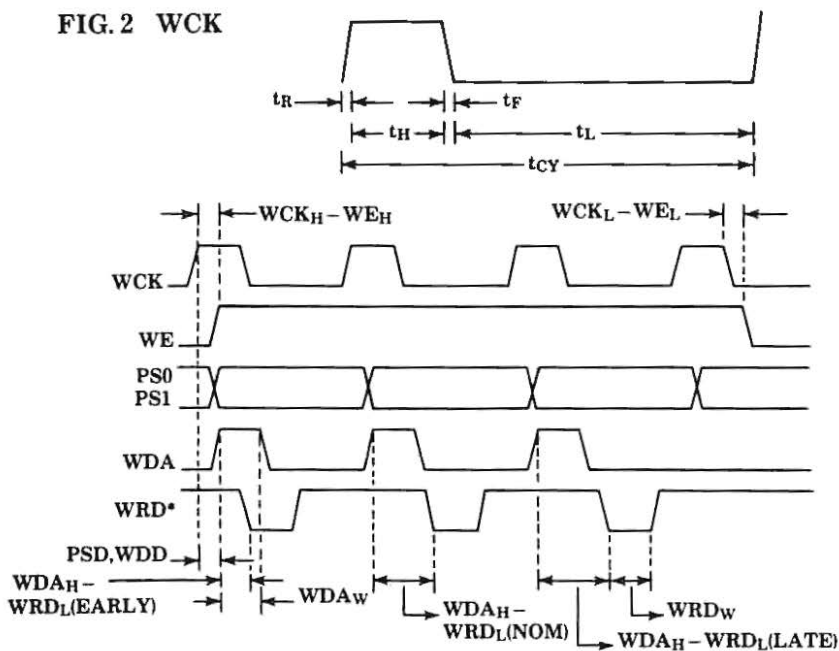


FIG. 3 WRITE DATA TIMING.

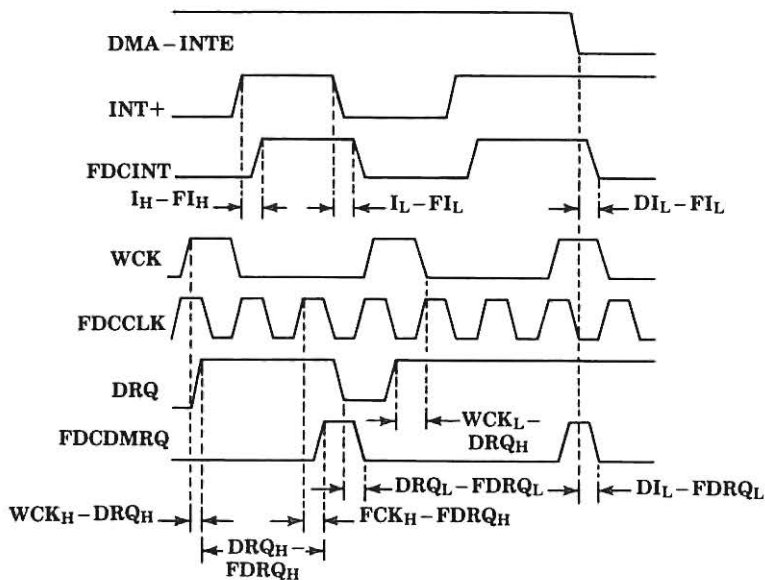


FIG. 4 DMA/INTERRUPT TIMING.

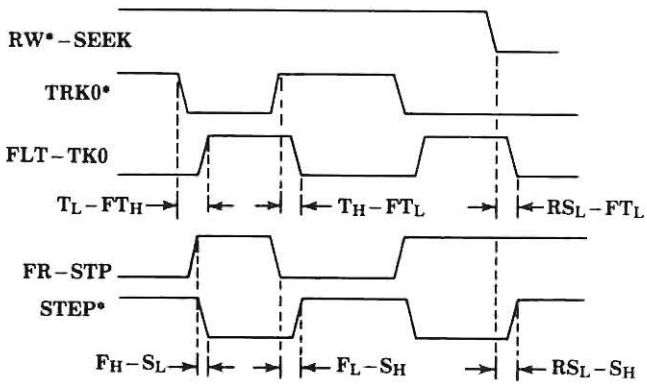


FIG. 5 CONTROL LOGIC TIMING.

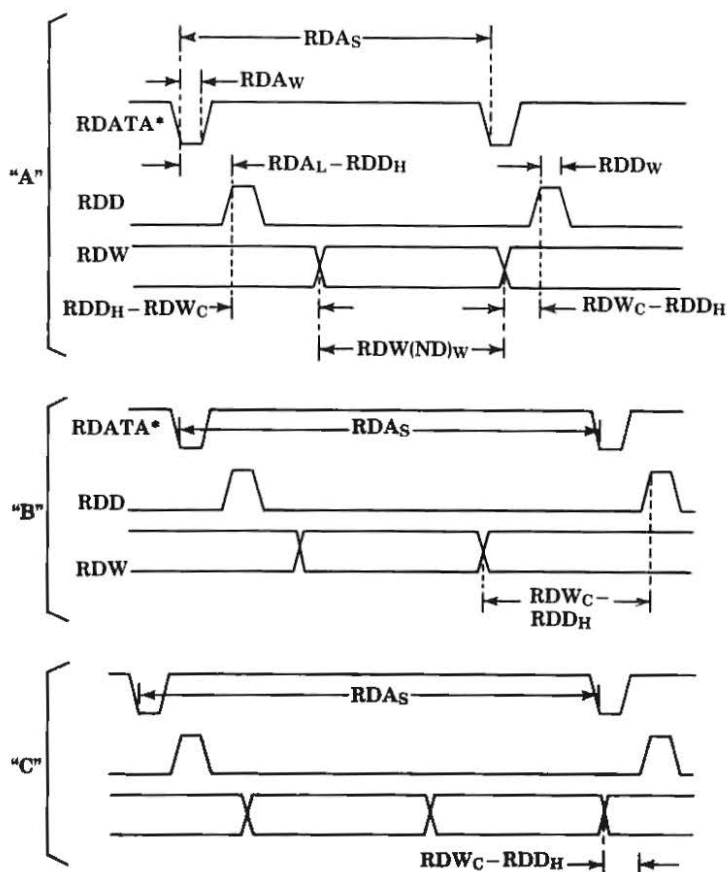


FIG. 6 DATA SEPARATOR TIMING.

KFIT CUSTOM CHIP

(KEYBOARD, FLOPPY SUPPORT, INTERRUPT, TIMER)

The information contained herein is exclusive property of Tandy Corporation. No reproduction of any kind may be made without the express written authorization of:

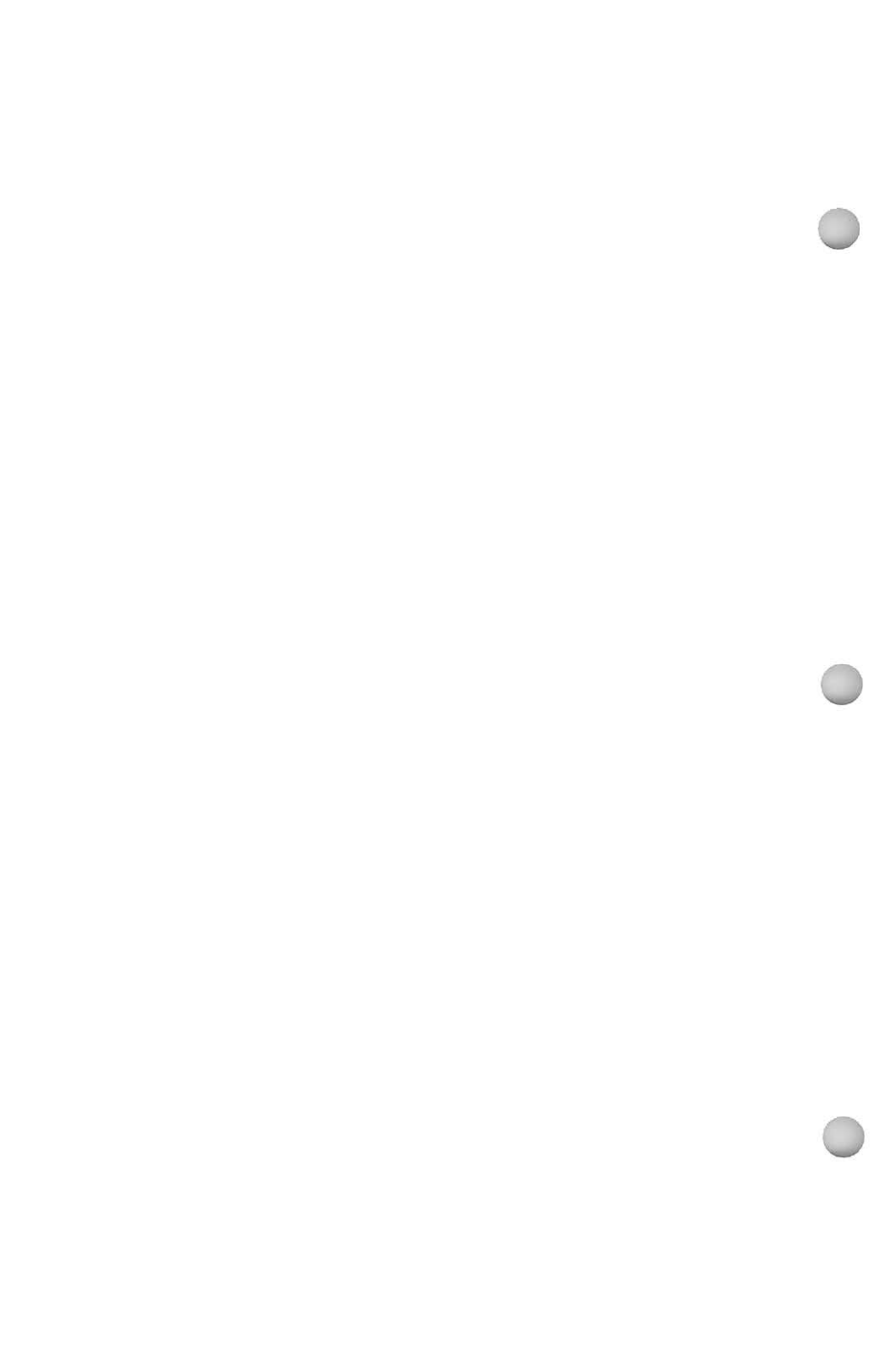
Tandy Corporation
1000 Two Tandy Center
Fort Worth, Tx 76102

TANDY PART #: 8079019



Table Of Contents

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTIONS	1
Programmable Peripheral Interface	1
Keyboard Interface Logic	1
Floppy Disk Interface Logic	1
Programmable Interval Timer	2
Programmable Interrupt	2
Address Decoding Logic	2
BLOCK DIAGRAM	3
INPUT/OUTPUT PIN DESCRIPTIONS	4
I/O MAPS	10
I/O Signal Definition:	10
Register Definition:	11
Interrupt	11
Timer	11
PPI/Keyboard	11
0060 - Port A	11
0061 - Port B	11
0062 - Port C	12
0063-0064 - Port not used	12
Planar Control	12
0065 - Planar Register Read/Write	12
Non Volatile Memory Access	12
037C - Non-volatile memory write only	12
Floppy Disk Control	13
03F1 - FDC Mode Control	13
03F2 - FDC Digital Output Register	13
03F4 - FDC chip select	13
03F5 - FDC chip select	13
03F7 - FDC Data Rate Selection	13
System Configuration Register	14
FFEB - Non IBM Compatible Read/Write	14
ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS	15
KEYBOARD TIMING SPECIFICATIONS	16
FLOPPY DISK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS:	18
ADDRESS PORT EQUATIONS	19



FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTIONS

This Tandy KFIT custom IC consists of the following functional blocks:

- Programmable Peripheral Interface (PPI)
- Keyboard Interface Logic
- Floppy Disk Interface Logic
- Programmable Interrupt (equivalent to Intel 8259A) and sharing interrupt logic
- Programmable Timer (equivalent to Intel 8254-2 and Clock Divider
- Address Decoding Logic

Programmable Peripheral Interface

This section of the KFIT custom integrated circuit replaces the Intel 8255A that was used on the original Tandy 1000 computer. On the block diagram for this section of logic, the 8255A is represented by three 74LS244 buffers addressed by read A (0060), read B (0061), read C (0062). Also the two latches addressed by write B (0061), write C (0062) which are part of the original 8255A logic.

Keyboard Interface Logic

This section of the KFIT custom integrated circuit is design to support Tandy 1000 keyboard or Tandy 101 enhanced keyboard. KYBDTYP signal is used to select Tandy 1000 keyboard when is LOW or Tandy 101 enhanced keyboard when is HIGH. The KYBDTYP is being read in to port FFEB(hex) bit 7. The KBDDATA - keyboard data is serial data bit stream and then is converted to 8 bits parallel data by 74LS322. The serial data is entered in the LOW to HIGH transition of the KBCLK.

Floppy Disk Interface Logic

This section of the KFIT custom integrated circuit is design to support Floppy Disk Digital Output Register (DOR) function. This register is mapped in address 03F2 hex - data bit 0 to 7 (write only) to generate drive select DS0B, DS1B, DS2B; FDCRST (FDC reset) DMA/I and MTRONB (motor ON) signal. The DMA/I signal is used to disable FDCINTI, FDCDMRQ, and FDACKI signals for allowing the used of external FDC controller.

Programmable Interval Timer

This section of the KFIF custom integrated circuit is equivalent to an Intel 8254-5 and is designed to use with the Tandy 1000 TX. It is organized as three independent 16-bit counters, each with a clock of 1.19 MHz. The 1.19 MHz clock is generated from 14MHz divided by 12. All modes of operation are software programmable.

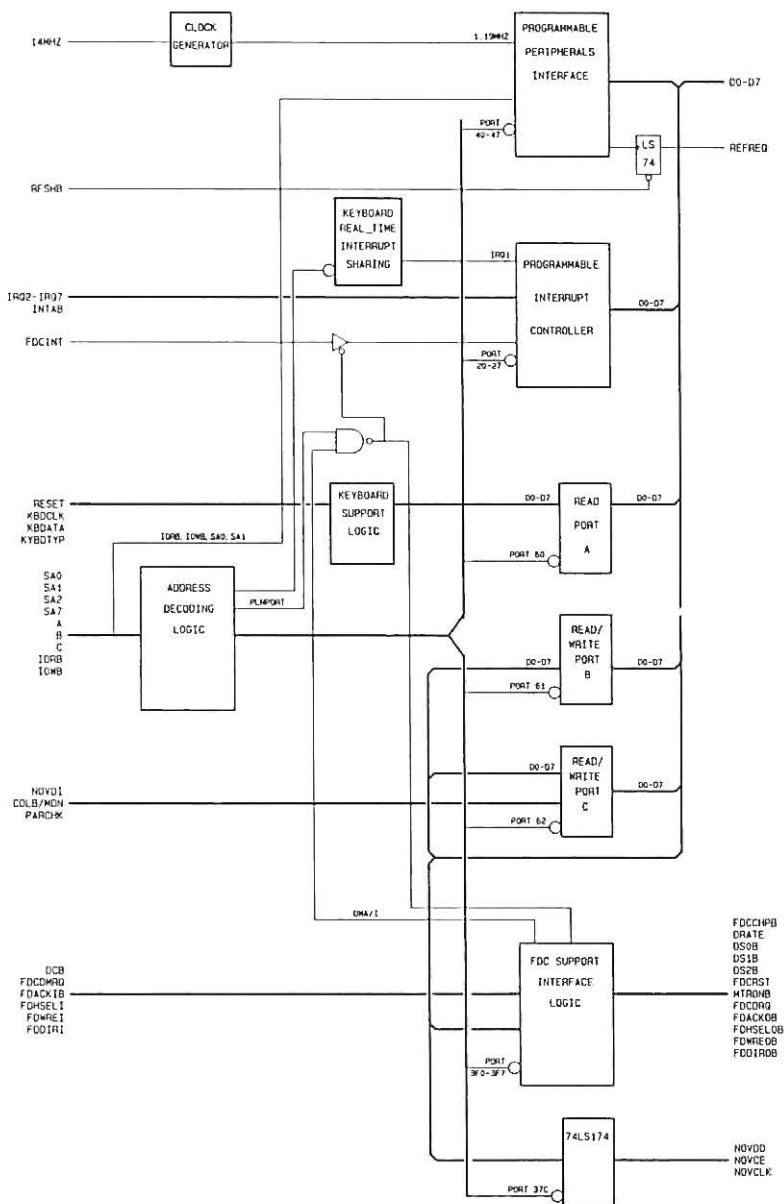
Programmable Interrupt

This section of the KTIF custom integrated circuit is equivalent to an Intel 8259A that capable of handling eight-vector priority interrupt, individual request mask and programmable interrupt modes. This circuit generates INTR output signal for the CPU. In addition, the sharing interrupt logics are implemented in the design for IRQ1 (between keyboard and real time clock interrupt)

Address Decoding Logic

This section contains 3 to 8 address decode to generate Programmable Interrupt Chip select, Programmable Interval Timer chip select, Floppy Disk chip select (FDCCHP*) and Programmable Peripheral Interface address of three decoded address A, B and C. (see IO signal definition). The FDC port is enabled by Planar register-port 0065hex bit 3 when bit 3 is HIGH.

BLOCK DIAGRAM



INPUT/OUTPUT PIN DESCRIPTIONS

#	Signal	Output Current	Pin Number	Type	Descriptions
1	XD0 (S.T input)	8ma	14	I/O	Data bus 0
2	XD1 (S.T input)	8ma	15	I/O	Data bus 1
3	XD2 (S.T input)	8ma	16	I/O	Data bus 2
4	XD3 (S.T input)	8ma	17	I/O	Data bus 3
5	XD4 (S.T input)	8ma	19	I/O	Data bus 4
6	XD5 (S.T input)	8ma	20	I/O	Data bus 5
7	XD6 (S.T input)	8ma	21	I/O	Data bus 6
8	XD7 (S.T input)	8ma	22	I/O	Data bus 07
9	SA0		28	I	System address 0
10	SA1		29	I	System address 1
11	SA2		30	I	System address 2
12	SA7		31	I	System address 7
13	A		32	I	CPU I/O address decode LSB
14	B		33	I	CPU I/O address decode
15	C		34	I	CPU I/O address decode MSB
16	IOWB		37	I	Active LOW. CPU I/O write signal
17	IORB		36	I	Active LOW. CPU I/O read signal

#	Signal	Output Current	Pin Number	Type	Descriptions
18	14MHZ		27	I	Clock signal 14.318 MHZ
19	BUSY (O.C., Pull_up)*	8ma	58	O	Keyboard busy When High
20	KYBDTYP (Pull-up)		61	I	Keyboard type select. When High, selects IBM PC keyboard. When Low selects Tandy keyboard
21	PPITM	2ma	12	O	Programmable Peripheral Interface Timer output signal for sound generator.
22	KBDDATA (3-state)	8ma	60	I/O	Input data signal from keyboard. In the IBM PC keyboard this pin is used as an output to hold the data Low.
23	KBDCLK (3-state)	8ma	59	I/O	Input clock signal from keyboard. In the IBM PC keyboard this pin is used as an output to hold the clock LOW.
24	DS0B (O.C. Pull_up*)	8ma	57	O	Drive select signal When Low.
25	DS1B (O.C. Pull_up*)	8ma	56	O	Drive select signal when is LOW.
26	DS2B (O.C. Pull_up*)	8ma	55	O	Drive select signal when is LOW.
27	DCB (Pull_up)		38	I	Disk change signal when is LOW

#	Signal	Output Current	Pin Number	Type	Descriptions
=====					
28	DRATE (O.C.)	16ma	54	O	Data rate select signal. When is LOW, 500 kbps is selected. When is HIGH 250kbps is selected.
29	FDCRST	4ma	46	O	FDC reset signal to the FDC controller when is HIGH.
30	RESET		66	I	System reset input signal when is HIGH.
31	MTRONB (O.C.)	16ma	53	O	Floppy disk motor ON output signal when is LOW.
32	FDHSELI		42	I	Head select input signal from floppy disk controller.
33	FDHSELOB (O.C.)	16ma	49	O	Head select input signal for floppy drives when is LOW.
34	FDWREI		41	I	Write enable input signal from floppy disk controller.
35	FDWREOB (O.C.)	16ma	50	O	Write enable output signal for floppy drives when is LOW
36	FDDIRI		40	I	Head travel direction input signal from FDC controller.
37	FDDIROB (O.C.)	16ma	51	O	Head travel direction for floppy drive.
38	FDCCHPB	4ma	47	O	FDC chip select output signal or FDC controller when is LOW.

#	Signal	Output Current	Pin Number	Type	Descriptions
39	FDACKIB		44	I	FDC controller acknowledge output signal when is LOW.
40	FDACKOB	2ma	45	O	FDC controller acknowledge output signal when is LOW.
41	FDCINT		39	I	Floppy disk interrupt input signal when is HIGH.
42	FDCDMRQ		43	I	Floppy disk service request input signal to DMA when is LOW
43	FDCDRQ	4ma	48	O	Floppy disk service request output signal to the DMA when is LOW
44	IRQ2 (S.T. Pull_up)		5	I	Interrupt request 2 input signal
45	IRQ3 (S.T. Pull_up)		6	I	Interrupt request 3 input signal
46	IRQ4 (S.T. Pull_up)		7	I	Interrupt request 4 input signal
47	IRQ5 (S.T. Pull_up)		8	I	Interrupt request 5 input signal
48	IRQ6 (3-state, Pull_up)		10	I	Interrupt request 6 input/output signal
49	IRQ7 (S.T. Pull_up)		9	I	Interrupt request 7 input signal

#	Signal	Output Current	Pin Number	Type	Descriptions
=====					
50	INTAB		4	I	Interrupt acknowledge signal. This signal is used to enable interrupt vector data onto the data bus by a sequence of interrupt acknowledge pulses issued by the CPU
51	INTR	2ma	11	O	Interrupt request signal. This signal is used to interrupt the CPU when HIGH
52	RTCINTB (S.T. Pull_up)		2	I	Real time clock interrupt signal from the Real Time Clock device when LOW.
53	NOVDI		26	I	NOV_RAM data in signal
54	NOVCE	2ma	23	O	NOV_RAM chip enable signal
55	NOVDO	2ma	25	O	NOV_RAM data out signal
56	NOVCK	2ma	24	O	NOV_RAM clock
57	RFRSHB		3	I	DMA acknowledge signal from 8237. This signal is active HIGH
58	REFREQ	2ma	13	O	DMA Request signal for 8237. This signal is active HIGH
59	COL/MON		68	I	Input configuration control signal
60	PARCHK		67	I	Parity Check input signal

#	Signal	Output Current	Pin Number	Type	Descriptions
=====					
61	VCC		1		Power supply +5V
62	VCC		35		Power supply +5V
63	GND		52		Ground
64	GND		18		Ground
65	not used		62		
66	not used		63		
67	not used		64		
68	not used		65		

Notes:- O.C. = Open Collector

- 3-State = Tri State

- S.T. = Schmitt Trigger

- * = Max.=1.6ma, Min.=0.4ma sinking current.

These signals must have external termination.

I/O MAPS

I/O Signal Definition:

C	B	A	Address Range Hex	Function
0	0	0	0020 - 0027	Interrupts
0	0	1	0040 - 0047	Timer
			00C0 - 00C7	Sound
0	1	0	0060 - 0067	PPI
			0065	Planar Register
0	1	1	03F0 - 03F7	Floppy
1	0	0	0200 - 0207	Joystick
1	0	1	0378 - 037F	Printer
			037C	NOVRAM
			03F8 - 03FF	Serial
1	1	0	FFE8 - FFEF	Non IBM compatible
1	1	1	-----	Inactive

Register Definition:

Address Range Hex	Bit	Description
-----	---	-----
Interrupt		
0020	~	Initialization Command Word 1
0021	~	Initialization Command Word 2
0022 - 0027		Not used

Timer

0040/0044	~	Timer
0041/0045	~	Timer
0042/0047	~	Timer

Note: ~ = refers to system I/O maps.

PPI/Keyboard

Address Range Hex	Bit	Description
-----	---	-----
0060 - Port A		
	0	Keyboard Read Data Input
	1	Read only Keyboard bit 0 LSB
	2	Read only Keyboard bit 1
	3	Read only Keyboard bit 2
	4	Read only Keyboard bit 3
	5	Read only Keyboard bit 4
	6	Read only Keyboard bit 5
	7	Read only Keyboard bit 6
		Read only Keyboard bit 7 MSB
0061 - Port B		
	0	Read/Write
	1	R/W Timer gate #2 enable
	2	R/W Speaker data out enable
	3	R/W not used
	4	R/W 1=disable internal speaker
	5	R/W not used
	6	R/W HOLDCK
	7	R/W 1=keyboard clear

Address Range Hex	Bit	Description
0062 - Port C		Read/Write
	0	R/W not used
	1	R/W not used
	2	R/W not used
	3	R/W 0=slow speed
	4	Read NOVDI
	5	Read output Timer #2
	6	Read 0=color
	7	Read 1=Parity check
0063-0064		Port not used
Planar Control		
0065		Planar Register Read/Write
	0	Reserved
	1	Reserved
	2	Reserved
	3	1=FDC chip select enable
	4	Reserved
	5	Reserved
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved
0066		Not Used
0067		Port D not used
Non Volatile Memory Access		
037C		Non-volatile memory write only
	0	NOVDO
	1	NOVCE
	2	NOVCLK
	3	Reserved
	4	Reserved
	5	Reserved
	6	Reserved
	7	Reserved

Floppy Disk Control

Address Range Hex	Bit	Description
-----	----	-----
03F0		Not used
03F1		FDC Mode Control
	0	Not used
	1	Write - Drive Select switch 0 = 0-0 1-1 1 = 0-1 1-0
	2	Not used
	3	Not used
	4	Not used
	5	Not used
	6	Not used
	7	Not used
03F2		FDC Digital Output Register (DOR)
		Write Only
		DS0 DS1 DS2
		--- --- ---
	0	Write - 0 1 0
	1	Write - 0 0 1
	2	Write - FDC reset
	3	Write - Enable DMA Req/Int.
	4	Write - Drive 0 Motor ON
	5	Write - Drive 1 Motor ON
	6	Not used
	7	Not used
03F3		Not used
03F4		FDC chip select
03F5		FDC chip select
03F6		Not used
03F7		FDC Data Rate Selection
	0	Not used
	1	Write - Data Rate 0 = 500K bits per second 1 = 250K bits per second
	2	Not used
	3	Not used
	4	Not used
	5	Not used
	6	Not used
	7	0=Disk Change

System Configuration Register

FFEB		Non IBM Compatible Read/Write
	0	Reserved
	1	Reserved
	2	Reserved
	3	Reserved
	4	Reserved
	5	Read 1=Keyboard Interrupt
	6	Read 1=Real Time Clock Interrupt Write 1=Enable Real Time clock Interrupt
	7	Read Keyboard Select 0=Tandy Keyboard 1=101 Enhanced Keyboard

Summary on the active/float data bits. (READ ONLY)

Address	Net Name	Active Bits	Float Bits
-----	-----	-----	-----
0065	CSEN	XD3	XD0-XD2, XD4-XD7
03F7	FDMDRDB	XD7	XD0-XD6
FFEB	CDENRDB	XD5 XD6 XD7	XD0-XD4

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Absolute Maximum Rating

Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit	Condition
Voltage, any pin	-0.5		7.0	V	W.R.T gnd
Power Dissipation					

D.C. Electrical Characteristics at Ta= 0 to 70 degree Celsius

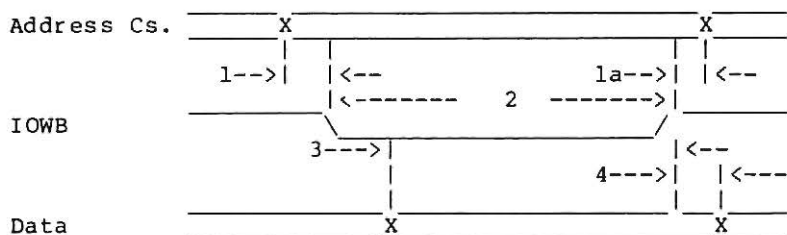
SYM.	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max.	Unit	Condition
Vdd	Supply Voltage	4.5		5.5	V	
Vil	Input Low Voltage			0.8	V	TTL input
Vih	Input High Voltage	2.0			V	TTL input
Iin	Input Leakage Current	-10		10	UA	
Cin	Input Capacitance			10	PF	
Vol	Output Low Voltage Unless otherwise specified in I/O Pin Descriptions			0.4	V	2MA
Voh	Output High Voltage Unless otherwise specified in I/O Pin Descriptions	2.4			V	-2MA
Ioz	High Impedance leak	-10		10	UA	
Voh(INTR)	Output High Voltage for INTR	3.5			V	@ -100ua
		2.4			V	@ -400ua
Zo	Output Capacitance XD0 - XD7	100			PF	Note A

Notes: A. 50 PF is used in manufacture test.

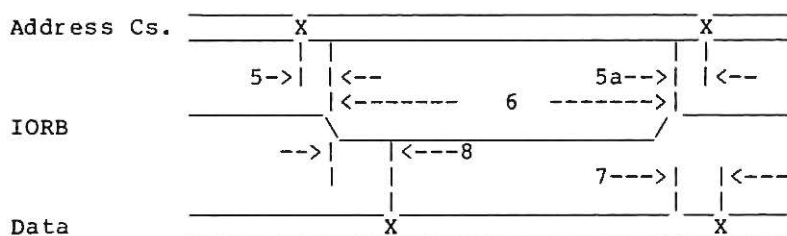
KEYBOARD TIMING SPECIFICATIONS

NUM.	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max	Unit	
1	Address valid to IOWB active	15			ns	
1a	Address hold from IOWB Inactive	20			ns	
2	IOWB pulse width	125			ns	
3	Data setup from IOWB Inactive	65			ns	Write
4	Data hold from IOWB Inactive	30			ns	Write
5	Address valid to IORB active	15			ns	
5a	Address hold from IORB inactive	30			ns	Read
6	IORB pulse width	120			ns	
7	Data hold/release from IORB inactive	5		55	ns	Read
8	Data access time			100	ns	Read

I/O Write Cycle



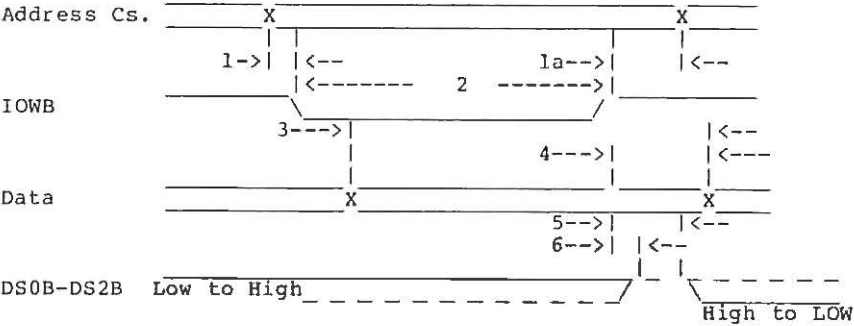
I/O Read Cycle



FLOPPY DISK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS:

NUM.	Parameter	Min.	Typ.	Max	Unit	
1	Address setup from IOWB active	15			ns	
1a	Address hold from IOWB Inactive	20			ns	
2	IOWB pulse width	125			ns	
3	Data setup from IOWB inactive	65			ns	
4	Data hold from IOWB inactive	30			ns	
5	DS0B-DS2B, FDCRST, MTRONB inactive delay from IOWB inactive			43	ns	
6	DS0B-DS2B, FDCRST, MTRONB active delay from IOWB inactive			41	ns	

I/O Write Cycle



PROGRAMMABLE INTERRUPT TIMING AND DESCRIPTIONS
Must meet Intel 8259A. Any differences must be specified.

PROGRAMMABLE TIMER TIMING AND DESCRIPTIONS
Must meet Intel 8254-5.

Any differences must be specified.

ADDRESS PORT EQUATIONS

```

/*****
/*
/*      KEYBOARD, TIMER CONTROL, INTERRUPT CONTROL, FDC-DOR
/*      AND DECODE LOGIC
/*
/*****
/* Allowable Target Device Types:      F153
/*
/*****

/** Inputs **/

PIN      1      =  sa01      ;      /* System address 1      */
PIN      2      =  sa00      ;      /* System address 0      */
PIN      3      =  sa02      ;      /* System address 2      */
PIN      4      =  !iow      ;      /* I/O Write             */
PIN      5      =  !ior      ;      /* I/O Read              */
PIN      6      =  !fdcport  ;      /* FDC Port 03F0-03F8 hex */
PIN      7      =  !keyport  ;      /* Keyboard Port 0060 - 0067 */

/** Outputs **/

PIN      9      =  !fdmrd   ;      /* Read FDC Port 03F7 hex  */
PIN     11      =  !fdmdwt  ;      /* Write FDC Port 03F7 hex  */
PIN     12      =  !fdcchp  ;      /* FDC Chip Select 03F4 - 03F5 */
PIN     13      =  !dorltch ;      /* Write DORLTCH Port 03F2  */
PIN     14      =  !drvsck  ;      /* Write Port 03F1 DriveSwitch */
PIN     15      =  !writdp  ;      /* Write Keyboard Port 0067 or D */
PIN     16      =  cp       ;      /* Port 0062 or C          */
PIN     17      =  bp       ;      /* Port 0061 or B          */
PIN     18      =  readap   ;      /* Read Port 0060          */
PIN     19      =  csen     ;      /* Chip Select Enable Port 0065 */

/** Logic Equations **/

fdmrd = fdcport & sa02 & sa01 & sa00 & ior;
fdmdwt = fdcport & sa02 & sa01 & sa00 & iow;
fdcchp = fdcport & sa02 & !sa01;
!dorltch = fdcport & iow & !sa02 & sa01 & !sa00;
!drvsck = fdcport & iow & !sa02 & !sa01 & sa00;
!readap = keyport & ior & !sa02 & !sa01 & !sa00;
bp = keyport & !sa02 & !sa01 & sa00;
cp = keyport & !sa02 & sa01 & !sa00;
csen = keyport & sa02 & !sa01 & sa00;

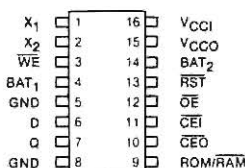
```



FEATURES

- TimeChip keeps track of hundredths of seconds, seconds, minutes, hours, days, date of the month, months, and years
- Adjusts for months with fewer than 31 days
- Leap year automatically corrected
- No address space required
- Provides nonvolatile controller functions for battery backing up RAM
- Supports redundant batteries for high-reliability applications
- Uses a 32.768 KHz watch crystal
- Full 10% operating range
- Operating temperature range 0°C to 70°C
- Space saving 16-pin DIP package

PIN CONNECTIONS



PIN NAMES

Pins 1 & 2 -	X ₁ , X ₂	- 32.768 KHz Crystal Connections
Pin 3 -	WE	- Write Enable
Pin 4 -	BAT ₁	- Battery 1 Input
Pins 5 & 8 -	GND	- Ground
Pin 6 -	D	- Data In
Pin 7 -	Q	- Data Out
Pin 9 -	ROM/ RAM	- ROM-RAM Select
Pin 10 -	CE ₀	- Chip Enable Out
Pin 11 -	CE _I	- Chip Enable Input
Pin 12 -	OE	- Output Enable
Pin 13 -	RST	- Reset
Pin 14 -	BAT ₂	- Battery 2 Input
Pin 15 -	VCC ₀	- +5V Output
Pin 16 -	VCC _I	- +5V DC Input

DESCRIPTION

The DS1215 is a combination of a CMOS timekeeper and a nonvolatile memory controller. In the absence of power, an external battery maintains the timekeeping operation and provides power for a CMOS static RAM. The watch provides hundredths of seconds, seconds, minutes, hours, day, date, month, and year information, while the nonvolatile controller supplies all the necessary support circuitry to convert a CMOS RAM to a nonvolatile memory. The DS1215 can be interfaced with either RAM or ROM without leaving gaps in memory.

The last date of the month is automatically adjusted for months with less than 31 days, including correction for leap year every four years. The watch operates in one of two formats: a 12-hour mode with an AM/PM indicator, or a 24-hour mode.

The nonvolatile memory controller portion of the circuit is designed to handle power fail detection, memory write protection, and battery redundancy. In short, the controller changes standard CMOS memories into nonvolatile memories, and provides continuous power to the TimeChip. Alternatively the TimeChip can be used with ROM memory by controlling the Chip Enable Output signal ($\overline{\text{CEO}}$) while the TimeChip is being accessed.

OPERATION

The block diagram of Figure 3 illustrates the main elements of the TimeChip. Communication with the TimeChip is established by pattern recognition of a serial bit stream of 64 bits which must be matched by executing 64 consecutive write cycles containing the proper data on Data In (D). All accesses which occur prior to recognition of the 64-bit pattern are directed to memory via the Chip Enable Output pin ($\overline{\text{CEO}}$).

After recognition is established, the next 64 read or write cycles either extract or update data in the TimeChip and Chip Enable Output remains high during this time, disabling the connected memory.

Data transfer to and from the timekeeping function is accomplished with a serial bit stream under control of chip enable ($\overline{\text{CEI}}$), output enable ($\overline{\text{OE}}$), and write enable ($\overline{\text{WE}}$). Initially, a read cycle using the $\overline{\text{CEI}}$ and $\overline{\text{OE}}$ control of the TimeChip starts the pattern recognition sequence by moving a pointer to the first bit of the 64-bit comparison register. Next, 64 consecutive write cycles are executed using the $\overline{\text{CEI}}$ and $\overline{\text{WE}}$ control of the TimeChip. These 64 write cycles are used only to gain access to the TimeChip.

When the first write cycle is executed, it is compared to bit 1 of the 64-bit comparison register. If a match is found, the pointer increments to the next location of the comparison register and awaits the next write cycle. If a match is *not* found, the pointer does not advance and all subsequent write cycles are ignored. If a read cycle occurs at any time during pattern recognition, the present sequence is aborted and the comparison register pointer is reset. Pattern recognition continues for a total of 64 write cycles as described above until all the bits in the comparison register have been matched. (This bit pattern is shown in Figure 1). With a correct match for 64 bits, the TimeChip is enabled and data transfer to or from the timekeeping registers may proceed. The next 64 cycles will cause the TimeChip to either receive data on D, or transmit data on Q, depending on the level of $\overline{\text{OE}}$ pin or the $\overline{\text{WE}}$ pin. Cycles to other locations outside the memory block can be interleaved with $\overline{\text{CEI}}$ cycles without interrupting the pattern recognition sequence or data transfer sequence to the TimeChip.

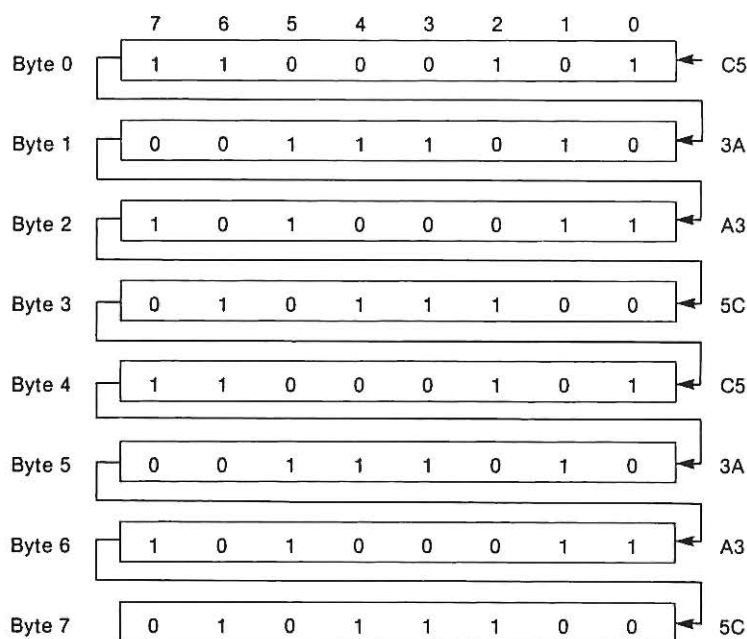
A 32,786 Hz quartz crystal, Seiko part no. DS-VT-200 or equivalent, can be directly connected to the DS1215 via pins 1 and 2 (X_1 , X_2). The crystal selected for use should have a specified load capacitance (C_L) of 6 pF.

NONVOLATILE CONTROLLER OPERATION

The operation of the nonvolatile controller circuits within the TimeChip is determined by the level of the ROM/RAM select pin. When ROM/RAM is connected to ground, the controller is set in the RAM mode and performs the circuit functions required to make static CMOS RAM and the timekeeping function nonvolatile. First a switch is provided to direct power from the battery inputs or V_{CCI} to V_{CCO} with a maximum voltage drop of 0.2 volts. The V_{CCO} output pin is used to supply uninterrupted power to CMOS static RAM. The DS1215 also performs redundant battery control for high reliability. On power fail the battery with the highest voltage is automatically switched to V_{CCO} . If only one battery is used in the system, the unused battery input should be connected to ground. The DS1215 provides the function of safeguarding the TimeChip and RAM data by power fail detection and write protection. Power fail detection occurs when V_{CCI} falls below VTP which is equal to $1.26 \times V_{BAT}$. The DS1215 constantly monitors the V_{CCI} supply pin. When V_{CCI} is less than VTP, a comparator outputs a power fail signal to the control logic. The power fail signal forces the chip enable output (\overline{CEO}) to V_{CCI} or $V_{BAT} - 0.2$ volts for external RAM write protection. During nominal supply conditions, \overline{CEO} will track \overline{CEI} with a maximum propagation delay of 20 ns. Internally, the DS1215 aborts any data transfer in progress without changing any of the TimeChip registers and prevents future access until V_{CCI} exceeds VTP. A typical RAM/TimeChip interface is illustrated in Figure 4.

When the ROM/ \overline{RAM} pin is connected to V_{CCO} , the controller is set in the ROM mode. Since ROM is a read-only device which retains data in the absence of power, battery backup and write protection is not required. As a result, the chip enable logic will not force \overline{CEO} high when power fails. However, the TimeChip does retain the same internal nonvolatility and write protection as described in the RAM mode. In addition, the chip enable output is set at a low level on power fail as V_{CCI} falls below the level of V_{BAT} . A typical ROM/TimeChip interface is illustrated in Figure 5.

TIMECHIP COMPARISON REGISTER DEFINITION Figure 1



Note:

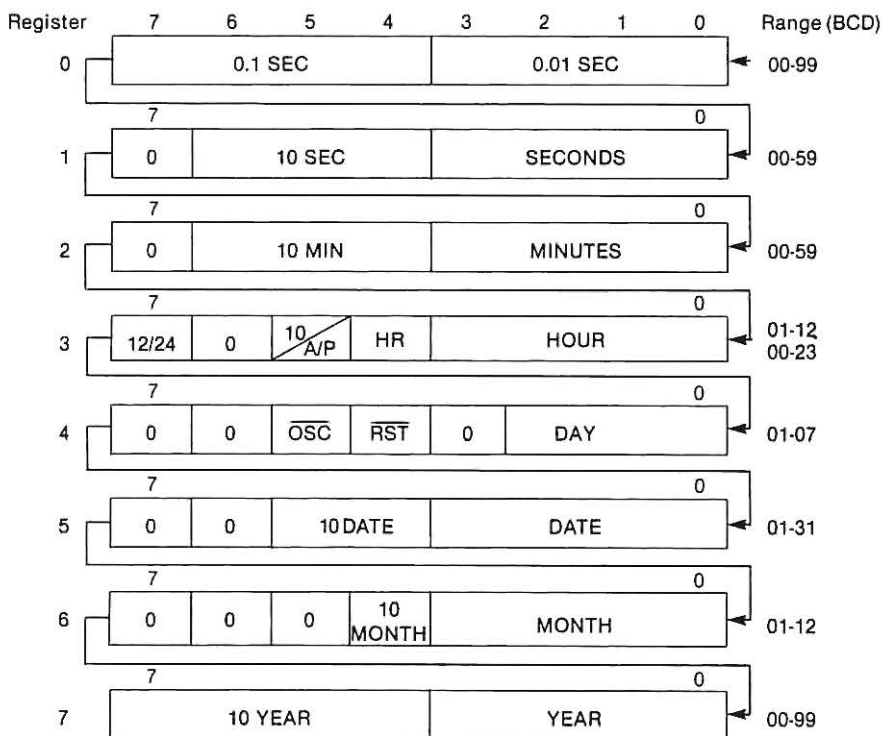
The pattern recognition in Hex is C5, 3A, A3, 5C, C5, 3A, A3, 5C. The odds of this pattern being accidentally duplicated and causing inadvertent entry to the TimeChip is less than 1 in 10^{19} .

TIMECHIP REGISTER INFORMATION

The TimeChip information is contained in 8 registers of 8 bits each which are sequentially accessed one bit at a time after the 64-bit pattern recognition sequence has been completed. When updating the TimeChip registers, each must be handled in groups of 8 bits. Writing and reading individual bits within a register could produce erroneous results. These read/write registers are defined in Figure 2.

Data contained in the TimeChip registers are not binary coded decimal format (BCD) in 12-hour mode. Reading and writing the registers is always accomplished by stepping through all 8 registers, starting with bit 0 of register 0 and ending with bit 7 of register 7.

TIMECHIP REGISTER DEFINITION Figure 2



AM-PM/12/24 MODE

Bit 7 of the hours register is defined as the 12- or 24-hour mode select bit. When high, the 12-hour mode is selected. In the 12-hour mode, bit 5 is the AM/PM bit with logic high being PM. In the 24-hour mode, bit 5 is the second 10-hour bit (20-23 hours).

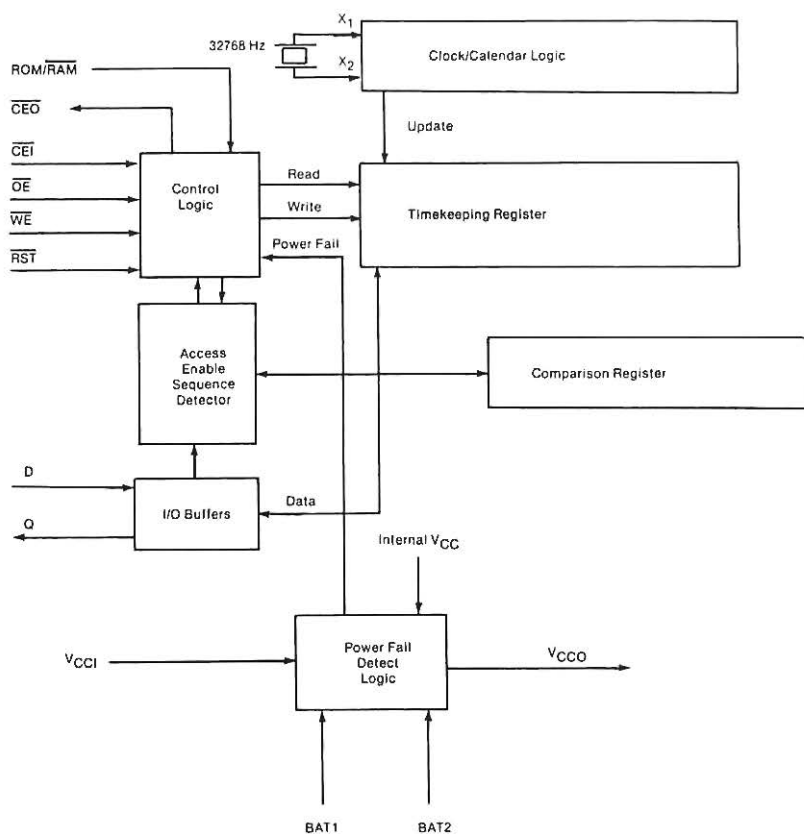
OSCILLATOR AND RESET BITS

Bits 4 and 5 of the day register are used to control the reset and oscillator functions. Bit 4 controls the reset pin (Pin 13). When the reset bit is set to logical 1, the reset input pin is ignored. When the reset bit is set to logical 0, a low input on the reset pin will cause the Time-Chip to abort data transfer without changing data in the timekeeping registers. Reset operates independently of all other inputs. Bit 5 controls the oscillator. When set to Logic 0 the oscillator turns on and the watch becomes operational.

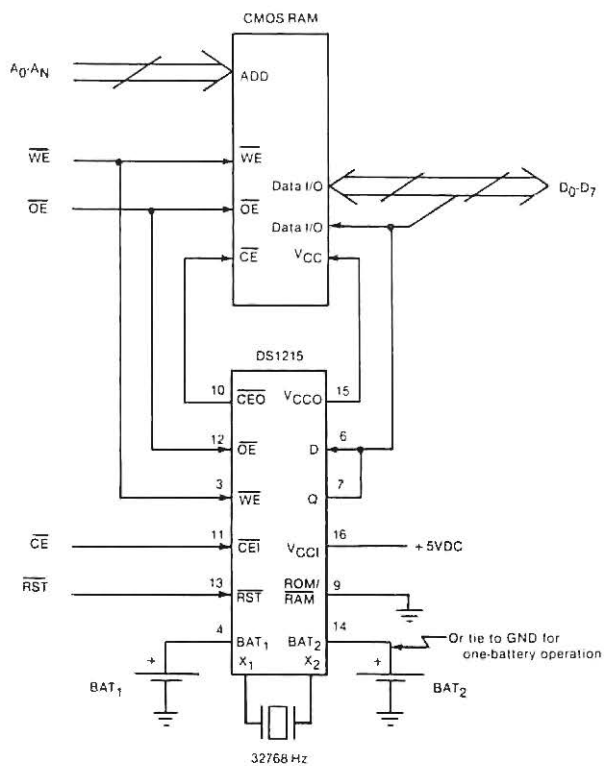
ZERO BITS

Registers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 contain one or more bits which will always read logical 0. When writing these locations, either a logical 1 or 0 is acceptable.

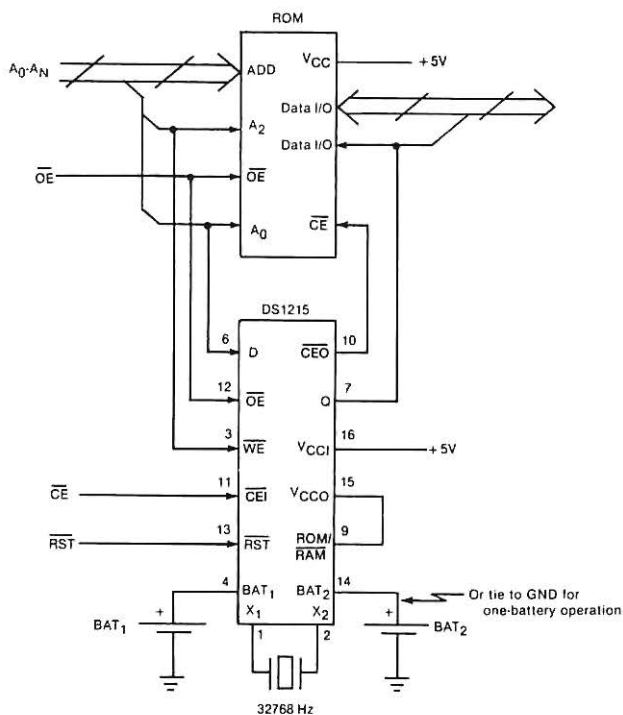
TIMECHIP BLOCK DIAGRAM Figure 3



RAM/TIMECHIP INTERFACE Figure 4



ROM/TIMECHIP INTERFACE Figure 5



ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Voltage on any Pin Relative to Ground -1.0V to +7.0V

Operating Temperature 0°C to 70°C

Storage Temperature -55°C to 125°C

Soldering Temperature 260°C for 10 Sec

*This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods of time may affect reliability.

RECOMMENDED D.C. OPERATING CONDITIONS

(0°C to 70°C)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Supply Voltage	V _{CC}	4.5	5.0	5.5	V	1
Logic 1	V _{IH}	2.2		V _{CC} + 0.3	V	1
Logic 0	V _{IL}	-0.3		+0.8	V	1
V _{BAT1} or V _{BAT2} Battery Voltage	V _{BAT}	2.5		3.7	V	7

D.C. ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS(0°C to 70°C, V_{CC} = 4.5 to 5.5V)

Supply Current	I _{CC1}			5	mA	6
Supply Current V _{CC0} = V _{CC1} - 0.2	I _{CC01}			80	mA	8
Input Leakage	I _{IL}	-1.0		+1.0	μA	
Output Leakage	I _{LO}	-1.0		+1.0	μA	
Output @2.4V	I _{OH}	-1.0			mA	2
Output @0.4V	I _{OL}			4.0	mA	2

(0°C to 70°C, V_{CC} = 4.5V)

CE0 Output	V _{OH1}	V _{CC1} or V _{BAT} - 0.2			V	9
V _{BAT1} or V _{BAT2} Battery Current	I _{BAT}			1	μA	6
Battery Backup Current @ V _{CC0} = V _{BAT} - 0.2V	I _{CC02}			10	μA	10

CAPACITANCE ($t_A = 25^\circ\text{C}$)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	UNITS	NOTES
Input Capacitance	C_{IN}	5	pF	
Output Capacitance	C_{OUT}	7	pF	

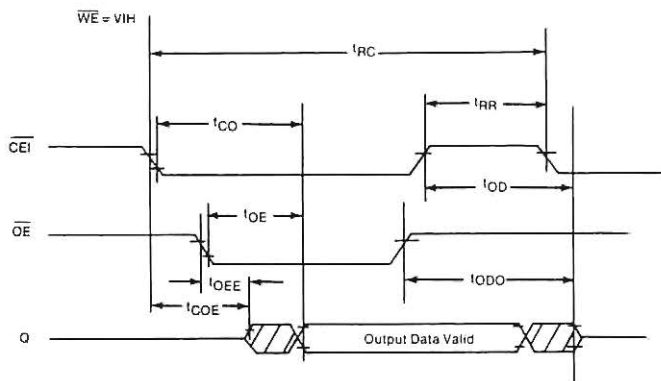
A.C. ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS ROM/RAM = GND (0°C to 70°C , $V_{CC} = 4.5$ to 5.5V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Read Cycle Time	t_{RC}	250			ns	
\overline{CEI} Access Time	t_{CO}			200	ns	
\overline{OE} Access Time	t_{OE}			100	ns	
\overline{CEI} To Output Low Z	t_{COE}	10			ns	
\overline{OE} To Output Low Z	t_{OEE}	10			ns	
\overline{CEI} To Output High Z	t_{OD}			100	ns	
\overline{OE} To Output High Z	t_{ODO}			100	ns	
Read Recovery	t_{RR}	50			ns	
Write Cycle	t_{WC}	250			ns	
Write Pulse Width	t_{WP}	170			ns	
Write Recovery	t_{WR}	50			ns	4
Data Set Up	t_{DS}	100			ns	5
Data Hold Time	t_{DH}	10			ns	5
\overline{CEI} Pulse Width	t_{CW}	170			ns	
\overline{RST} Pulse Width	t_{RST}	200			ns	
\overline{CEI} Propagation Delay	t_{PD}	5	10	20	ns	2, 3
\overline{CEI} High to Power Fail	t_{PF}			0	ns	

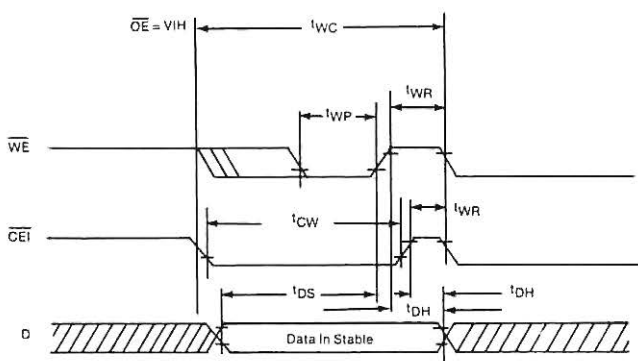
(0°C to 70°C, $V_{CC} < 4.5\text{V}$)

Recovery at Power Up	t_{REC}			2	ms	
V_{CC} Slew Rate 4.5 - 3.0V	t_F	0			ms	

TIMING DIAGRAM—READ CYCLE TO TIMECHIP ROM/ $\overline{\text{RAM}}$ = GND



TIMING DIAGRAM—WRITE CYCLE TO TIMECHIP ROM/ $\overline{\text{RAM}}$ = GND



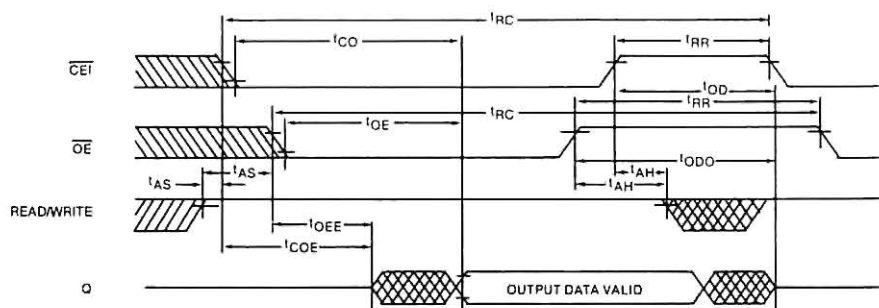
A.C. ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS ROM/RAM = V_{CC0} (0 °C to 70 °C, $V_{CC} = 5V \pm 10\%$)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Read Cycle Time	t_{RC}	250			ns	
\overline{CEI} Access Time	t_{CO}			200	ns	
\overline{OE} Access Time	t_{OE}			200	ns	
\overline{CEI} to Output in Low Z	t_{COE}	10			ns	
\overline{OE} to Output in Low Z	t_{OEE}	10			ns	
\overline{CEI} to Output in High Z	t_{OD}			100	ns	
\overline{OE} to Output in High Z	t_{ODO}			100	ns	
Address Set Up Time	t_{AS}	20			ns	
Address Hold Time	t_{AH}			10	ns	
Read Recovery	t_{RR}	50			ns	
Write Cycle Time	t_{WC}	250			ns	
\overline{CEI} Pulse Width	t_{CW}	170			ns	
\overline{OE} Pulse Width	t_{OW}	170			ns	
Write Recovery	t_{WR}	50			ns	4
Data Set Up Time	t_{DS}	100			ns	5
Data Hold Time	t_{DH}	10			ns	5
\overline{RST} Pulse Width	t_{RST}	200			ns	
\overline{CEI} Propagation Delay	t_{PD}	5	10	20	ns	2,3
\overline{CEI} High to Power Fail	t_{PF}			0	ns	

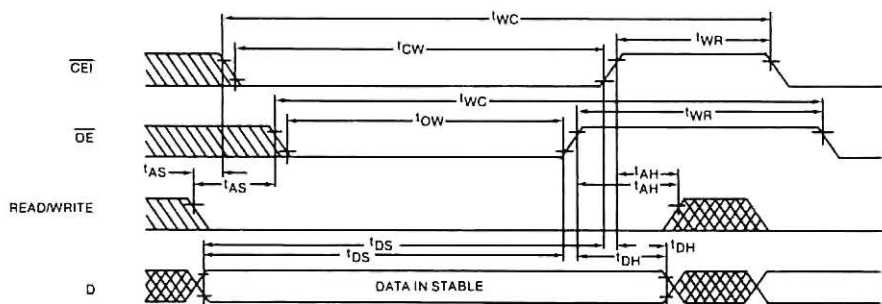
(0 °C to 70 °C, $V_{CC} < 4.5V$)

Recovery at Power Up	t_{REC}			2	ms	
V_{CC} Slew Rate 4.5 -3V	t_F	0			ms	

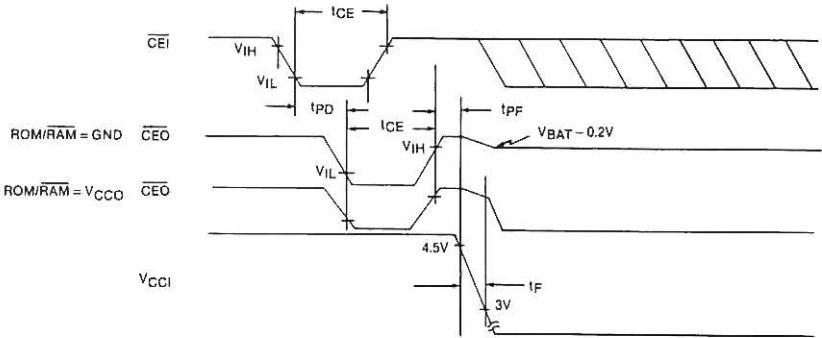
TIMING DIAGRAM—READ CYCLE ROM/ $\overline{\text{RAM}} = V_{\text{CCO}}$



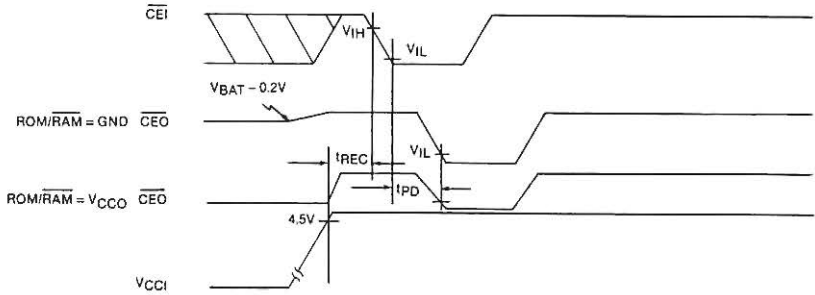
TIMING DIAGRAM—WRITE CYCLE ROM/ $\overline{\text{RAM}} = V_{\text{CCO}}$



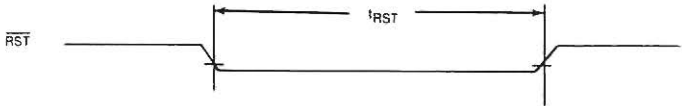
TIMING DIAGRAM—POWER DOWN



TIMING DIAGRAM—POWER UP



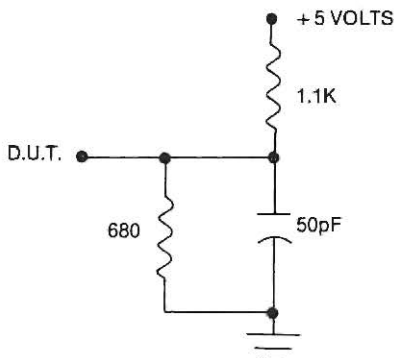
TIMING DIAGRAM—RESET FOR TIMECHIP



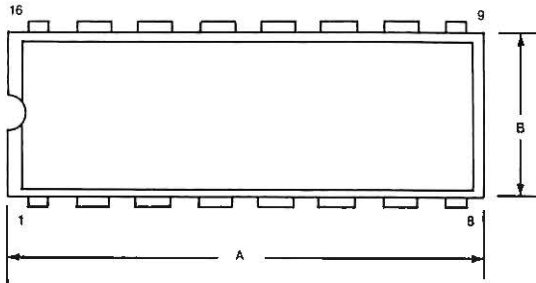
NOTES

1. All voltages are referenced to ground.
2. Measured with load shown in Figure 6.
3. Input pulse rise and fall times equal 10 ns.
4. t_{WR} is a function of the latter occurring edge of \overline{WE} or \overline{CE} in RAM mode or \overline{OE} or \overline{CE} in ROM mode.
5. t_{DH} and t_{DS} are functions of the first occurring edge of \overline{WE} or \overline{CE} in RAM mode or \overline{OE} or \overline{CE} in ROM mode.
6. Measured without RAM connected.
7. Trip point voltage for power fail detect.
 $V_{TP} = 1.26 \times V_{BAT}$ For 10% operation $V_{BAT} = 3.5V$ max.; for 5% operation $V_{BAT} = 3.7V$ max.
8. I_{CCO1} is the maximum average load current the DS1215 can supply to memory.
9. Applies to \overline{CEO} with the ROM/RAM pin grounded. When the ROM/RAM pin is connected to V_{CCO} , \overline{CEO} will go to a low level as V_{CCI} falls below V_{BAT} .
10. I_{CCO2} is the maximum average load current which the DS1215 can supply to memory in the battery backup mode.
11. Applies to all input pins except \overline{RST} . \overline{RST} is pulled internally to V_{CCI} .

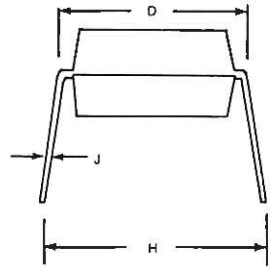
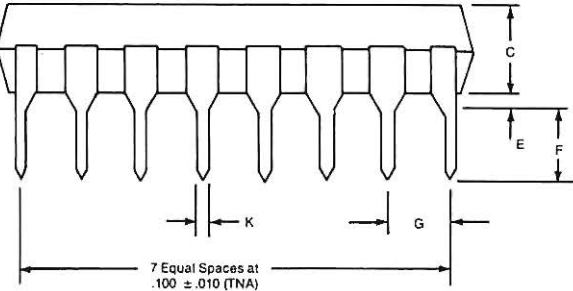
OUTPUT LOAD Figure 6



DS1215
TimeChip



DIM.	INCHES	
	MIN.	MAX.
A	.740	.780
B	.240	.260
C	.120	.140
D	.290	.310
E	.020	.030
F	.110	.130
G	.090	.110
H	.300	.350
J	.008	.012
K	.015	.021



DRAM/DMA CONTROL CHIP

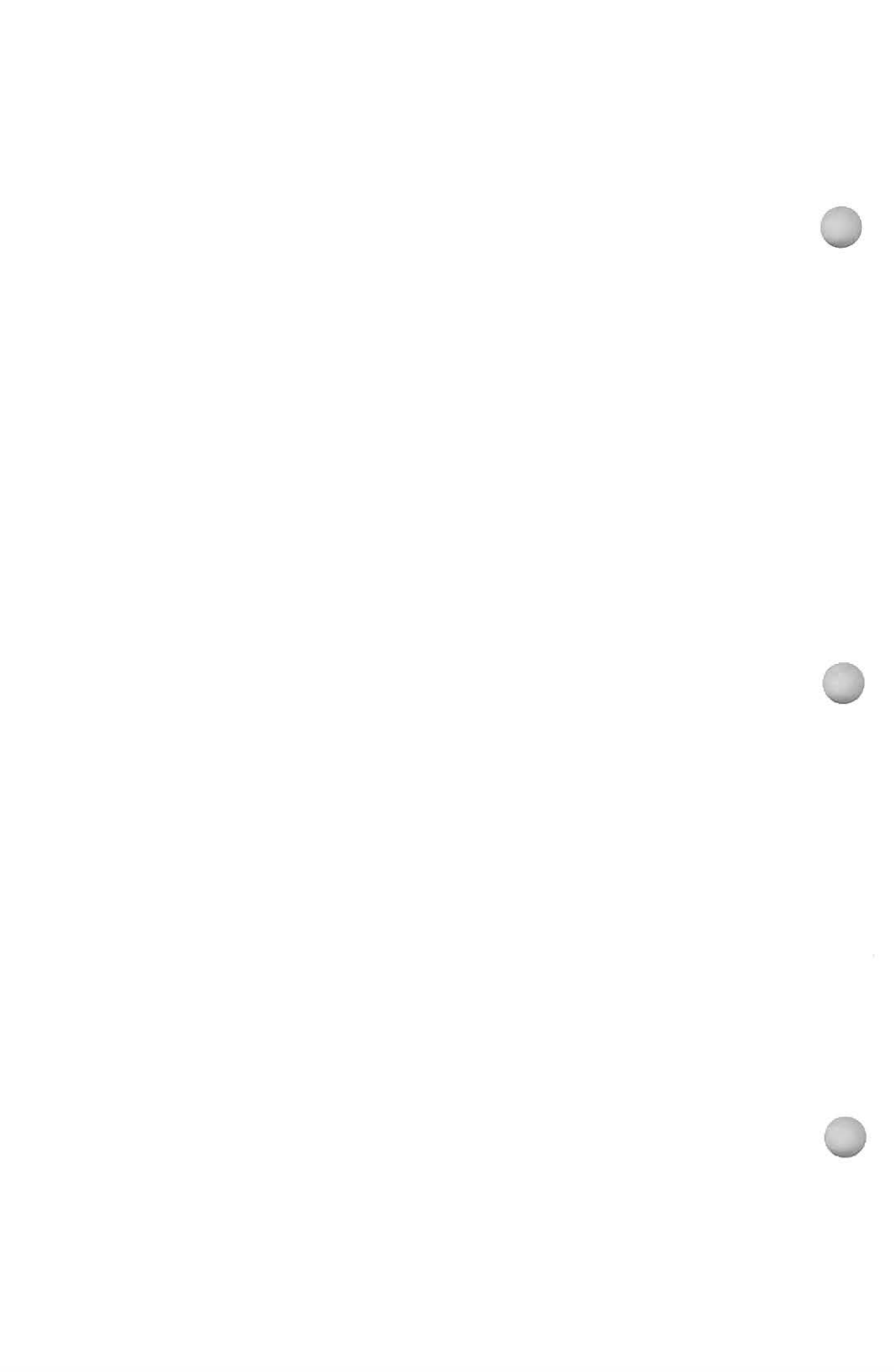


TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Functional Descriptions
2. Memory Configuration
3. DMA Control Signal Equation
4. Block Diagram
5. Pin Configuration
6. Pin Number Assignment
7. Timing Specification
8. Timing Diagram
9. Electrical Specification



Tandy 1000TL DRAM/DMA Control IC consists of the following functional blocks:

- ROM/DRAM Decode Latch and Control signals
- Page Registers
- Memory Address Multiplexer

ROM/DRAM Decode Latch and Control signal

The ROM/DRAM Decode Latch block contains the circuitry to decode the CPU's Address bus A17 - A23 and to provide the necessary latched signals for controlling ROMs and DRAMS. CPU's Address A17 - A23 together with MC0 - MC2 determine which segment (bank) of memory is being selected based on one of six possible memory configurations. (see memory map figure 1.). The memory configurations ranging from 256 kilo bytes to 1.5 mega bytes.

Additional support for memory refresh is also provided in this block. During a Refresh Cycle, the assertion of REFRESH# will cause the circuitry to ignore the current address inputs and activate RAS0#, RAS1#, RAS2#, RAS3# and LMEGCS# outputs. Also MEMCYC and PRCLK signals are used for controlling the start of a memory access and timing for all RASx#s, MA0 - MA8 and CASx#s signals. (see Timing Diagram figure 2.).

ROMCS# is decoded from A17 - A23 and latched by ALE when HLDA is active. The ROM address ranges from 0E0000h to 0FFFFFFh for the low address, EE0000h to EFFFFFFh and FE0000h to FFFFFFFh for high address. This output signal is asserted when any one of the three address ranges is detected and REFRESH# is inactive.

The two outputs LMEGCS# and MDBEN# are intended to be used as memory buffer enable signal. LMEGCS# is active whenever any memory access is made to an address below 010000h or when REFRESH# is active. MDBEN# is memory data bus buffer and becomes active whenever CASx#s or ROMCS# is active.

The ROM/DRAM Decode's internal latch is controlled by two input signals - HLDA and ALE. During a CPU Memory Cycle, ALE will enable the RAM Decode latch and allow the input from decoder to be transferred to the output pins. When ALE goes inactive, the decoder outputs is latched for the remainder of the cycle. Asserting HLDA will enable the decoder outputs to the output pins and force ROMCS# inactive. This block has one output signal that is unlatched. This output, AF16#, is intended to be used by external circuitry as an indication that a 16-bit memory transfer is taking place.

Page Register

At the time the 82C37A-5 - DMA Controller takes control of the address bus, the first operation comes in two bytes. The first byte is a lower address bus (SA0 through SA7) that is put directly on the S address bus by DMA controller. The second byte is a upper address (SA8 through SA15) that is on its data outputs, to be latched in the 74ALS373 internally by Address Strobe (AS) signal from DMA Controller.

Two 4 by 4 registers are used to perform Page Register function. During DMA Bus Cycle, the read function is controlled by the DMA Request Acknowledge signals - DACK2# and DACK3# in conjunction with HLDA# enables the Page Register to be output as the upper address (SA16 and A17 through A23). The write function is controlled by SA0 to SA3 in conjunction with PGREGWR# to latch data bits - XD0 to XD7 into Page Register.

Address Multiplexer

The Memory Address Multiplexer is used to provide the Row Address or Column Address and refresh counter that is required by Dynamic Rams. Additionally, it provides the drive and buffering capability for memory address bus MA0 to MA8. MA7 is generated from SA0 or SA8 which is multiplexed by REFRESH# signal. The addresses for the memory are multiplexed as shown below.

Equation For Multiplexed Memory Addresses

	Row Address (First)	Column Address (Second)
MA0 -----	SA1	SA9
MA1 -----	SA2	SA10
MA2 -----	SA3	SA11
MA3 -----	SA4	SA12
MA4 -----	SA5	SA13
MA5 -----	SA6	SA14
MA6 -----	SA7	SA15
MA7 -----	SA8/SA0	SA16
MA8 -----	SA17	SA18

2. MEMORY CONFIGURATION

OPTION	MC2	MC1	MC0	BANK0	BANK1	BANK2	CONTROL	ADDRESS RANGE
1	0	0	0		128K		Ras1 Ras2	(000000-01FFFF) (020000-03FFFF)
2	0	0	1	512K			Ras0	(000000-07FFFF)
3	0	1	1	512K	128K		Ras0 Ras1	(000000-07FFFF) (080000-09FFFF)
4	0	1	0	512K	128K		Ras0 Ras1	(000000-07FFFF) (08FFFF-09FFFF)
						128K	Ras2	(100000-17FFFF)
5	1	1	1	512K	128K		Ras0 Ras1	(000000-07FFFF) (080000-09FFFF)
						512K	Ras2	(100000-17FFFF)
6	1	1	0	512K	128K		Ras0 Ras1	(000000-07FFFF) (080000-09FFFF)
						512K	Ras2	(100000-17FFFF)
						512K	Ras3	(180000-1FFFFF)
7	1	0	1	NOT DEFINED				
8	1	0	0	NOT DEFINED				

FIGURE 1. MEMORY CONFIGURATION.

3. DMA Control Logic Equations

```
/Bras0 = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & /mc2 & mc0  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & mc1  
+ refresh;  
  
/Bras1 = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & /la18 & /la17 & /mc0  
& /mc1 & /mc2  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & la19 & /la18 & /la17 & mc1  
+ refresh;  
  
/Bras2 = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & /la18 & la17 & /mc0  
& /mc1 & /mc2  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & la20 & /la19 & /la18 & /la17 & /mc0 & mc1  
& /mc2  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & la20 & /la19 & mc1 & mc2  
+ refresh;  
  
/Bras3 = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & la20 & la19 & /mc0 & mc1 & mc2  
+ refresh;  
  
/Bcas = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & /la18 & /mc2 & /mc1  
& /mc0 & /refresh  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & /mc2 & mc0 & /refresh  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & /la19 & mc1 & /refresh  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & la19 & /la18 & /la17 & mc1  
& /refresh  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & la20 & /la19 & /la18 & /la17 & /mc2 & mc1  
& /mc0 & /refresh  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & la20 & /la19 & mc2 & mc1 & /refresh  
+ /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & la20 & mc2 & mc1 & /mc0 & /refresh;  
  
/Blmeg = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 + refresh;  
  
/Bromcs = /la23 & /la22 & /la21 & /la20 & la19 & la18 & la17 & /refresh  
+ la23 & la22 & la21 & la20 & la19 & la18 & la17 & /refresh  
+ la23 & la22 & la21 & /la20 & la19 & la18 & la17 & /refresh;
```


5. PIN CONFIGURATION

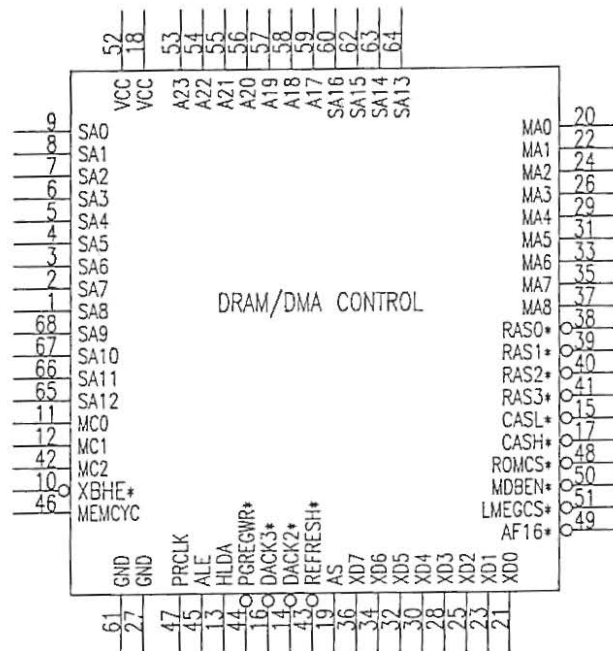


FIGURE 3. PIN CONFIGURATION

SUBTITLE	FIG NO	REV
PIN CONFIGURATION	242	3

6. INPUT/OUTPUT PINS FUNCTION AND DESCRIPTION

PIN#	PIN NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
9	SA0	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
8	SA1	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
7	SA2	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
6	SA3	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
5	SA4	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
4	SA5	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
3	SA6	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
2	SA7	INPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
1	SA8	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
68	SA9	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
67	SA10	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
66	SA11	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
65	SA12	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
64	SA13	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
63	SA14	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
62	SA15	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
60	SA16	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
59	A17	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
58	A18	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
57	A19	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
56	A20	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
55	A21	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
54	A22	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
53	A23	INPUT/OUTPUT	CPU ADDRESS LINE
45	ALE	INPUT	ADDRESS LATCH ENABLE Active HIGH - to latch generated RAS/CAS/LMEG.
43	REFRESH#	INPUT	REFRESH - Active LOW to initiate a refresh cycle for dynamic RAMs.
14	DACK2#	INPUT	8237 Channel 2 DMA ACKNOWLEDGE
16	DACK3#	INPUT	8237 Channel 3 DMA ACKNOWLEDGE
13	HLDA	INPUT	HOLD ACKNOWLEDGE Active HIGH - it indicates that the DMA has the system bus.
44	PGREGWR#	INPUT	PAGE REGISTER WRITE- active LOW to perform I/O WRITE cycle to the DMA Page Register.
46	MEMCYC	INPUT	MEMORY CYCLE - Active HIGH to initiate RAS/CAS/MA0-MA8 outputs.
19	AS	INPUT	ADDRESS STROBE - Active HIGH it latches the address lines SA8-SA15 D0-D7 into external latch for DMA cycle

PIN#	PIN NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
10	XBHE#	INPUT	BYTE HIGH ENABLE To enable the high memory data bytes D8-D15
47	PRCLK	INPUT	16MHZ CLOCK.
11	MC0	INPUT	MEMORY CONFIGURATION SELECT LSB.
12	MC1	INPUT	MEMORY CONFIGURATION SELECT.
42	MC2	INPUT	MEMORY CONFIG. SELECT MSB.
20	MA0	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
22	MA1	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
24	MA2	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
26	MA3	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
29	MA4	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
31	MA5	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
33	MA6	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
35	MA7	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
37	MA8	OUTPUT	MULTIPLEXED MEMORY ADDRESS - addressing required for DRAM memory.
17	CASH#	OUTPUT	COLUMN ADDRESS STROBE HIGH - Active LOW, it's used to select the high data byte MD8-MD15 for a DRAM access cycle.

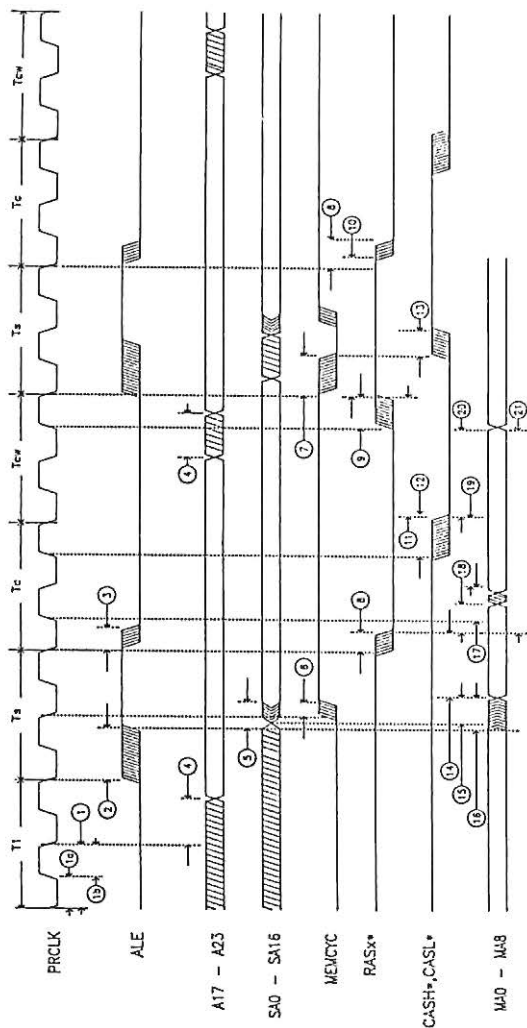
PIN#	PIN NAME	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
15	CASL*	OUTPUT	COLUMN ADDRESS STROBE LOW - Active LOW, it's used to select low data byte MD0-MD7 for a DRAM access cycle.
38	RAS0*	OUTPUT	ROW ADDRESS STROBE 0 - Active LOW, it's used for selecting DRAM Bank0.
39	RAS1*	OUTPUT	ROW ADDRESS STROBE 1 - Active LOW, it's used for selecting DRAM Bank1.
40	RAS2*	OUTPUT	ROW ADDRESS STROBE 2 - Active LOW, it's used for selecting DRAM Bank2.
41	RAS3*	OUTPUT	ROW ADDRESS STROBE 3 - Active LOW, it's used for selecting DRAM Bank2.
51	LMEGCS*	OUTPUT	LOWER MEGABYTE CHIP SELECT - Active LOW, it indicates that bellow 1 megabyte
50	MDBEN*	OUTPUT	MEMORY DATA BUS ENABLE Active LOW it is used to enable the data bus buffer.
49	AF16*	OUTPUT	AF16 Active LOW - it signals the control logic (CPU CNTL) that the memory cycle is a 16 bit 1 wait state cycle.
48	ROMCS*	OUTPUT	ROM CHIP SELECT Active LOW
21	XD0	INPUT	DATA BUS 0 for the peripheral bus.
23	XD1	INPUT	DATA BUS 1 for the peripheral bus.
25	XD2	INPUT	DATA BUS 2 for the peripheral bus.
28	XD3	INPUT	DATA BUS 3 for the peripheral bus.
30	XD4	INPUT	DATA BUS 4 for the peripheral bus.
32	XD5	INPUT	DATA BUS 5 for the peripheral bus.
34	XD6	INPUT	DATA BUS 6 for the peripheral bus.
36	XD7	INPUT	DATA BUS 7 for the peripheral bus.
18,52	VCC		+5V POWER SUPPLY
27,61	GND		GROUND

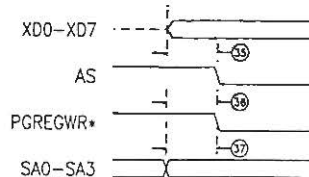
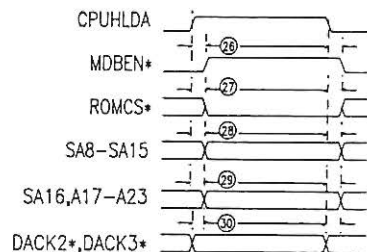
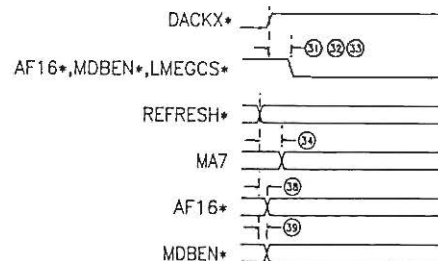
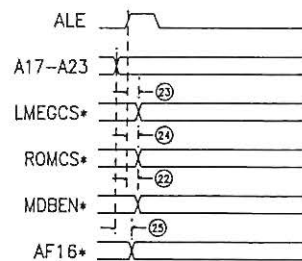
7. TIMING SPECIFICATIONS

SYM	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNITS	REMARKS
T1	PRCLK Period	60.5	250	nsec	
T1a	PRCLK Low Time	25	125	nsec	
T1b	PRCLK High time	25	125	nsec	
T2	ALE Active Delay	6	53	nsec	
T3	ALE Inactive Delay	5	25	nsec	
T4	Address Delay	1	60	nsec	
T5	Latched Address From ALE Active	-	23	nsec	
T6	MEMCYC Active Delay From ↓ PRCLK	5	25	nsec	
T7	MEMCYC Inactive Delay From ↓ PRCLK	5	35	nsec	
T8	RASx* Active Delay From ↓ PRCLK	5	45	nsec	at 100pf
T9	RASx* Inactive Delay From ↑ PRCLK	5	30	nsec	
T10	RASx* Precharge Time	110		nsec	
T11	RASx* Hold Time	30		nsec	
T12	CASx* Active Delay Time From ↑ PRCLK	5	40	nsec	at 165pf
T13	CASx* Inactive Delay Time From ↓ MEMCYC	5	30	nsec	
T14	Row Address Setup Time	5		nsec	
T15	Memory Address Delay Time From SA1 to SA16	0	50	nsec	at 200pf
T16	Memory Address Delay From ALE	8	50	nsec	
T17	Memory Address Stable Delay From ↑ PRCLK		50	nsec	at 200pf
T18	Row Address Hold Time	20		nsec	
T19	Column Address Setup Time	5		nsec	
T20	Column Address Hold Time	30		nsec	
T21	Column Address Hold Time Referenced To RASx*	120		nsec	
T22	ALE ↑ to MDBEN ↑↓ A/I		50	nsec	
T23	ALE ↑ to LMEGCS* ↓↑ A/I		50	nsec	
T24	ALE ↑ to ROMCS* ↓↑ A/I		50	nsec	CPUHLDA HIGH

SYM	PARAMETER	MIN	MAX	UNITS	REMARKS
T25	A17-A23 ↑↓ to AF16# ↓↑ A/I		50	nsec	
T26	CPUHLDA↑↓ to MDBEN ↑↑		50	nsec	
T27	CPUHLDA↑↓ to ROMCS# ↓↑ A/I		50	nsec	
T28	CPUHLDA↑↓ to SA6-SA15 ↓↑		50	nsec	
T29	CPUHLDA↑↓ to SA16, A17-A23 ↑↓		50	nsec	
T30	DACK2#, DACK3# ↑↓ to SA16, ↑↓ A17-A23		50	nsec	
T31 }					
T32 }	DACKx# to AF16#, MDBEN#				
T33 }	LMEGCS#		80	nsec	
T34	REFRESH# ↑↓ to MA7↑↓ A/I		50	nsec	at 200pf
T35	XD0-XD7 Setup to AS ↓	100		nsec	
T36	XD0-XD7 Setup to PGREGWR#	100		nsec	
T37	SA0-SA3 Setup to PGREGWR#	100		nsec	
T38	REFRESH# ↓↑ to AF16#		50	nsec	
T39	REFRESH# ↓↑ to MDBEN#		50	nsec	

8. Timing Diagram.





9. ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ABSOLUTE MAX RATINGS (NON-OPERATING, VSS=0.0V)

	MIN	MAX	UNITS
STORAGE TEMPERATURE	-65	+150	Degrees C.
VOLTAGE ON ANY PIN W.R.T GROUND	-0.5	7.0	Volts

OPERATING ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS:

OPERATING AMBIENT	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
AIR TEMP. RANGE	0	25	70	Degrees C
POWER SUPPLIES				
VCC	4.5	5.0	5.5	Volts
VSS	0	0	0	Volts
	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
LEAKAGE CURRENT				
Vin = 0.0 v		20		Microamps
Vin = 5.0 v	-20			Microamps

INPUT VOLTAGES

LOGIC "0" (Vil)		0.8	volts
LOGIC "1" (Vih)	2.0		volts

OUTPUT VOLTAGES CURRENT LOADING

LOGIC "0" (vol)		0.4	volts
-----------------	--	-----	-------

MA[0]-MA[8] @ 8ma(min)
 SXA8-SXA16,A17-A23 @ 4ma(min)
 RASx* @ 4ma(min)
 CASX* @ 8 ma(min)
 Others must be able
 to SINK minimum @ 2ma

LOGIC "1" (Voh)	2.4		volts
-----------------	-----	--	-------

MA[0]-MA[8],
 SXA8-SXA16,A17-A23 @ 8ma
 CASx*,RASx* @ 4ma
 CASX* @ 8 ma
 Others must be able
 to DRIVE minimum @ 2ma

INPUT CAPACITANCE

All inputs $0.0 < V_{in} < 5.0$	10	picofarads
---------------------------------	----	------------

OUTPUT CAPACITANCE

MA[03]-MA[83]	200	picofarads
CAS	165	picofarads
RAS	100	picofarads
SA8-SA16	150	picofarads
All other outputs	50	picofarads

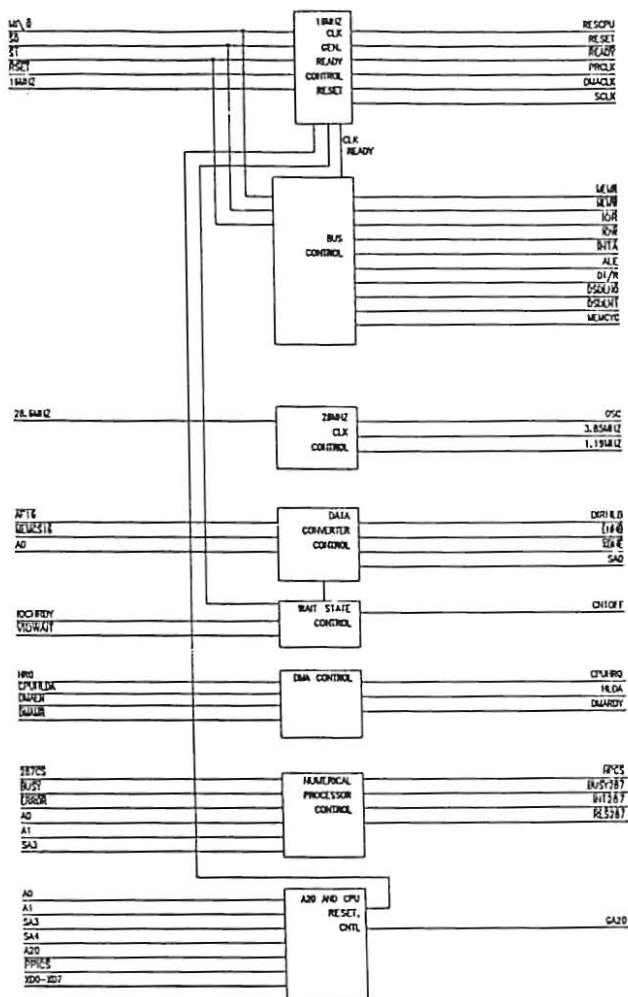


CPU Control Chip

Contents

Block Diagram	3
Functional Description	4
Clock Generation, Ready, and Reset Control Logic	4
Bus Control Logic	6
Data Conversion Logic	7
Wait State Control Logic	8
DMA Arbitration Logic	8
Numerical Co-processor Control Logic	9
A20Gate and CPU Reset Logic	10
Pin Configuration	12
Pin and Signal Descriptions	13
Electrical Specifications	19
Timing Specifications	21
Timing Diagrams	25

Block Diagram



Functional Description

The Tandy 1000 TL CPU Control IC consists of the following function blocks:

- . - Clock Generation, Ready and Reset Control Logic
- . - Bus Control Logic
- . - Data Conversion Logic
- . - Wait State Control Logic
- . - DMA Arbitration Logic
- . - Numerical Co-processor Control Logic
- . - A20Gate and CPU Reset Logic

Clock Generation, Ready and Reset Control Logic

The clock generation logic includes the clock inputs used to derive all of the system clocks. The 16 MHz clock input is used to generate the CPU clock (PRCLK), and is twice the CPU operation frequency of 8 MHz. The 28.6 MHz clock input is used to generate the 14.31818 MHz clock (OSC) and other clocks required by the system.

Three clocks are generated from the 28.6 MHz clock input. These are OSC, 3.58 MHz, and the 1.19 MHz clock outputs. The 28.6 MHz signal input is divided by 2 to generate the OSC output which is 14.31818 MHz. The 28.6 MHz clock is divided by 8 to generate the 3.58 MHz clock which is used by the sound generator circuit. The 28.6 MHz clock is also divided by 24 to generate the 1.19 MHz clock that is used by the Interval Timer 8254.

All other system clocks are generated from the 16 MHz clock input. PRCLK is used to drive the CPU, the Co-processor, and the DRAM/DMA Control IC. PRCLK is output as 16 MHz in the 8 MHz (FAST) mode and is divided by 2 to 8 MHz in the 4 MHz (SLOW) mode. PRCLK output buffer has sufficient drive capability to meet the 3.8 volt minimum Vih requirement of the 80286/80287 clock inputs.

SCLK and DMACK are system clocks generated from 16 MHz. SCLK is generated by dividing PRCLK by 2 and DMACK is generated by dividing PRCLK by 4. Both SCLK and DMACK are held in a LOW state immediately following a reset and will not start operation until the CPU issues the first bus cycle by asserting S1* LOW. Immediately following S1* asserted LOW, SCLK and DMACK will make their first LOW to HIGH transition at the falling edge of PRCLK during the start of Tc. This will synchronize SCLK and DMACK with PRCLK. Refer to timing diagrams for an illustration of the startup of SCLK and DMACK.

A ready signal (READY*) is generated by the CPU Control IC to allow the CPU to operate with slower devices such as peripherals and slow memory. READY* is synchronized with PRCLK in this control block by the control logic of READY* located in the Wait State Control Logic.

Two reset output signals are generated by the CPU Control IC to provide a reset to the main system and a separate reset to the CPU. RESET which is active HIGH is a synchronized reset and is used for resetting the main system. RESCPU is dedicated to the CPU for proper resetting of the 80286. Both RESET and RESCPU are generated when RES* input is asserted LOW to indicate a power-on reset or when RES* is asserted LOW by a reset switch. RESCPU is also generated when a Shutdown condition of the CPU is detected. When a Shutdown condition is detected, RESCPU is asserted HIGH for 16 PRCLK cycles and then negated to assure proper CPU operation. RESCPU can also be generated by doing an I/O write to Port 068 with bit 2 = 0. This will generate RESCPU to reset the CPU and can be used to jump from protected mode to real time mode of the CPU.

The RES* input is buffered internal to the CPU Control IC with a Schmitt trigger input buffer. This signal should be held in a LOW state during power-up for at least 10 msec or until all operating voltages have reached their specified range of operation.

Bus Control Logic

The Bus Control Logic of the CPU Control IC generates several Memory and I/O command and control signals that are issued by the 80286. There are two types of control signals that are generated as output signals. The command outputs are the first type of control signals generated which are decoded from the CPU status inputs MI/O*, S1*, S0*. The generated output command signals are MEMR*, MEMW*, IOR*, IOW*, INTA* which determine which type of cycle is to be performed. The second type of signals are the control signals which is ALE, DT/R*, DSDEN0*, DSDEN1*, and MEMCYC. These signals latch the address from the CPU, control the direction and enabling of the data bus buffers, and determine the start of an on board memory cycle. Table 1. contains a list of the command output signals that are generated from the CPU status line inputs.

MI/O*	S1*	S0*	Type of Cycle
0	0	0	Interrupt Acknowledge
0	0	1	I/O Read
0	1	0	I/O Write
0	1	1	None; Idle
1	0	0	Halt or Shutdown
1	0	1	Memory Read
1	1	0	Memory Write
1	1	1	None; Idle

Table 1. CPU Control Signal Generation

The state machine that controls the output timing of the command and control signals has three bus states, which are the Idle state (Ti), the Status state (Ts), and the command state (Tc). The Idle state (Ti) is generated when the CPU is not actively issuing a bus cycle. During an Idle state, all command and control output signals are in an inactive condition. The beginning of a bus cycle is detected when the CPU asserts S1* or S0*. The state machine will start a Status state (Ts) and will assert ALE to an active HIGH state until the end of Ts. At the end of the Status state, the state machine enters the command state (Tc) and will assert the decoded command issued by the CPU. The command signal may be delayed by one half bus cycle or one PRCLK clock cycle, if the conditions exist to produce a command delay. A Command delay will be generated on all I/O cycles, all Memory cycles in which both AF16* and MEMCS16* are negated are inactive HIGH, and on all INTA* cycles.

For the control of the data bus buffer, three control signals are generated which are DT/R*, DSDEN0*, and DSDEN1*. DT/R* is used to control the direction of the data bus to and from the CPU. DSDEN0* and DSDEN1* are enable signals for the data bus buffers. DSDEN0* is qualified with A0 to control the lower 8 bits of the data bus (D0-D7). DSDEN1* is qualified with BHE* to control the upper 8 data bits (D8-D15). Control of the upper and lower data bits independently is required in the AT type architecture to control the 8 to 16 bit data conversions.

ALE is a control signal used to latch the address line from the CPU so that the address will remain stable throughout the complete command cycle. ALE is generated when either S0* or S1* is asserted from the CPU to start a bus cycle. This allows the address latches to be enabled as early as possible to provide sufficient address setup time to the on board memory array. ALE is negated at the start of the command state (Tc) to latch the address while they are guaranteed from the CPU.

The last control signal generated is MEMCYC which is used to control the start of a memory access to the on board memory array. MEMCYC is asserted HIGH at the middle of the Status state (Ts) and is held active during the complete bus cycle. MEMCYC is negated at the end of a bus cycle or the end of the command state (Tc).

Bus Conversion Logic

This block of the CPU Control IC provides the logic to control the 16 bit transfers to and from an 8 bit device or memory. The conversion logic detects when a conversion is required, asserts a wait to the CPU by asserting the READY* line to a HIGH or inactive state, and then generates the required control signals to the data buffers to perform the conversion. A conversion is required during all 16 bit transfers to all I/O devices, the Interrupt Controller, and 8 bit memory. An 8 bit memory cycle is detected by sampling the state of AF16* and/or MEMCS16* at the beginning of a memory cycle. If both are inactive HIGH then the conversion logic acknowledges it as an 8 bit memory cycle. The control signals that are generated are DIRHLB (Direction High Low Byte), ENHLB (Enable High Low Byte), and CNTLOFF (Control Off). ENHLB enables the conversion buffer during the conversion cycle and DIRHLB determines the direction of the buffer. CNTLOFF is used to latch the lower 8 bits (D0-D7) during a 16 bit read from an 8 bit device. SA0 is also controlled and generated by the conversion logic so the even byte is read first then SA0 is toggled to a HIGH state so the odd byte will be read.

Wait State Control Logic

The Wait State Control Logic is used to allow slow memory and peripheral devices to be used with a faster CPU. Wait states are controlled by the CPU Control IC by negating the READY* line to the CPU to inactive state. The CPU will not end the cycle in progress until the READY* line is reasserted to an active LOW state. The READY* line is negated at the middle of the Status state (Ts) to an inactive HIGH to guarantee recognition of a wait state by the CPU. The READY* line is reasserted at the middle of the Command state or Wait State to end the existing cycle.

There are several default wait state cycles that are generated by the CPU Control IC for control of all bus cycles. During a 16 bit memory cycle which is determined by the assertion of AF16* or MEMCS16*, a default of one wait state is automatically inserted. During a 8 bit memory cycle which is determined when both AF16* and MEMCS16* are negated, a default of four wait states are automatically inserted. All I/O cycles have a default of four wait states inserted to guarantee timing compatibility with existing I/O channel add in boards. All of the default wait state are the same in the 8 MHz (FAST) mode and the 4 MHz (SLOW) mode except for the I/O bus cycles. During an I/O cycles in the 4 MHz (SLOW) mode, a default of only two wait states are inserted. This allows only the memory cycles to be effected to slow down the program speed without degrading the performance of I/O accesses.

All bus cycles can be extended above the default number of wait states by negating the IOCHRDY (I/O Channel Ready) to inactive LOW. The CPU Control IC will continue to insert wait states to the CPU until IOCHRDY is released allowing it to be asserted. IOCHRDY should not be held LOW for more than 15 usec. because Refresh to the DRAMs will be inhibited.

DMA Arbitration Logic

The DMA Arbitration Logic in the CPU Control IC control the arbitration of the bus between the CPU and the DMA Controller. The arbitration logic detects when the DMA is requesting the bus when HRQ (Hold Request) is asserted HIGH. After HRQ is recognized, the arbitration logic will assert CPUHRQ to the CPU to request release of the bus. The CPU will respond to CPUHRQ after finishing the cycle in progress by suspending operation and asserting CPUHLDA to the CPU Control IC. The arbitration Logic will then tri-state the output command signals and generate HLDA to the DMA, allowing it to take control over the bus.

All DMA cycles have a default of one wait state automatically inserted to maintain compatibility with existing I/O channel boards and peripheral devices. The DMA cycle can be extended by and I/O device by applying a LOW state to the IOCHRDY signal. The DMA Controller will be held in a wait state until IOCHRDY is returned to a HIGH state. Refer to Timing Diagrams for Timing specifications of a DMA cycle and DMA Arbitration operation.

The CPU Control IC also controls two functions required in the 80286 architecture during a DMA cycle. In order to guarantee the integrity of an Interrupt Acknowledge (INTA) cycle, which requires two bus cycles to complete, a DMA arbitration inhibit is included in the arbitration logic. After an INTA cycle has started, a DMA cycle will be inhibited until the CPU performs a memory write cycle. The memory write cycle will normally be executed after the INTA cycle due the stack operation of the CPU required to service an interrupt routine. The inhibit will guarantee the a DMA cycle can not be allowed until both bus cycles of an INTA cycle is complete.

Numerical Co-processor Control Logic

The Numerical Co-processor Control Logic provides an interface for the 80286 CPU to control an 80287 Co-processor. This logic controls the decoding required to select and reset the 80287, control of the BUSY* and ERROR* signals from the 80287 to the CPU, and generating the interrupt signal during an error condition.

The input signal 287CS* is an I/O decode at 0F0-0FFh I/O address. 287CS* is used by the CPU Control IC to generate the Numerical Co-processor Chip Select (NPCS*), and the reset signal (RES287*) to the 80287. Refer to the I/O decode table for details about the further internal decode done by the CPU Control IC.

When the 80287 receives a command to perform a task, it will output the BUSY* signal which is input to the CPU Control IC. The CPU Control IC will then assert BUSY287* to the CPU. During normal operation of the 80287, when it finishes the task, it will negate BUSY* which will in turn negate BUSY287* to the CPU. If the ERROR input from the 80287 is asserted during this busy time, which indicates a 80287 error, BUSY287* output is latched and INT287* is asserted LOW to generate an interrupt to the CPU. Both BUSY287* and INT287* will remain latched in an active LOW state until they are cleared by writing to the I/O address 0F0h or 0F1h. These signals are cleared after a system reset.

RES287* is generated to reset the 80287. It is generated by writing to I/O address 0F1h or when a system reset is issued.

A20 and CPU Reset Control Logic

The CPU Control IC incorporates the logic required to control the Address line A20 and to reset the CPU. In the PC architecture, A20 must be held in a LOW state so the some programs that do wrapping will function correctly. After a reset, the output signal GA20 is held in a LOW state. If a program needs to address above the 1 MEG limit, OUT to I/O address 068h with data bit 1 to a HIGH or "1" state will allow A20 to be muxed to GA20.

The CPU can reset itself by doing an I/O write to address 068h with bit 2 at a LOW or "0" state. After a reset has occurred, by Reading I/O address 068, it can be determined it was a power up reset or if the CPU reset itself. Refer to the I/O address map for further details.

I/O Address Map

Address	Description
062	Port C (Write Only)
Bit	
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 +---	Reserved
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 +-----	Reserved
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 +-----	Reserved
1 1 1 1 1 +-----	0 = 4 MHz (SLOW) Mode
1 1 1 1 1	1 = 8 MHz (FAST) Mode
1 1 1 1	Default after Reset
1 1 1 1 +-----	Reserved
1 1 1 +-----	Reserved
1 1 +-----	Reserved
1 +-----	Reserved
+-----	Reserved
068	Port I (Read and Write)
Bit	
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 +---	Not Used
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 +-----	0 = GA20 always 0
1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Default after Reset
1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1 = A20 Muxed to GA20
1 1 1 1 1 1 +-----	Write Mode 0 = Reset CPU
1 1 1 1 1 1	1 = No Effect
1 1 1 1 1	Read Mode 0 = Power On Reset
1 1 1 1 1	1 = CPU Reset
1 1 1 1 1 +-----	Not Used
1 1 1 +-----	Not Used
1 1 1 +-----	Not Used
1 1 +-----	Not Used
1 +-----	Not Used
+-----	Not Used
0F0	Clear Numerical Co-processor Busy
0F1	Reset Numerical Co-processor
0F8-0FF	Numerical Co-processor Chip Select



Functional Pin Description

Pin#	Pin Name	Type	Description
62	16MHZ	I	16 MHZ Clock Input
63	PRCLK	O	80286 Processor Clock - 16:8 MHZ
64	SCLK	O	System Clock - 8:4 MHZ
65	DMACLK	O	DMA Controller Clock - 4:2 MHZ
60	28.6MHZ	I	28.63636 MHZ Clock Input
59	OSC	O	14.31818 MHZ Clock
58	3.58MHZ	O	3.5795 MHZ Clock for sound chip
57	1.19MHZ	O	1.19 MHZ Clock for Interval Timer chip 8254.
18	MI/O	I	Memory Input/Output from the CPU. Indicates a memory access when HIGH and a I/O access when LOW. Used to generate the memory and I/O command signals for the system.
17	S1*	I	Status Line 1 from the CPU
16	S0*	I	Status Line 0 from the CPU
19	READY*	O	Ready signal to the 80286 Processor. Indicates the current bus be completed when LOW.
68	CPUHRQ	O	CPU hold request signal for the CPU. Indicates DMA transfers by the DMA controller when HIGH. It is also active during refresh cycles.
4	CPUHLDA	I	Hold Acknowledge signal from CPU. Indicates the CPU granting a DMA cycle to the DMA controller when HIGH. And causes all command signals to be tri-stated provided the CNTLOFF output is LOW
33	MEMR*	O	Memory Read Command output signal instructs a memory device to place data on the bus when LOW. It is also active during refresh.

32	MEMW*	I/O	Memory Write Command Input/Output signal. Instructs a memory device to read the data on the bus when LOW.
22	IOR*	I/O	Input/Output Read signal. Indicates a Read cycle is performed with an I/O device or port when LOW.
21	IOW*	I/O	Input/Output Write signal. Indicates a Read cycle is performed with an I/O device or port when LOW.
20	INTA*	O	Interrupt Acknowledge for the Interrupt Controller. It is used by the Interrupt controller to output the interrupt vector onto the data bus when LOW.
55	ALE	O	Address Latch Enable. It is used to hold the address during bus cycle when HIGH.
56	MEMCYC	O	Memory cycle signal. It is used to generate memory control signal, RAS, MUX and CAS when HIGH.
36	RES*	I	Reset signal. It is connected to the power good and used to reset the system when LOW.
37	RESET	O	Reset output signal. It is a synchronized reset signal for general system reset when HIGH.
34	RESCPU	O	CPU Reset output signal. It is used to reset CPU when HIGH.
47	XBHE* (SBHE*)	I/O	Bus High Enable Input/Output signal. It is used to enable the high byte data bus signals when LOW.
45	SA0	O	System Address 0.
8	A0	I	Address 0 input signal from CPU. It is used to generate the enable signal for the data bus.

9	AI	I	Address 1 input signal from CPU. It is used to detect the SHUT DOWN condition of the CPU.
10	SA3	I	System Address 3 input signal. It is used to generate the chip select and reset signal for 80287.
11	SA4	I	System Address 4 input signal. It is used to generate the chip select.
12	A20	I	Address 20 from the CPU. It is used to generate GA20 signal when CPUHLDA LOW.
46	GA20	O	Gated Address 20. Address 20 is being negated by XD1 and PORTI (internal). When XD1 is LOW, Gated A20 on the CPU address bus is forced LOW. When XD1 is HIGH, GA20 is transmitted as Address 20.
7	PPICS*	I	Programable Peripheral Interface Chip Select input signal. It is used to generate Chip Select Signal for the peripheral interface device when is LOW.
6	287CS*	I	287 Chip Select input signal. It is used for generating the Numerical Processor Select NPCS for 80287 when is HIGH.
5	HRQ	I	Hold Request input signal from DMA controller. It is used to generate the CPU Hold Request Signal when is HIGH.
67	HLDA	O	Hold Acknowledge output signal for DMA Controller. It is used to provide Hold Acknowledge for DMA controller when is HIGH.
3	DMAAEN	I	DMA Address Enable input Signal from DMA Controller. It is used to provide enable signal for any I/O device during DMA Access to the system memory when is HIGH.

2	DMAMR*	I	DMA Memory Read signal from DMA controller. It is used to generate Memory Read - MEMR* signal when is LOW.
66	DMARDY	O	DMA Ready output signal for DMA Controller. It is used to extend memory Read and Write cycles from the DMA Controller for slower memory or I/O device when is HIGH.
52	BUSY*	I	Busy input signal from 80287. It indicates that 80287 is currently executing a command when is LOW.
53	ERROR*	I	Error input signal from 80287. It indicates an unmasked error condition exists.
51	BUSY287*	O	Busy 80287 output signal for the CPU. It indicates to the processor the operating condition of the 80287 when is LOW.
50	INT287*	O	Interrupt 80287 output signal for the Interrupt controller. It is the interrupt request from 80287
49	RES287	O	Reset 80287 output signal for the 80287. It is used to reset to the 80287 when is HIGH.
48	NPCS*	O	Numerical Processor Chip Select output signal for the 80287. It is used to select the 80287 device when is LOW.
38	DT/R*	O	Data Transmit/Received output signal. It is used to determine the data direction to and from local data bus. It is a write bus cycle when is HIGH and read bus cycle when is LOW.
39	DSDEN0*	O	Data Strobe Data Enable 0 output. It is used to enable the data transceivers connected to the low byte (D0-D7) when is LOW.
40	DSDEN1*	O	Data Strobe Data Enable 1 output signal. It is used to enable the data transceivers connected to the high byte (D8-D15) data bus when is LOW.

41	ENHLB*	O	Enable High To Low byte output signal. It is used to perform the high to low conversion when is LOW.
42	CNTLOFF	O	Control Off output signal. It is used to enable the low data bus latch during byte accesses when is LOW.
43	DIRHLD	O	Direction High to Low byte output signal. It is used to perform high to low byte conversion when is HIGH.
13	AF16*	I	AF16* output signal. It is used to control the 16 bit memory accesses and to inhibit the command delays for memory accesses by I/O device when is LOW.
14	MEMCS16*	I	Memory Chip Select input signal. It is used to inhibit command delays when 16 bit memory accesses are made when is LOW.
54	IOCHRDY	I	I/O Channel Ready input signal from I/O device. It is used generate wait states in I/O or memory accesses by I/O device when is HIGH.
15	VIDWAIT*	I	Video Wait input signal from video controller. It is used to generate Video delay ready signal when is HIGH.
31	D0	I/O	Data Bus Bit 0 of the peripheral data bus.
30	D1	I/O	Data Bus Bit 1 of the peripheral data bus.
29	D2	I/O	Data Bus Bit 2 of the peripheral data bus.
28	D3	I/O	Data Bus Bit 3 of the peripheral data bus.
26	D4	I/O	Data Bus Bit 4 of the peripheral data bus.

25	D5	I/O	Data Bus Bit 5 of the peripheral data bus.
24	D6	I/O	Data Bus Bit 6 of the peripheral data bus.
23	D7	I/O	Data Bus Bit 7 of the peripheral data bus.
1,35	VCC	PWR	Power Supply.
27,44 61	VSS	GND	Ground.

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

ELECTRICAL PARAMETERS

ABSOLUTE MAX RATINGS (NON-OPERATING, VSS=0.0V)

	MIN	MAX	UNITS
STORAGE TEMPERATURE	-65	+150	Degrees C.
VOLTAGE ON ANY PIN W.R.T GROUND	-0.5	7.0	Volts

OPERATING ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS:

OPERATING AMBIENT	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
AIR TEMP. RANGE	0	25	70	Degrees C
POWER SUPPLIES				
VCC	4.5	5.0	5.5	Volts
VSS	0	0	0	Volts
	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
LEAKAGE CURRENT				
Vin = 0.0 v		20		Microamps
Vin = 5.0 v	-20			Microamps

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

INPUT VOLTAGES AND CURRENTS

	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
LOGIC "0" (Vil) @ 8ma			0.8	Volts
LOGIC "1" (Vih) @ 8ma	2.0			Volts
INPUT CURRENT			+10	Microamps
All inputs 0.0 $\frac{1}{2}$ Vin $\frac{1}{2}$ 5.0	10			Picofarads

OUTPUT VOLTAGES CURRENT LOADING

	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS
LOGIC "0" (Vol) @ 8ma			0.45	Volts
LOGIC "1" (Voh) @ 8ma	2.4			Volts

CURRENT LOADING AND CAPACITANCE OF EACH OUTPUT

At $V_{ol} = 0.45$ volts, $V_{oh} = 2.4$ volts

PIN NAME	MIN	UNITS	CAPACITANCE NOTES
=====			
<u>OUTPUT</u>			
RESCPU, \overline{NPCS} , $\overline{BUSY287}$, $\overline{INT287}$ RES287, CPUHRQ, HLDA, \overline{DIRHLB} CNTLOFF, ENHLB, DMARDY	2	ma	20pf
RESET, GA20	2	ma	50pf
READY, MEMCYC, DT/\overline{R} , $\overline{DSDEN0}$ DSDEN1	4	ma	20pf
SCLK, DMACLK, OSC, 1.19MHZ 3.58MHZ	4	ma	50pf
PRCLK, \overline{INTA}	8	ma	50pf
ALE	8	ma	50pf
MEMR	8	ma	80pf
<u>INPUT/OUTPUT</u>			
$\overline{XD0} - \overline{XD7}$	2	ma	80pf
\overline{XBHE}	4	ma	50pf
\overline{MEMW}	8	ma	80pf
\overline{IOR} , \overline{IOW}	8	ma	115pf
SA0	4	ma	120pf
=====			

Timing Diagram Specifications

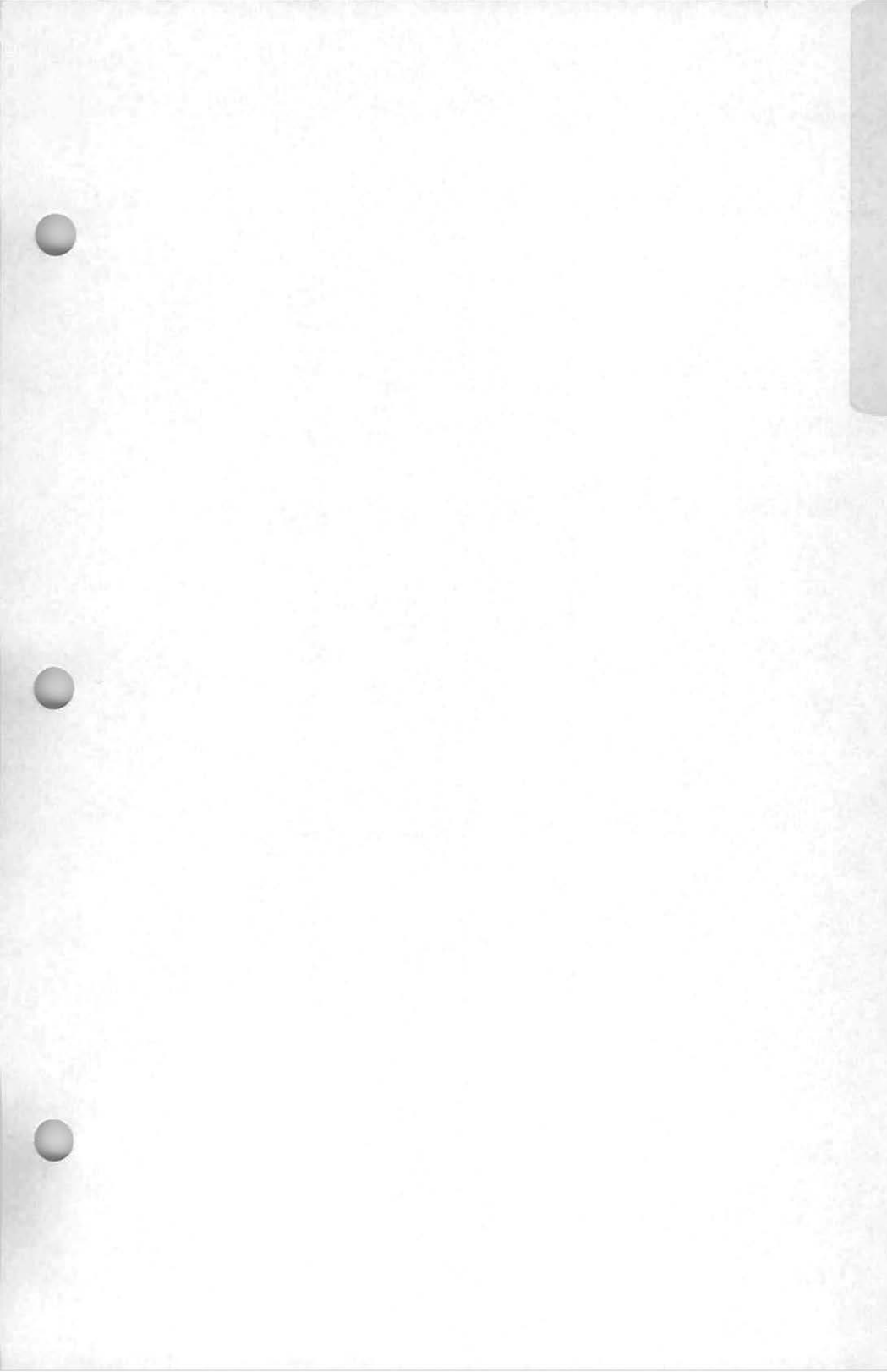
Sym	DESCRIPTION	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
1	PRCLK Period	62	250	ns	
2	PRCLK Low Time	25	125	ns	
3	PRCLK High Time	25	125	ns	
4	$\overline{S0}, \overline{S1}, M/\overline{IO}$ Setup time to PRCLK ↓	20		ns	
5	$\overline{S0}, \overline{S1}, M/\overline{IO}$ Hold time to PRCLK ↓	1		ns	
6	ALE active from $\overline{S0}, \overline{S1}$ ↓	5	25	ns	
7	ALE inactive from PRCLK ↓	5	25	ns	
7A	OSC delay from 28.6 MHZ		30	ns	
8	MEMCYC active from PRCLK ↓	5	25	ns	
8A	13.85 MHZ delay from OSC		15	ns	
9	MEMCYC inactive delay from PRCLK ↓	8	35	ns	
9A	11.19 MHZ delay from OSC		15	ns	
10	Command active delay from PRCLK ↓	5	45	ns	
11	Command inactive delay from PRCLK ↓	5	45	ns	
12	DT/ \overline{R} active delay from PRCLK ↓	5	50	ns	Read
13	DT/ \overline{R} inactive delay from PRCLK ↓	10	40	ns	Read
14	$\overline{DSDEN0}, 1$ active delay from PRCLK ↓	10	50	ns	Read
15	$\overline{DSDEN0}, 1$ inactive delay from DT/ \overline{R}	3		ns	Read
16	$\overline{DSDEN0}, 1$ inactive delay from PRCLK ↓	8	50	ns	Read
17	DT/ \overline{R} inactive delay from $\overline{DSDEN0}, 1$	3		ns	Read
18	$\overline{DSDEN0}, 1$ active delay from PRCLK ↓	8	60	ns	Write
19	$\overline{DSDEN0}, 1$ inactive delay from PRCLK ↓	8	50	ns	Write

SYM	DESCRIPTION	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
20	AF16, MEMCS16 setup time to ALE ↓	35		ns	
21	AF16, MEMCS16 hold time from ALE ↓	1		ns	
22	PRCLK delay from 16MHZ		50	ns	
23	RSET hold time from PRCLK ↓	10		ns	
24	RSET setup time to PRCLK ↓	25		ns	
25	RESET A/I delay from PRCLK ↓	5	35	ns	
26	SCLK delay from PRCLK		25	ns	
27	DMACK delay from SCLK		15	ns	
28	RESCPU inactive delay from PRCLK ↓	5	50	ns	
29	RESCPU active delay from SCLK ↑	5	20	ns	
30	HRQ setup to DMACK ↑	15		ns	1
31	HRQ holdtime from DMACK ↑	1		ns	1
32	CPUHRQ A/I delay from CPUHLDA ↑		30	ns	
33	HLDA active delay from SCLK		25	ns	
34	HLDA A/I delay from CPUHLDA		30	ns	
35	HLDA inactive delay from DMACK ↑		30	ns	
36	DMAMR setup to DMACK ↑	15		ns	
37	CMD tristate delay from CPUHLDA		30	ns	2
38	MEMR active delay from DMACK ↑ (Due to DMAMR)		25	ns	
39	MEMR inactive delay from DMAMR ↑		25	ns	
40	MEMR tri-state delay from DMACK ↑ (Due to DMAMR)		25	ns	
41	CMD active delay from CPUHLDA		30	ns	
42	DMARDY inactive delay from DMAMR, IOR		30	ns	
43	DMARDY active delay from DMACK ↓		30	ns	

SYM	DESCRIPTION	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
144	MEMCYC active delay from MEMW, MEMR		30	ns	
145	MEMCYC inactive delay from from MEMW, MEMR		30	ns	
146	!A0 setup time to PRCLK↓	0		ns	
147	!A0 hold time from PRCLK↓	5		ns	
148	!SA0 delay from PRCLK↓		50	ns	
149	!XBHE setup time to ALE↓	0		ns	
150	!READY inactive delay from PRCLK↓ !(middle of Ts cycle)		25	ns	
151	!READY active delay from PRCLK↓		24	ns	
152	!CNTLOFF A/I delay from PRCLK		30	ns	
153	!DIRHLB, !ENHLB active delay from !from IOR, IOW		50	ns	
154	!DIRHLB inactive delay !from PRCLK (IOW)		50	ns	
155	!ENHLB active delay from PRCLK !(IOW cycle)		50	ns	
156	!ENHLB inactive delay from IOR		50	ns	
157	!ERROR holdtime from BUSY active	0		ns	
158	!BUSY active pulse width	15		ns	
159	!ERROR setup to BUSY	10		ns	
160	!BUSY287 A/I delay from BUSY A/I		30	ns	
161	!ERROR active pulse width	10		ns	
162	!INT287 active delay from !BUSY, !ERROR		30	ns	
163	!INT287 inactive delay from !ERROR		30	ns	
164	!BUSY287 inactive delay from IOW		40	ns	

SYM	DESCRIPTION	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
165	SMIO,SA0,SA3,287CS,INTA setup time to IOW	10		ns	
166	SMIO,SA0,SA3,287CS,INTA hold time from IOW	1		ns	
167	RES287 active delay from IOW		40	ns	
168	RES387 inactive delay from IOW		40	ns	
169	NPCS active delay from SMIO,SA3, 287CS, INTA		35	ns	
170	NPCS inactive delay from SMIO,SA3, 287CS,INTA		35	ns	
171	Data Setup to IOW ↑	30		ns	
172	Data Output from IOR ↓		80	ns	
173	Data float from IOR ↑		50	ns	
174	IU46 Q outputs from IOW ↑		80	ns	
175	IU46 Q outputs clear from RESET ↓		80	ns	
176	A20 GATE delay from IOW ↑		80	ns	
177	A20 GATE delay from RESET ↓		80	ns	
178	GA20 delay from A20 GATE	5	50	ns	
179	GA20 delay from A20	5	50	ns	

1. Setup and Hold times are required to guarantee recognition of signal at clock edge.
2. CMD = MEMR, MEMW, IOR and IOW.
A/I = Active and Inactive





Power Supply



1000TL POWER SUPPLIES



1000TL 67 WATT SINGLE INPUT POWER SUPPLY



1000TL 67 Watt Single Input Power Supply

Contents

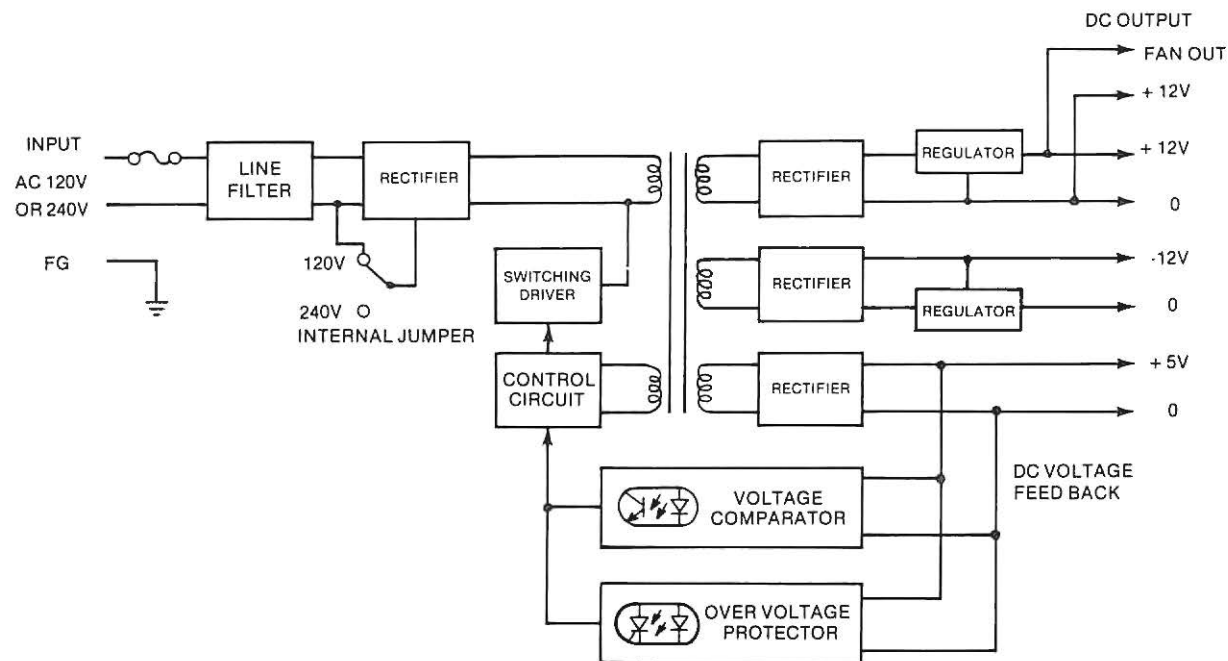
<u>Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Operating Characteristics	1
Block Diagram	2
Theory of Operation	3



OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS

	MINIMUM	TYPICAL	MAXIMUM	UNITS
Operating Voltage Range	90	120	135	VAC
Line Frequency	47	50/60	63	Hz
Output Voltages				
Vol	4.85	5.00	5.15	V
Vo2	11.40	12.00	12.60	V
Vo3	-13.20	-12.00	-10.80	V
Output Loads				
Io1	1.25	-	7.0	A
Io2	0.15	-	2.4	A
Io3	0	-	0.25	A
Over Current Protection				
Current Limit ICL1	-	-	14.0	A
ICL2	-	-	4.8	A
ICL3	-	-	1.0	A
Over Voltage Protection				
Crowbar	5.8	-	6.8	V
Output Noise				
Vol	-	-	50	mV P-P
Vo2	-	-	100	mV P-P
Vo3	-	-	150	mV P-P
Efficiency	63	65	-	%
Holdup Time				
Full Load at Nominal Line	16	-	-	mSec.
Insulation Resistance				
Input to Output	7	1000	-	M ohms
Input to Ground	7	1000	-	M ohms
Isolation				
Input to Ground	1.7	-	-	KVDC

Power Supply Block Diagram



Theory of Operation

AC Input Circuit

This circuit is composed of an AC Power Switch, a fuse, a line filter, and an inrush current limiting circuit and rectifying smoothing circuit. The inrush current limiting circuit controls the charging current to electrolytic capacitors when power is ON. The line filter reduces noise that leaks from the power source to the AC line or that returns from the unit to the power source; it satisfies the specifications of noise regulations.

Control Circuit & Power Converter Circuit

This circuit is a self oscillation switching system, generally called an R.C.C. (Ringing Choke Converter). The R.C.C. circuit does not fix the oscillating frequency. Whenever input voltage is high or the load becomes light, the oscillating frequency will be high.

The current through R2 supplies transistor Q1's base, then Q1 turns ON. When transistor Q1 is ON, the Q1 current excites the transformer T1 and voltage rises in the bias coil of T1(5-6) which leads transistor Q1 positive bias, then transistor Q1 turns ON.

When transistor Q1 turns ON, collector current charges the energy to primary inductance of transformer T1 (1-3). Increasing the collector current of transistor Q1 to the point of:

$$\begin{aligned} I &> I_{hfe} \\ C &= B \end{aligned}$$

Then, transistor Q1 immediately turns OFF. In a moment, transformer T1 will have negative voltage which will be supplied to the secondary circuit through a rectifier. A Short Circuit Protector is provided to protect transistor Q1 from excess amounts of current when the secondary circuit becomes shorted. When transistor Q2 detects the voltage drop at R12, the collector of Q2 shorts the base and emitter of Q1. Then Q1 stops working so that the circuit protects Q1 from over current.

The over current protector in the -12V line is provided by the three terminal positive voltage regulator IC1 (built-in current fold back protection), which protects Q1 against excessive current from the -12V line.

5V Output Voltage Detecting Circuit

The circuit detects the change of output load current compared with the output voltage and AC line input voltage, which feeds back to the control circuit through a photo coupler PHC1 to keep the output voltage stable. The Photo coupler isolates the primary and secondary circuits.

Over-Voltage Protection

When the +5 output voltage rises, between 5.8V to 6.8V, a control signal turns on the photo coupler PHC2 (Photo Thyristor) with the current of zener diode (D11) and stops oscillation by turning on Q3, which turns off Q1 in the switching circuit.

In the case of stopped oscillation, correct the cause of the failure, and reinput the power. The overvoltage protection circuit will reset automatically under good conditions.

The Photo Thyristor isolates the primary and secondary circuits.

1000TL 67 WATT DUAL INPUT POWER SUPPLY



1000TL 67 Watt Dual Input Power Supply

Contents

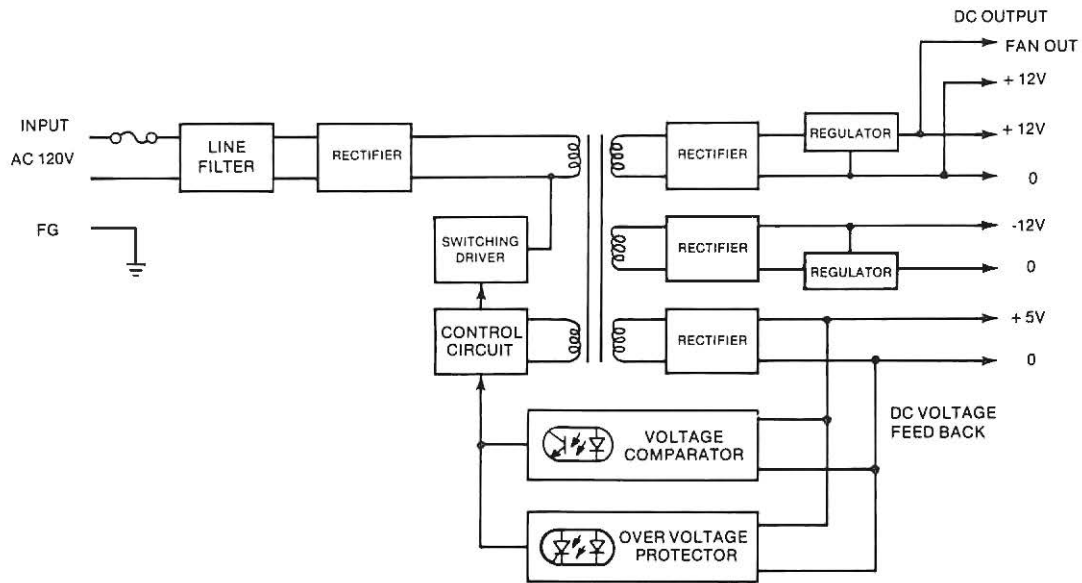
<u>Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Operating Characteristics	1
Block Diagram	2
Theory of Operation	3



OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS

	MINIMUM	TYPICAL	MAXIMUM	UNITS
Operating Voltage Range	90 198	120 240	135 264	VAC
Line Frequency	47	50/60	63	Hz
Output Voltages				
Vo1	4.85	5.00	5.15	V
Vo2	11.40	12.00	12.60	V
Vo3	-13.20	-12.00	-10.80	V
Output Loads				
Io1	1.25	-	7.0	A
Io2	0.15	-	2.4	A
Io3	0	-	0.25	A
Over Current Protection				
Current Limit ICL1	-	-	14.0	A
ICL2	-	-	4.8	A
ICL3	-	-	1.0	A
Over Voltage Protection				
Crowbar	5.8	-	6.8	V
Output Noise				
Vo1	-	-	50	mV P-P
Vo2	-	-	100	mV P-P
Vo3	-	-	150	mV P-P
Efficiency	63	65	-	%
Holdup Time				
Full Load at Nominal Line	16	-	-	mSec.
Insulation Resistance				
Input to Output	7	1000	-	M ohms
Input to Ground	7	1000	-	M ohms
Isolation				
Input to Ground	1.25	-	-	KVAC
Input to Output	3.75	-	-	KVAC

Power Supply Block Diagram



Theory of Operation

AC Input Circuit

This circuit is composed of an AC Power Switch, a fuse, a line filter, and an inrush current limiting circuit and rectifying smoothing circuit. The inrush current limiting circuit controls the charging current to electrolytic capacitors when power is ON. The line filter reduces noise that leaks from the power source to the AC line or that returns from the unit to the power source; it satisfies the specifications of noise regulations.

Control Circuit & Power Converter Circuit

This circuit is a self oscillation switching system, generally called an R.C.C. (Ringing Choke Converter). The R.C.C. circuit does not fix the oscillating frequency. Whenever input voltage is high or the load becomes light, the oscillating frequency will be high.

The current through R4 and R5 supplies transistor Q1's base, then Q1 turns ON. When transistor Q1 is ON, the Q1 current excites the transformer T1 and voltage rises in the bias coil of T1(2-3) which leads transistor Q1 positive bias, then transistor Q1 turns ON.

When transistor Q1 turns ON, collector current charges the energy to primary inductance of transformer T1 (4-6). Increasing the collector current of transistor Q1 to the point of:

$$\begin{aligned} I &> I_{hfe} \\ C &= B \end{aligned}$$

Then, transistor Q1 immediately turns OFF. In a moment, transformer T1 will have negative voltage which will be supplied to the secondary circuit through a rectifier. A Short Circuit Protector is provided to protect transistor Q1 from excess amounts of current when the secondary circuit becomes shorted. When transistor Q2 detects the voltage drop at R13, the collector of Q2 shorts the base and emitter of Q1. Then Q1 stops working so that the circuit protects Q1 from over current.

The over current protector in the -12V line is provided by the three terminal positive voltage regulators IC2, IC3 (built-in current fold back protection), which protects Q1 against excessive current from the -12V line.

5V Output Voltage Detecting Circuit

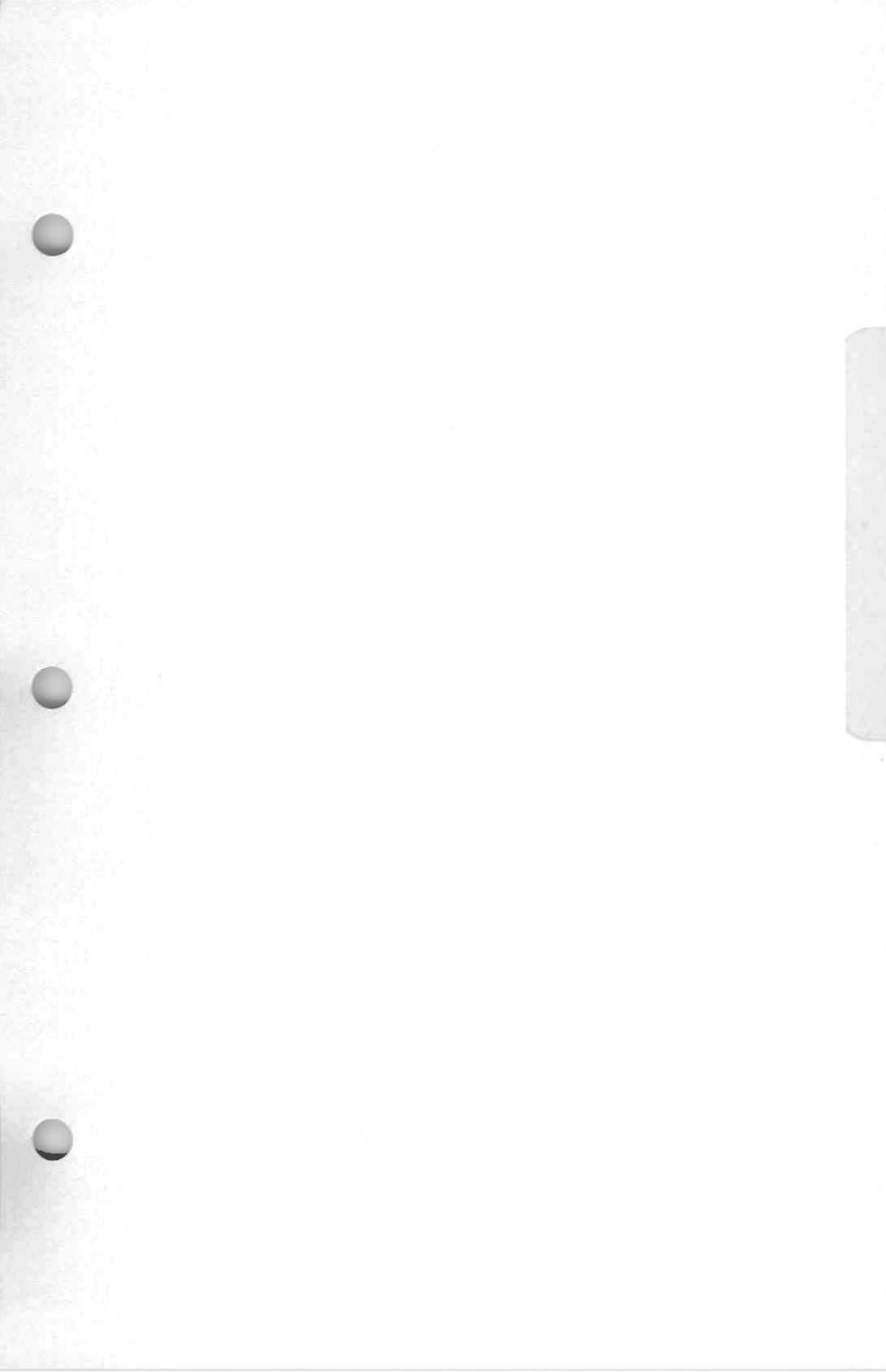
The circuit detects the change of output load current compared with the output voltage and AC line input voltage, which feeds back to the control circuit through a photo coupler PHC1 to keep the output voltage stable. The Photo coupler isolates the primary and secondary circuits.

Over-Voltage Protection

When the +5 output voltage rises, between 5.8V to 6.8V, a control signal turns on the photo coupler PHC2 (Photo Thyristor) with the current of zener diode (D11) and stops oscillation by turning on Q3, which turns off Q1 in the switching circuit.

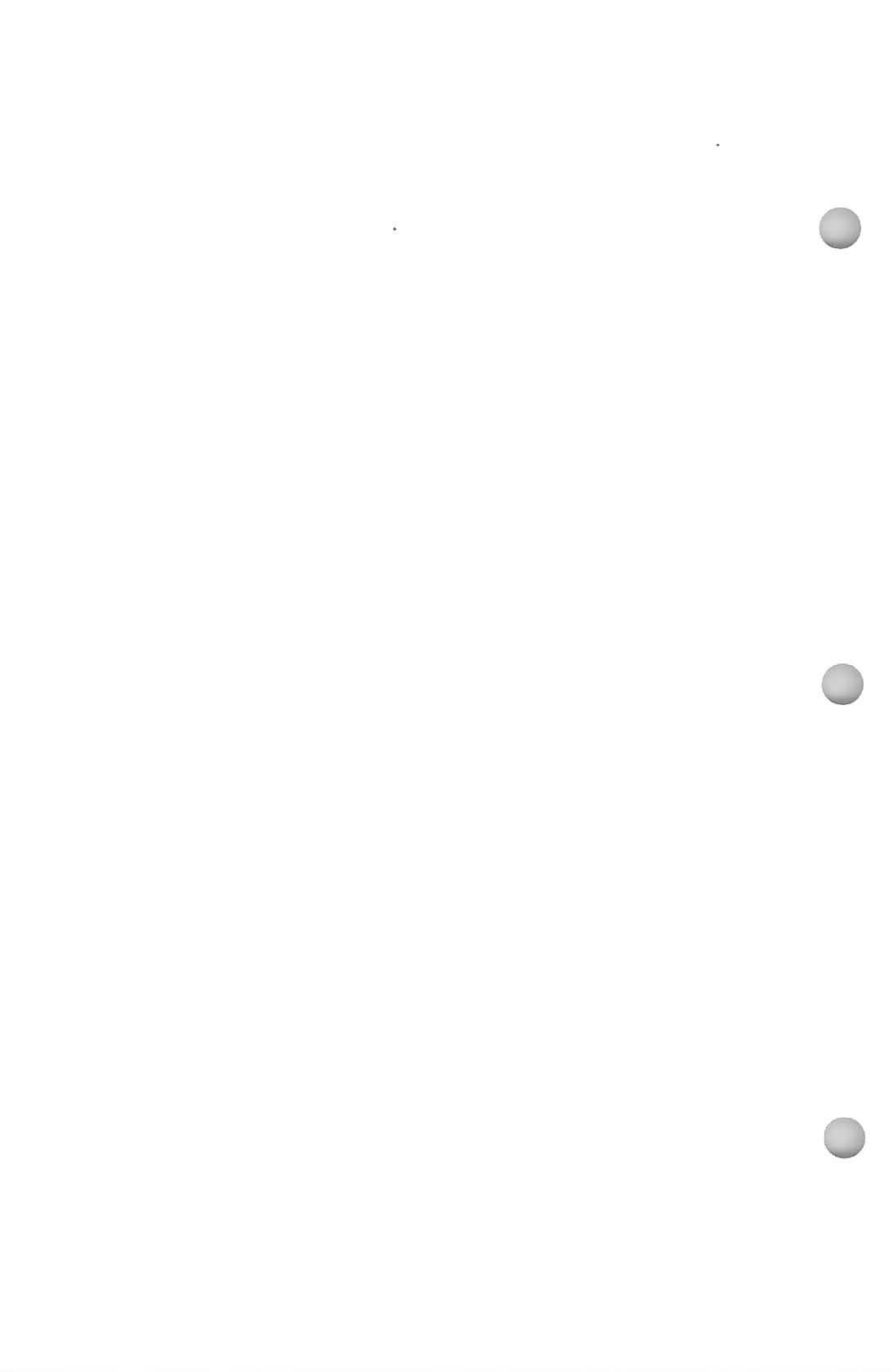
In the case of stopped oscillation, correct the cause of the failure, and reinput the power. The overvoltage protection circuit will reset automatically under good conditions.

The Photo Thyristor isolates the primary and secondary circuits.





Keyboard



FUJITSU KEYBOARD
ASSEMBLY # N860-4703-T

1.0 GENERAL

The keyboard is a direct, plug-compatible replacement for the Enhanced Keyboard for the IBM PC, XT, and AT personal computer. No software modification or special interface is needed by the user.

2.0 SCOPE

This specification describes the functional, mechanical, electrical, environmental, and reliability characteristics of the FUJITSU N860-4703-T Keyboard assembly.

The keyboard is encoded in such a way as to produce a unique output code for each key that is pressed and/or released. The communication with the host computer is a synchronous serial link. The Key Layout, Switch Encoding and Serial Communication are all compatible with the IBM PC, XT and AT.

3.0 MECHANICAL SPECIFICATION

3.1 Key Layout, Legends, and Colors

Figure 1 shows keytop layout, appropriate legends and keytop colors. The keys are numbered from left to right starting with the spacebar row (Row A) and ending with the function key row (Row F).

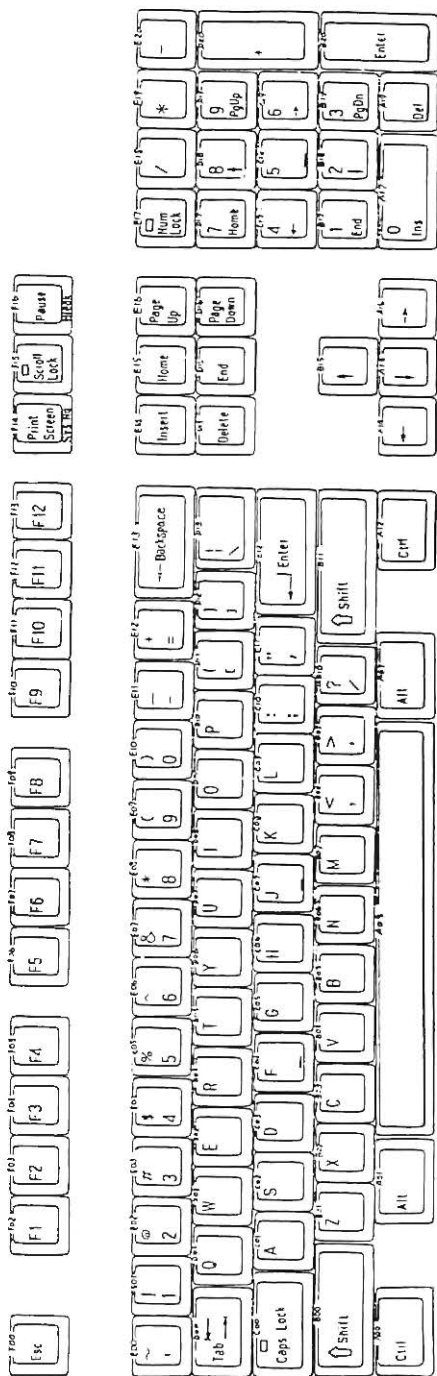


FIGURE 1

3.2 KEYSWITCH

3.2.1 Total Travel: 0.150", +/- 0.020" (3.8, +/-0.5mm)

3.2.2 FORCE: All keyswitches shall utilize a 2.0 ounce (+/- 0.9 oz) operating force. This is accomplished using both a rubber keyswitch membrane and springs.

3.2.3 BREAKOVER FEEDBACK: The keyswitches utilize a tactile feedback to assure the operator that the key has been fully pressed.

4.0 FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

4.1 SCAN CODES

The keyboard generates a unique Hex scan code for each keyswitch that is pressed (make code) and released (break code). For the AT Mode, the break code is the same as the make code preceded by "F0" Hex. Example: The make code for the "ESC" key is 76 Hex and the break code is two bytes, F0 76 Hex. For the XT Mode, the break code is 80 Hex, plus the make code. Example: The make code for the "ESC" key is 01 Hex and the break code is 81 Hex. The keyswitch-to-scan-code (make and break codes) assignments, Standard ASCII Codes, and Extended ASCII Codes are listed on the following pages.

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	AT Mode		XT Mode		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make	Break	Make	Break	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
		Code	Code	Code	Code								
1	Esc	76	F076	01	81	011B	011B	011B	----	011B	011B	011B	0100
2	F1	05	F005	3B	BB	3B00	5400	5E00	6800	3B00	5400	5E00	6800
3	F2	06	F006	3C	BC	3C00	5500	5F00	6900	3C00	5500	5F00	6900
4	F3	04	F004	3D	BD	3D00	5600	6000	6A00	3D00	5600	6000	6A00
5	F4	0C	F00C	3E	BE	3E00	5700	6100	6B00	3E00	5700	6100	6B00
6	F5	03	F003	3F	BF	3F00	5800	6200	6C00	3F00	5800	6200	6C00
7	F6	0B	F00B	40	C0	4000	5900	6300	6D00	4000	5900	6300	6D00
8	F7	83	F083	41	C1	4100	5A00	6400	6E00	4100	5A00	6400	6E00
9	F8	0A	F00A	42	C2	4200	5B00	6500	6F00	4200	5B00	6500	6F00
10	F9	01	F001	43	C3	4300	5C00	6600	7000	4300	5C00	6600	7000
11	F10	09	F009	44	C4	4400	5D00	6700	7100	4400	5D00	6700	7100
12	F11	78	F078	57	D7	----	----	----	----	8500	8700	8900	8B00
13	F12	07	F007	58	D8	----	----	----	----	8600	8800	8A00	8C00
14	Print Scrn	E07C	E0F07C	E02AE037	E0B7E0AA	Note ¹	Note ¹	7200	----	Note ¹	Note ¹	7200	----
15	Scroll Lock	7E	F07E	46	C6	Note ²	Note ²	----	Note ²	Note ²	Note ²	----	Note ²
16	Pause Break	E11477	E1F014F077	E11D45	E19DC5	Note ³	Note ³	Note ⁴	Note ³	Note ³	Note ³	Note ⁴	Note ³
17	~ or \	0E	F00E	2B	AB	2960	297E	----	----	6000	7E00	----	2900
18	! or 1	16	F016	02	82	0231	0221	----	7800	0231	0221	----	7800

Table 1

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	AT Mode		XT Mode		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
19	@ or 2	1E	F01E	03	83	0332	0340	0300	7900	0332	0340	0300	7900
20	# or 3	26	F026	04	84	0433	0423	-----	7A00	0433	0423	-----	7A00
21	\$ or 4	25	F025	05	85	0534	0524	-----	7B00	0534	0524	-----	7B00
22	% or 5	2E	F02E	06	86	0635	0625	-----	7C00	0635	0625	-----	7C00
23	^ or 6	36	F036	07	87	0736	0751E	071E	7D00	0736	0751E	071E	7D00
24	& or 7	3D	F03D	08	88	0837	0826	-----	7E00	0837	0826	-----	7E00
25	* or 8	3E	F03E	09	89	0938	092A	-----	7F00	0938	092A	-----	7F00
26	(or 9	46	F046	0A	8A	0A39	0A28	-----	8000	0A39	0A28	-----	8000
27	) or 0	45	F045	0B	8B	0B34	0B29	-----	8100	0B34	0B29	-----	8100
28	_ or -	4E	F04E	0C	8C	0C2D	0C5F	0C1F	8200	0C2D	0C5F	0C1F	8200
29	+ or =	55	F055	0D	8D	0D3D	0D2B	-----	8300	0D3D	0D2B	-----	8300
30	Backspace	66	F066	0E	8E	0E08	0E08	0E7F	-----	0E08	0E08	0E7F	0E00
31	Insert	E070	F070	E02AE052	E0D2F0AA	5200	-----	-----	-----	52E0	52E0	92E0	A200
32	Home	E06C	F06C	E02AE047	E0C7E0AA	4700	4700	7700	-----	47E0	47E0	77E0	9700
33	Pg Up	E07D	F07D	E02AE049	E0C9E0AA	4900	4900	8400	-----	49E0	49E0	84E0	9900
34	Num Lock	77	F077	45	CS	Note ⁵	Note ⁵	-----	Note ⁵	Note ⁵	Note ⁵	-----	Note ⁵
35	/	E04A	F04A	E035	E0B5	352F	352F	-----	-----	E02F	E02F	9500	A400
36	*	7C	F07C	37	B7	372A	372A	-----	-----	372A	372A	9600	3700
37	-	7B	F07B	4A	CA	4A2D	4A2D	-----	-----	4A2D	4A2D	8E00	4A00

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	AT Mode		XTMode		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
38	Tab	0D	F00D	0F	8F	0F90	0F00	----	----	0F09	0F00	9400	A500
39	Q or q	15	F015	10	90	1071	1051	1011	1000	1071	1051	1011	1000
40	W or w	1D	F01D	11	91	1177	1157	1117	1100	1177	1157	1117	1100
41	E or e	24	F024	12	92	1265	1245	1205	1200	1265	1245	1205	1200
42	R or r	2D	F02D	13	93	1372	1352	1312	1300	1372	1352	1312	1300
43	T or t	2C	F02C	14	94	1474	1454	1414	1400	1474	1454	1414	1400
44	Y or y	35	F035	15	95	1579	1559	1519	1500	1579	1559	1519	1500
45	U or u	3C	F03C	16	96	1675	1655	1615	1600	1675	1655	1615	1600
46	I or i	43	F043	17	97	1769	1749	1709	1700	1769	1749	1709	1700
47	O or o	44	F044	18	98	186F	184F	180F	1800	186F	184F	180F	1800
48	P or p	4D	F04D	19	99	1970	1950	1910	1900	1970	1950	1910	1900
49	{ or [	54	F054	1A	9A	1A5B	1A7B	1A1B	----	1A5B	1A7B	1A1B	1A00
50	} or]	5B	F05B	1B	9B	1B5D	1B7D	1B1D	----	1B5D	1B7D	1B1D	1B00
51	| or \	5D	F05D	2B	AB	2B5C	2B7C	2B1C	----	2B5C	2B7C	2B1C	2B00
52	Delete	E071	E0F071	E02AE053	E0D3FE0AA	5300	5300	----	----	53E0	53E0	93E0	A300
53	End	E069	E0F069	E02AE04F	E0CFFE0AA	4F00	4F00	7500	----	4FE0	4FE0	75E0	9F00
54	Page Down	E07A	E0F07A	E02AE051	E0D1E0AA	5100	5100	7600	----	51E0	51E0	76E0	A100
55	7 or Home	6C	F06C	47	C7	4700	4737	7700	Note ⁶	4700	4737	7700	Note ⁶
56	8	75	F075	48	C8	4800	4838	----	Note ⁶	4800	4838	8D00	Note ⁶
57	9 or Page Up	7D	F07D	49	C9	4900	4939	8400	Note ⁶	4900	4939	8400	Note ⁶

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	AT Mode		XT Mode		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
58	+	79	F079	4E	CE	4E2B ₇	4E2B ₇	----	----	4E2B ₇	4E2B ₇	9000	4F00 ₇
59	Caps Lock	58	F058	3A	BA	Note ₇	Note ₇	----	Note ₇	Note ₇	Note ₇	----	Note ₇
60	A or a	1C	F01C	1E	9E	1E61	1E41	1E01	1E00	1E61	1E41	1E01	1E00
61	S or s	1B	F01B	1F	9F	1F73	1F53	1F13	1F00	1F73	1F53	1F13	1F00
62	D or d	23	F023	20	A0	2064	2044	2004	2000	2064	2044	2004	2000
63	F or f	2B	F02B	21	A1	2166	2146	2106	2100	2166	2146	2106	2100
64	G or g	34	F034	22	A2	2267	2247	2207	2200	2267	2247	2207	2200
65	H or h	33	F033	23	A3	2368	2348	2308	2300	2368	2348	2308	2300
66	J or j	3B	F03B	24	A4	246A	244A	240A	2400	246A	244A	240A	2400
67	K or k	42	F042	25	A5	256B	254B	250B	2500	256B	254B	250B	2500
68	L or l	4B	F04B	26	A6	266C	264C	260C	2600	266C	264C	260C	2600
69	;	4C	F04C	27	A7	273B	273A	----	----	273B	273A	----	2700
70	' or `	52	F052	28	A8	2827	2822	----	----	2827	2822	----	2800
71	Enter	5A	F05A	1C	9C	1C0D	1C0D	1C0A	----	1C0D	1C0D	1C0A	1C00
72	4	6B	F06B	4B	CB	4B00	4B34	7300	Note ₆	4B00	4B34	7300	Note ₆
73	5	73	F073	4C	CC	----	4C35	---	Note ₆	4C00	4C35	8F00	Note ₆
74	6	74	F074	4D	CD	4D00	4D36	7400	Note ₆	4D00	4D36	7400	Note ₆

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	AT Mode		XT Mode		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
76	Left Shift	12	F012	2A	AA	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸
77	Z or z	1A	F01A	2C	AC	2C7A	2C5A	2C1A	2C00	2C7A	2C5A	2C1A	2C00
78	X or x	22	F022	2D	AD	2D78	2D58	2D18	2000	2D78	2D58	2D18	2000
79	C or c	21	F021	2E	AE	2E63	2E43	2E03	2E00	2E63	2E43	2E03	2E00
80	V or v	2A	F02A	2F	AF	2F76	2F56	2F16	2F00	2F76	2F56	2F16	2F00
81	B or b	32	F032	30	B0	3062	3042	3002	3000	3062	3042	3002	3000
82	N or n	31	F031	31	B1	316E	314E	310E	3100	316E	314E	310E	3100
83	M or m	3A	F03A	32	B2	326D	324D	320D	3200	326D	324D	320D	3200
84	< or ,	41	F041	33	B3	332C	333C	-----	-----	332C	333C	-----	3300
85	> or .	49	F049	34	B4	342E	343E	-----	-----	342E	343E	-----	3400
86	? or /	4A	F04A	35	B5	352F	353F	-----	-----	352F	353F	-----	3500
87	Right Shift	59	F059	36	B6	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸	Note ⁸
88	Up Arrow	E075	F0F075	E02AE048	E0C8E0AA	4800	4800	-----	----	48E0	48E0	8DE0	9800
89	1 or End	69	F069	4F	CF	4F00	4F31	7500	Note ⁶	4F00	4F31	7500	Note ⁶
90	2	72	F072	50	D0	5000	5032	----	Note ⁶	5000	5032	9100	Note ⁶
91	3 or PgDn	7A	F07A	51	D1	5100	5133	7600	Note ⁶	5100	5133	7600	Note ⁶
92	Left Ctrl	14	F014	1D	9D	Note ⁹	Note ⁹	Note ⁹	Note ⁹	Note ⁹	Note ⁹	Note ⁹	Note ⁹
93	Left Alt	11	F011	38	B8	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰	Note ¹⁰
94	Space	29	F029	39	B9	3920	3920	3920	3920	3920	3920	3920	3920

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	AT Mode		XT Mode		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make	Break	Make	Break	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
		Code	Code	Code	Code								
95	Right Alt	E011	E0F011	E038	E0B8	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉
96	Right Ctrl	E014	E0F014	E01D	E09D	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉
97	Left Arrow	E06B	E0F06B	E02AE04B	E0CBE0AA	4B00	4B00	7300	----	4BE0	4BF0	73E0	9B00
98	Down Arrow	E072	E0F072	E02AE050	E0D0E0AA	5000	5000	----	----	50E0	50E0	91E0	A000
99	Right Arrow	E074	E0F074	E02AE04D	E0CDE0AA	4D00	4000	7400	----	4DE0	4DE0	74E0	9D00 ₆
100	0 or Ins	70	F070	52	D2	5200	5230	----	Note ⁶	5200	523H	9200	Note
101	. or Del	71	F071	53	D3	5300	532F	----	----	5300	532E	9300	----
102	Enter	E05A	E0F05A	E01C	E09C	1C0D	1C0D	1C0A	----	E00D	E00D	E00A	A600

NOTES

Note1 —INT 05H is invoked and a screen dump is performed

Note2 —the scroll lock active bit is toggled

Note3 —the pause state is initiated

Note4 —INT 1BH is invoked

Note5 —the numlock active bit is toggled

Note6 —ALT num pad generates raw ascii code of typed number

Note7 —the caps lock active bit is toggled

Note8 —hold shift lock active until key is released

Note9 —hold control shift active until key is released

Note10—hold alternate shift active until key is released

5.0 PROTOCOL

5.0.1 COMMUNICATION MODE 1 (PC/XT Mode)

The keyboard communicates with the host computer using a synchronous serial protocol at approximately 9600BPS. One start bit, eight data bits, no stop bit, and no parity are used to make up the nine bit data word. When no communications are in progress, the keyboard holds the data line low and the clock line high.

Before starting a transmission, the keyboard lowers the clock line as a Request To Send (RTS). The state of the data line is then checked. If the host system is holding the data line low, transmissions are disabled. The keyboard will retain the keycode for the pressed key in its buffer until the clock and data lines return to the idle state. The keyboard then resumes scanning the keyboard matrix until transmissions are enabled.

When transmissions are enabled, 100 to 250 microseconds after the keyboard drives the clock line low, the keyboard transmits its data in the previously described format. Data is valid during the time the clock line is high and for a minimum of 10 microseconds after the falling edge of the clock line. See Figure 2 for a timing diagram.

< KEYBOARD DATA OUTPUT-XT MODE >

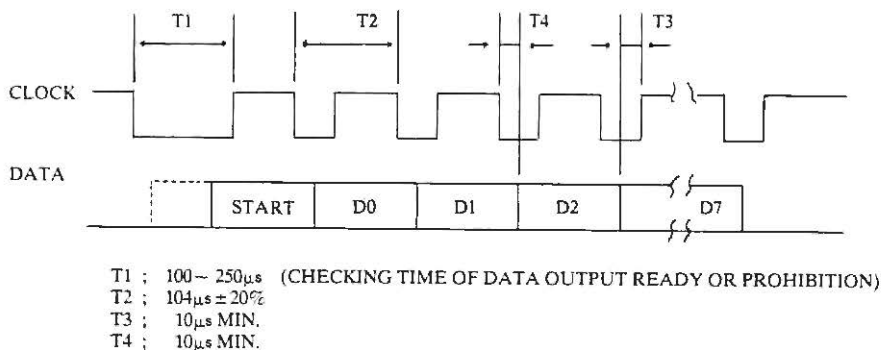
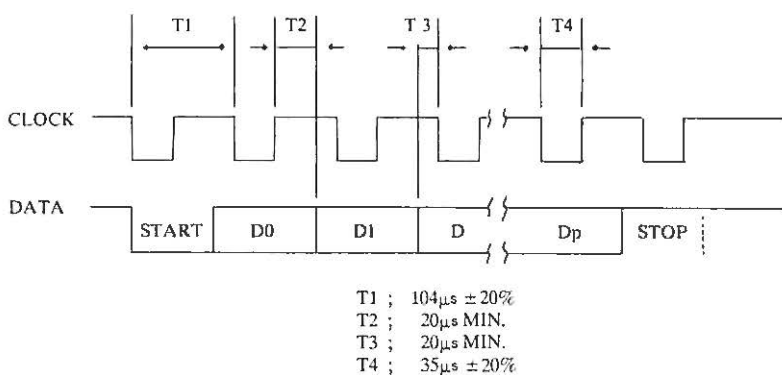


FIGURE 2

5.0.2 COMMUNICATION MODE 2 (AT MODE)

The keyboard communicates with the host computer using a synchronous serial protocol at approximately 9600BPS. One start bit, eight data bits, odd parity, and one stop bit form the eleven bit data word. This communication is bi-directional, with the keyboard clocking all data transfers. When no communications are in progress, the data and clock lines are high, indicating an idle state.

< KEYBOARD DATA OUTPUT-AT MODE > Figure 3A



< KEYBOARD DATA INPUT-AT MODE > Figure 3B

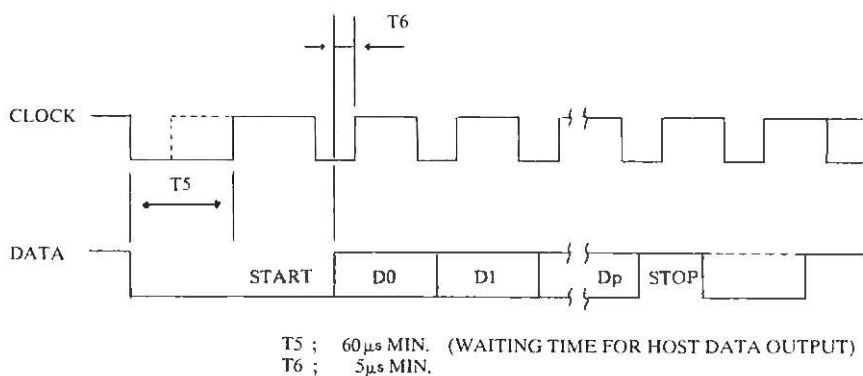


FIGURE 3

Before starting a transmission, the keyboard checks the status of the clock and data lines. Transmissions are disabled if the clock line is low and the code for the pressed key is held in the keyboard buffer until transmissions are enabled. If the clock line is high and the data line is low, the host system is sending a Request To Send (RTS), and the code for the pressed key is stored in the buffer.

When transmissions are enabled and no RTS is detected from the host system, both clock and data line will be high. The keyboard starts a transmission by sending a low start bit, followed by the rest of the data word. Data is valid 20 microseconds minimum prior to the falling edge of the clock. See Figure 3 for timing diagram.

During the transmission of a data word, the keyboard periodically checks the state of the clock line. If the clock line is low during these checks prior to the rising edge of the parity bit, a data collision occurs. When a data collision occurs, the keyboard stops transmitting, returns the code for the pressed key to the keyboard buffer, and prepares to respond to actions requested by the host system.

5.1 COMMANDS FROM THE KEYBOARD TO THE HOST SYSTEM

Keyboard Buffer Overrun — AT and XT Modes

This buffer can store up to sixteen codes for pressed keys. When this buffer is full and the seventeenth code is received, this code is replaced by an Overrun Code. The following chart shows the Overrun Codes for each mode.

XT Mode FF Hex

AT Mode 00 Hex

Codes received after this code are lost until the keyboard clears additional space in the keyboard buffer.

Self Test Passed — AA Hex AT and XT Modes

The keyboard issues this command upon successful completion of the keyboard self test. The self test consists of the following.

XT MODE

1. Memory is cleared.
2. Keyboard buffer is cleared.
3. ROM checksum is read and compared.
4. RAM is tested.
5. Self test completion code is output.
6. AA Hex is output to indicate successful self test.
7. FC Hex is output to indicate a defect in the self test.

AT MODE

1. ROM checksum is read and compared.
2. RAM is tested.
3. AA Hex is output to indicate successful self test.
4. FC Hex is output to indicate a defect in the self test.

This self test is initiated by the host system reset (Ctrl, Alt, Delete) or by Power-on Reset. Upon successful completion of the Self Test during Power-on Reset, the keyboard is set to XT mode if the keyboard detects a low level on the data line for more than 10 microseconds after 5 microseconds from the falling edge of the clock line. If this condition is not met, the keyboard is placed in the AT Mode, and Typematic Rate and Delay are set to the following defaults:

Typematic Rate 10.9 cps
Delay 500 milliseconds

ECHO — EE Hex AT and XT Modes

The Echo Command (EE Hex) is sent in response to an Echo Command from the host system instead of the normal Acknowledge (ACK) for diagnostic purposes.

Acknowledge — FA Hex AT Mode

The keyboard sends an Acknowledge (FA Hex) in response to a valid command from the host system, with the exceptions of the Resend and Echo commands.

Resend — FE Hex AT and XT Modes

The keyboard issues a Resend (FE Hex) in response to inputs which have parity errors, framing errors, or invalid data received from the host system.

KEYBOARD BUFFER OVERRUN — AT and XT Modes

When the 16-character keyboard buffer receives the 17th character, an overflow condition occurs. This condition is communicated to the host system by transmitting the Keyboard buffer Overrun (FF Hex for XT Mode, 00 Hex for AT Mode) to the host system.

5.2 COMMANDS FROM THE HOST SYSTEM TO THE KEYBOARD

Prior to sending commands to the keyboard, the host system must first check to see if the keyboard is sending data. If the keyboard is transmitting, and the data is past the parity bit, the host system must accept the data prior to initiating its own transmission.

If the keyboard's data has not yet reached the tenth clock pulse (Parity Bit), or is not transmitting data, the host system assumes control by lowering the clock line for a minimum of 60 microseconds, then releasing the clock line after clamping the data line low to indicate a start bit. The keyboard will respond with an RTS within 5 microseconds by clocking the start bit into the keyboard. The keyboard continues to clock data as shown in the timing diagram (Figure 3B). The host system must ensure that the data is valid prior to the rising edge and after the falling edge of the keyboard clock pulse.

After the parity bit, the host system should raise the data line to indicate a stop bit. The keyboard checks for a logical high stop bit, then clamps the data line low prior to clock in the stop bit. This signals the host system that the keyboard received the data correctly (Acknowledge). If the host system has not raised the data line to indicate a stop bit, a framing error results and the keyboard continues to clock data until the data line is raised by the host system. Upon receiving either a framing or parity error, the keyboard issues a RESEND to the host system.

All commands from the host system require a response from the keyboard. The keyboard will respond to these commands within 20 microseconds.

The following commands may be sent to the keyboard at any time, following the protocol described for the AT Mode. These commands are valid only in the AT Mode. During the reset command, the keyboard will not respond within 20 microseconds as described above.

RESET — FF Hex

Upon receiving this command, the keyboard transmits an Acknowledge to the host system. The keyboard then waits for the host system to accept the Acknowledge response. The host system will accept the Acknowledge by raising the clock and data lines for a minimum of 500 microseconds.

The keyboard then executes the self test routine similar to the Power-On Reset, and is placed in its default state.

RESEND — FE Hex

Upon receiving this command, the keyboard will transmit the last byte of data sent to the host system.

SET DEFAULT — F6 Hex

This command resets the keyboard to the Power-Up default state. The keyboard responds with an Acknowledge, clears the output buffer, sets the scanset to AT Mode, sets the default typematic rate and delay, and continues to scan the matrix.

DEFAULT DISABLE — F5 Hex

This command is similar to the Set Default command, except the keyboard stops scanning the matrix and waits for further instructions to be sent by the host system.

ENABLE — F4 Hex

Upon receipt of this command the keyboard responds with an Acknowledge, clears the output buffer, and starts scanning the matrix.

SET TYPEMATIC RATE/DELAY — F3 Hex

This command consists of one command byte and one parameter byte. The keyboard Acknowledges the command byte, stops scanning the matrix, and waits for the parameter byte. Upon receiving the parameter byte, the keyboard sends an Acknowledge, sets the typematic rate and delay as indicated in Table 2, and continues scanning the matrix.

If another command is received instead of the parameter byte, the set typematic rate/delay function ends with no change to the existing rate or delay parameters. The new command is processed and the keyboard continues scanning the matrix.

The parameter byte consists of an eight-bit word with bit 7 (most significant bit) always being set. Bits 0-4 set the typematic rate and bits 5-6 set the delay.

Example

1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	Parameter Byte
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Bit Number

The above example shows the default 10.9 cps typematic rate and 500 microsecond delay. Bits 0-4 (010111) correspond to the rate of 10.9 cps shown on Table 2 ii and bits 5-6 (01) correspond to the 500 microsecond delay shown in Table 2 i.

See Table 2 for Typematic Rate/Delay values other than the default settings.

i) Delay

Bit 6 5	Delay ms
0 0	250
0 1	500
1 0	750
1 0	1000

ii) Rate

4	3	Bit 2	1	0	Rate (CPS)
0	0	0	0	0	30.0
0	0	0	0	1	26.7
0	0	0	1	0	24.0
0	0	0	1	1	21.8
0	0	1	0	0	20.0
0	0	1	0	1	18.5
0	0	1	1	0	17.1
0	0	1	1	1	16.0
0	1	0	0	0	15.0
0	1	0	0	1	13.3
0	1	0	1	0	12.0
0	1	0	1	1	10.9
0	1	1	0	0	10.0
0	1	1	0	1	9.2
0	1	1	1	0	8.6
0	1	1	1	1	8.0

4	3	Bit 2	1	0	Rate (CPS)
1	0	0	0	0	7.5
1	0	0	0	1	6.7
1	0	0	1	0	6.0
1	0	0	1	1	5.5
1	0	1	0	0	5.0
1	0	1	0	1	4.6
1	0	1	1	0	4.3
1	0	1	1	1	4.0
1	1	0	0	0	3.7
1	1	0	0	1	3.3
1	1	0	1	0	3.0
1	1	0	1	1	2.7
1	1	1	0	0	2.5
1	1	1	0	1	2.3
1	1	1	1	0	2.1
1	1	1	1	1	2.0

TABLE 2

ECHO — FE Hex

This command is provided for diagnostic purposes. The keyboard shall respond with EE Hex, instead of Acknowledge, and continue scanning the matrix.

SET/RESET STATUS INDICATORS — ED Hex

This command consists of one command byte and one parameter byte. The keyboard Acknowledges the command byte, stops scanning the matrix, and waits for the parameter byte. Upon receiving the parameter byte, the keyboard sends an Acknowledge, sets the status indicators, and starts scanning the matrix.

If another command is received instead of the parameter byte, the keyboard disregards the Set/Reset Status Indicators command without changing the present status of the indicators, processes the new command, and starts scanning the matrix.

The parameter byte is an eight-bit word with bits 3-7 always set to low. Bit 0 is the Scroll Lock Indicator, bit 1 is the Num Lock Indicator, and bit 2 is the Caps Lock Indicator. A high in each individual bit indicates that Indicator is active and the indicator lamp should be on.

Example

0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	PARAMETER BYTE
7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	BIT NUMBER

The above example shows the power-on default of the Tandy 3000 NL. Bit 1 is high indicating Num Lock is active and the Num Lock indicator lamp is on.

READ KEYBOARD ID — F2 Hex

This command causes the keyboard to return two identification bytes AB83 Hex. The keyboard responds with an Acknowledge to the command and stops scanning the matrix. The keyboard then transmits the keyboard ID AB83 Hex and resumes scanning the matrix.

SET/READ SCAN SET — F0 Hex

This command is used to select one of three Scan Sets or to tell the host system which Scan Set is currently being used. This command consists of a command byte and a parameter byte. Upon receiving this command, the keyboard sends an Acknowledge to the host system and waits for the parameter byte. When the keyboard receives the parameter byte, it responds with an Acknowledge.

A parameter byte of 00 Hex will cause the keyboard to transmit the Hex value for the Scan Set currently in use. A parameter byte of 01 Hex selects the Scan Set 1 (XT Scan Codes), 02 Hex selects Scan Set 2 (Default AT Scan Codes), and 03 Hex selects Scan Set 3 (Special AT Scan Codes — See Table 3 for Scan Codes and Default Key State Information). The keyboard resumes scanning the matrix.

TABLE 3

KEY DESCRIPTION	MAKE CODE	BREAK CODE	DEFAULT KEY STATE
Esc	08	F0 08	Make Only
F1	07	F0 07	Make Only
F2	0F	F0 0F	Make Only
F3	17	F0 17	Make Only
F4	1F	F0 1F	Make Only
F5	27	F0 27	Make Only
F6	2F	F0 2F	Make Only
F7	37	F0 37	Make Only
F8	3F	F0 3F	Make Only
F9	47	F0 47	Make Only
F10	4F	F0 4F	Make Only
F11	56	F0 56	Make Only
F12	5E	F0 5E	Make Only
Print Scrn	57	F0 57	Make Only
Scroll Lock	5F	F0 5F	Make Only
Pause or Break	62	F0 62	Make Only
`	0E	F0 0E	Typematic
1	16	F0 16	Typematic
2	1E	F0 1E	Typematic
3	26	F0 26	Typematic
4	25	F0 25	Typematic
5	2E	F0 2E	Typematic
6	36	F0 36	Typematic
7	3D	F0 3D	Typematic
8	3E	F0 3E	Typematic
9	46	F0 46	Typematic
0	45	F0 45	Typematic
-	4E	F0 4E	Typematic
=	55	F0 55	Typematic
Backspace	66	F0 66	Make Only
Insert cursor pad	67	F0 67	Make Only
Home cursor pad	6E	F0 6E	Make Only
Page Up cursor pad	6F	F0 6F	Make Only
Num Lock	76	F0 76	Make Only
/ number pad	77	F0 77	Make Only
* number pad	7E	F0 7E	Make Only
- number pad	84	F0 84	Make Only
Tab	0D	F0 0D	Typematic
q	15	F0 15	Typematic
w	1D	F0 1D	Typematic
e	24	F0 24	Typematic
r	2D	F0 2D	Typematic
t	2C	F0 2C	Typematic
y	35	F0 35	Typematic
u	3C	F0 3C	Typematic
i	43	F0 43	Typematic
o	44	F0 44	Typematic
p	4D	F0 4D	Typematic
[	54	F0 54	Typematic
]	5B	F0 5B	Typematic

\	5C	F0 5C	Typematic
Delete cursor pad	64	F0 64	Typematic
Home cursor pad	65	F0 65	Make Only
Page Up cursor pad	6D	F0 6D	Make Only
7 number pad	6C	F0 6C	Make Only
8 number pad	75	F0 75	Make Only
9 number pad	7D	F0 7D	Make Only
+ number pad	7C	F0 7C	Make Only
Caps Lock	14	F0 14	Make/Break
a	1C	F0 1C	Typematic
s	1B	F0 1B	Typematic
d	23	F0 23	Typematic
f	2B	F0 2B	Typematic
g	34	F0 34	Typematic
h	33	F0 33	Typematic
j	3B	F0 3B	Typematic
k	42	F0 42	Typematic
l	4B	F0 4B	Typematic
;	4C	F0 4C	Typematic
'	52	F0 52	Typematic
Enter	5A	F0 5A	Typematic
4 number pad	6B	F0 6B	Make Only
5 number pad	73	F0 73	Make Only
6 number pad	74	F0 74	Make Only
Left Shift	12	F0 12	Make/Break
z	1A	F0 1A	Typematic
x	22	F0 22	Typematic
c	21	F0 21	Typematic
v	2A	F0 2A	Typematic
b	32	F0 32	Typematic
n	31	F0 31	Typematic
m	3A	F0 3A	Typematic
,	41	F0 41	Typematic
.	49	F0 49	Typematic
Right Shift	59	F0 59	Make/Break
Up Arrow cursor pad	63	F0 63	Typematic
1 number pad	69	F0 69	Make Only
2 number pad	72	F0 72	Make Only
3 number pad	7A	F0 7A	Make Only
Enter number pad	79	F0 79	Make Only
Left Ctrl	11	F0 11	Make/Break
Left Alt	19	F0 19	Make/Break
Spacebar	29	F0 29	Typematic
Right Alt	39	F0 39	Make Only
Right Ctrl	58	F0 58	Make Only
Left Arrow cursor	61	F0 61	Typematic
Down Arrow	60	F0 60	Typematic
Right Arrow	6A	F0 6A	Typematic
Ins number pad	70	F0 70	Make Only
Del number pad	71	F0 71	Make Only

SET ALL KEYS — TYPEMATIC — F7 Hex

SET ALL KEYS — MAKE/BREAK — F8 Hex

SET ALL KEYS — MAKE ONLY — F9 Hex

SET ALL KEYS — TYPEMATIC/MAKE/BREAK — FA Hex

These commands affect Scan Set 3 only, but may be sent using any Scan Set. The keyboard responds with an Acknowledge, clears the output buffer, sets all keys to the function requested by the command, and continues scanning the matrix if it was previously enabled.

SET SINGLE KEY — TYPEMATIC — FB Hex

SET SINGLE KEY — MAKE/BREAK — FC Hex

SET SINGLE KEY — MAKE ONLY — FD Hex

These commands consist of a command byte and a parameter byte. The keyboard responds to the command byte with an Acknowledge and waits for the parameter byte. The parameter byte is the scan code from Scan Set 3 for the key to be changed. Upon receiving the parameter byte, the keyboard sets the selected key to the function selected by the command byte, and continues to scan the matrix if it was previously enabled. These commands affect only Scan Set 3 operation, but may be sent using any Scan Set.

5.3 KEY ROLLOVER

The keyboard incorporates N-Key Rollover in software to avoid loss of keystroke data during high speed entry. N-Key Rollover is defined as all keys pressed and released will be output in the proper sequence. However, when the keyboard detects more than four keys pressed during a scan of the matrix, the keyboard does not output the keycodes until one or more of the keys are released. If the released key was not properly detected as a pressed key, an error condition occurs and the keyboard issues an buffer overrun code to the host system.

5.4 AUTOREPEAT

The power-on default condition will cause the last key pressed to repeat at 10.9 characters-per-second after a 500 millisecond delay. This may be changed by the system when the keyboard is using the AT Communications Mode.

5.5 BUFFERING

The keyboard is capable of storing 16 scan codes in a first in/first out (FIFO) circular buffer. When the buffer overflows, the last code is replaced by a Hex 00, in AT Mode and a Hex FF, in XT Mode.

5.6 STATUS INDICATORS

Three LED Status Indicators are provided: Num Lock, Caps Lock, and Scroll Lock.

These indicators are located in the keytop of each respective key. The keyboard will power up with all indicators OFF, except when the host system (such as the Tandy 3000 NL) sets them to ON.

6.0 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

The interface consists of two bi-directional lines, clock and data, which are controlled by 74LS125 equivalent buffers. The keyboard side is terminated by 2200 Ohm resistors. All voltage levels are TTL compatible and the keyboard drivers are capable of sinking 20 mA minimum including the current sourced by the pullup resistors on the keyboard.

6.1 CONNECTOR

The connector is a 5-pin DIN connector. Connections are shown in the following table.

Table 4

PIN #	SIGNAL
1	CLOCK
2	DATA
3	NO CONNECTION
4	LOGIC GROUND
5	+5 VOLTS DC

6.2 CHASSIS GROUND

Chassis ground is isolated from logic ground.

6.3 POWER REQUIREMENTS

The keyboard requires 5 Volts DC, +/-5%, at 500 milliamps (max).

7.0 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

7.1 TEMPERATURE

OPERATING.....0 to 50 degrees C
NON-OPERATING.....-20 to 60 degrees C

7.2 RELATIVE HUMIDITY

20% to 90% non-condensing

7.3 SHOCK

Operating and non-operating.....10G 11 ms duration

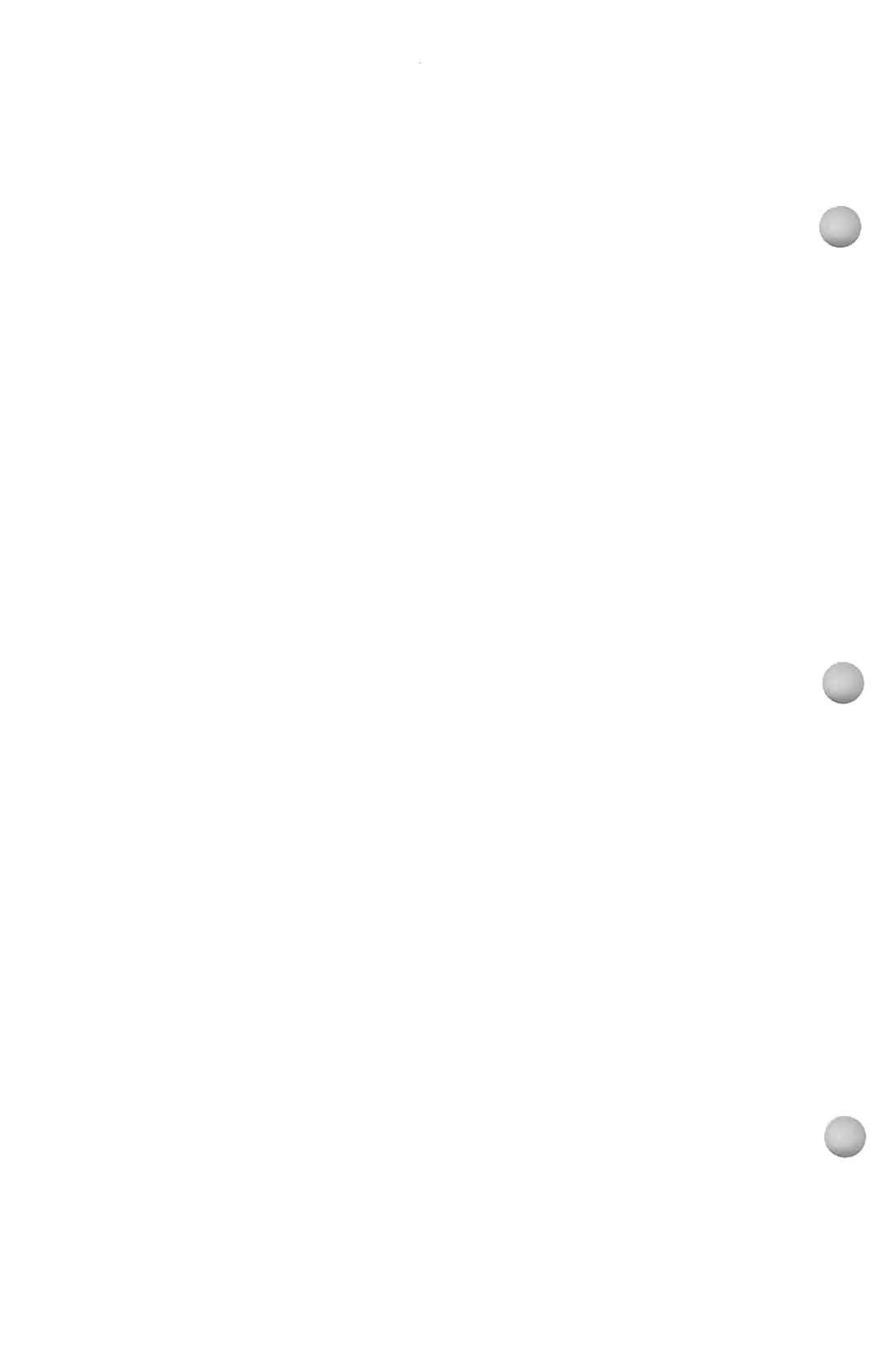
7.4 VIBRATION

Operating and non-operating.....0.3 mm amplitude 10 to 55 Hz

8.0 RELIABILITY

8.1 SWITCH LIFE

Switch life of the keyboard is a minimum of 20 million cycles.



Pin Connections

P1.0	1	40	VCC
P1.1	2	39	P0.0 (A00)
P1.2	3	38	P0.1 (A01)
P1.3	4	37	P0.2 (A02)
P1.4	5	36	P0.3 (A03)
P1.5	6	35	P0.4 (A04)
P1.6	7	34	P0.5 (A05)
P1.7	8	33	P0.6 (A06)
RESET	9	32	P0.7 (A07)
(RD) P3.0	10	31	EA
(TxD) P3.1	11	30	ALE
(WTD) P3.2	12	29	PSEN
(MT1) P3.3	13	28	P2.7 (A15)
(TD) P3.4	14	27	P2.6 (A14)
(T1) P3.5	15	26	P2.5 (A13)
(WR) P3.6	16	25	P2.4 (A12)
(RD) P3.7	17	24	P2.3 (A11)
XTAL2	18	23	P2.2 (A10)
XTAL1	19	22	P2.1 (A9)
VSS	20	21	P2.0 (A8)

DOCUMENT CONTROL SECTION

DATE

DATE

DATE

CHECK

CHECK

RECEIVED

FUJITSU LIMITED

1 / 3

PIN DESCRIPTION

V_{SS}

Circuit ground potential.

V_{CC}

+5V power supply during operation, programming and verification.

Port 0

Port 0 is an 8-bit open drain bidirectional I/O port.

It is also the multiplexed low-order address and data bus when using external memory. It is used for data input and output during programming and verification. Port 0 can sink/source two TTL loads.

Port 1

Port 1 is an 8-bit quasi-bidirectional I/O port. It is used for the low-order address byte during programming and verification. Port 1 can sink/source one TTL load.

Port 2

Port 2 is an 8-bit quasi-bidirectional I/O port. It also emits the high-order 8 bits of address when accessing external memory. It is used for the high-order address and the control signals during programming and verification. Port 2 can sink/source one TTL load.

Port 3

Port 3 is an 8-bit quasi-bidirectional I/O port. It also contains the interrupt, timer, serial port and RD and WR pins that are used by various options. The output latch corresponding to a special function must be programmed to a one (1) for that function to operate. Port 3 can sink/source one TTL load. The special functions are assigned to the pins of Port 3, as follows:

- RXD/data (P3.0). Serial port's receiver data input (asynchronous) or data input/output (synchronous).
- TXD/clock (P3.1). Serial port's transmitter data output (asynchronous) or clock output (synchronous).
- INT0 (P3.2). Interrupt 0 input or gate control input for counter 0.
- INT1 (P3.3). Interrupt 1 input or gate control input for counter 1.
- T0 (P3.4). Input to counter 0.
- T1 (P3.5). Input to counter 1.
- WR (P3.6). The write control signal latches the data byte from Port 0 into the External Data Memory.
- RD (P3.7). The read control signal enables External Data Memory to Port 0.

RST/V_{PD}

A low to high transition on this pin (at approximately 3V) resets the 8051. If V_{PD} is held within its spec (approximately +5V), while V_{CC} drops below spec, V_{PD} will provide standby power to the RAM. When V_{PD} is low, the RAM's current is drawn from V_{CC}. A small internal resistor permits power-on reset using only a capacitor connected to V_{CC}.

ALE/PROG

Provides Address Latch Enable output used for latching the address into external memory during normal operation. Receives the program pulse input during EPROM programming.

PSEN

The Program Store Enable output is a control signal that enables the external Program Memory to the bus during normal fetch operations.

EA/V_{DD}

When held at a TTL high level, the 8051 executes instructions from the internal ROM/EPROM when the PC is less than 4096. When held at a TTL low level, the 8051 fetches all instructions from external Program Memory. The pin also receives the 21V EPROM programming supply voltage.

XTAL1

Input to the oscillator's high gain amplifier. A crystal or external source can be used.

XTAL2

Output from the oscillator's amplifier. Required when a crystal is used.

DOCUMENT CONTROL SECTION

DATE

REV.	DATE	REVISION	CHECK	DESCRIPTION
1				

MODEL CUSTOM IC PIN SIGNAL

AND FUNCTION

DATE, RE.

CHECK

FUJITSU LIMITED

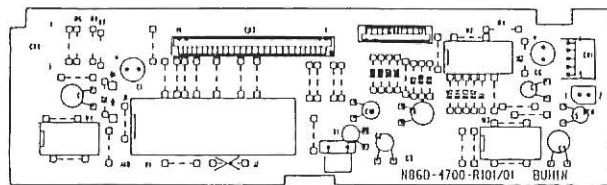
1

2

3

61.3. FDXA-4902-5

DATE	DOCUMENT CONTROL SECTION
	→



LESS THAN 7

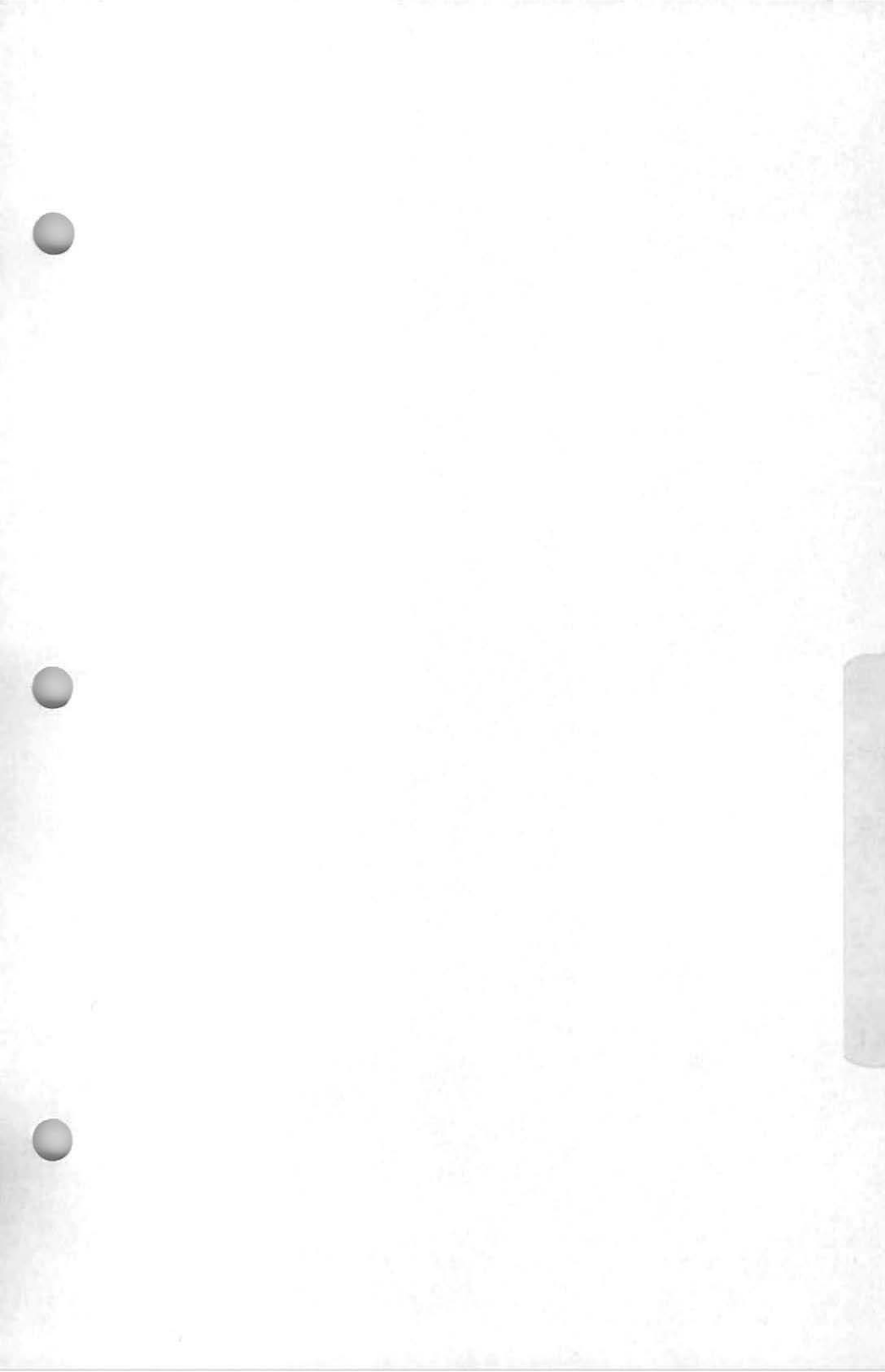
NOTE

1. CAPACITORS AND RESONATOR (X1) TO BE BENT AS ABOVE DRAWING AFTER MOUNTED.
CAPACITOR (C6) TO BE NOT BENT.
2. CONNECTORS (CN1.CN2.CN3) TO BE NOT FLOATED.
3. JUMPER WIRE J2 TO BE NOT MOUNTED.
4. JUMPER WIRE IS 30 POSITIONS (CONTAIN J1)
5. COMPONENTS HEIGHT IS LESS THAN 7mm.

MFG										DATE									
PCB ASSEMBLE										REV									
N86D-4703 - P 101 /01										6									
FUEITSU LIMITED										/									
PART										QTY									
5.000										1									
CIRCUIT										CIRCUIT									
REV										REV									
1										1									









Disk Drive



SONY

MECHATRONIC PRODUCTS GROUP

PART NO. : 00-0065

REVISION : 12-88

ISSUE DATE : May 10, 88

Product Specifications

MODEL NAME :

8790144 (MP-F11W-70D)

*** Table of Contents ***

1. Description
2. Specifications
 - 2.1 Configuration
 - 2.2 Physical Dimensions
 - 2.3 Weight
 - 2.4 Performance
 - 2.4.1 Capacity
 - 2.4.2 Transfer Rate
 - 2.4.3 Access Time
 - 2.4.4 Functional
 - 2.4.5 Reliability
 - 2.5 Input Power Requirements
 - 2.5.1 Power Consumption
 - 2.5.2 Supply Voltages
 - 2.5.3 Current Profile
 - 2.6 Environmental Limits and Orientation
 - 2.6.1 Temperature
 - 2.6.2 Humidity
 - 2.6.3 Vibration
 - 2.6.4 Shock
 - 2.6.5 Orientation
3. Interface
 - 3.1 Pin Assignment
 - 3.1.1 Signal Connector
 - 3.1.2 Signal Connector Pin Assignment
 - 3.2 DC Characteristics of Interface Signals
 - 3.2.1 Output Signals from Drive
 - 3.2.2 Inputs Signal to Drive

3.3 Signal Definitions

- 3.3.1 DRIVE SELECT 0,1,2,3
- 3.3.2 MOTOR ON
- 3.3.3 STEP
- 3.3.4 DIRECTION
- 3.3.5 HEAD SELECT
- 3.3.6 WRITE GATE
- 3.3.7 WRITE DATA
- 3.3.8 INDEX
- 3.3.9 TRACK 00
- 3.3.10 WRITE PROTECT
- 3.3.11 READ DATA
- 3.3.12 DISK CHANGE

3.4 Timing Requirements

- 3.4.1 Head Access
- 3.4.2 TRACK 00 Signal
- 3.4.3 Write Data Timing
- 3.4.4 Read Data Timing
- 3.4.5 Index Pulse
- 3.4.6 Disk Change

3.5 Power on and Power off Requirements

- 3.5.1 Data Protection
- 3.5.2 Power Supply Sequencing

3.6 Disk Motor Rotation and Disk Insertion

3.7 Power-On Reset Timing

4. Safety

5. Power On Initialization

1. Description

This document describes the specifications of the SONY 3.5" Micro Floppy Disk Drive, the MP-F11W-70D that is designed for general applications, even for lap-top computers. It features a low profile, a low power consumption, single power voltage, a light weight, ruggedness, high reliability and easiness to use.

2. Specifications

2.1 Configuration

The drive consists of Read/Write heads, head positioning mechanism, disk motor, interface logic circuit and Read/Write circuit.

2.2 Physical Dimensions

The detailed physical dimensions are shown in Figure 2.1.
The main dimensions are:

- 1) Height : 25.4 mm (1.0 inch)
- 2) Width : 101.6 mm (4.0 inches)
- 3) Depth : 150.0 mm (5.9 inches)
(excluding a front panel thickness)

2.3 Weight

Weight : 425 g (0.94 pound)

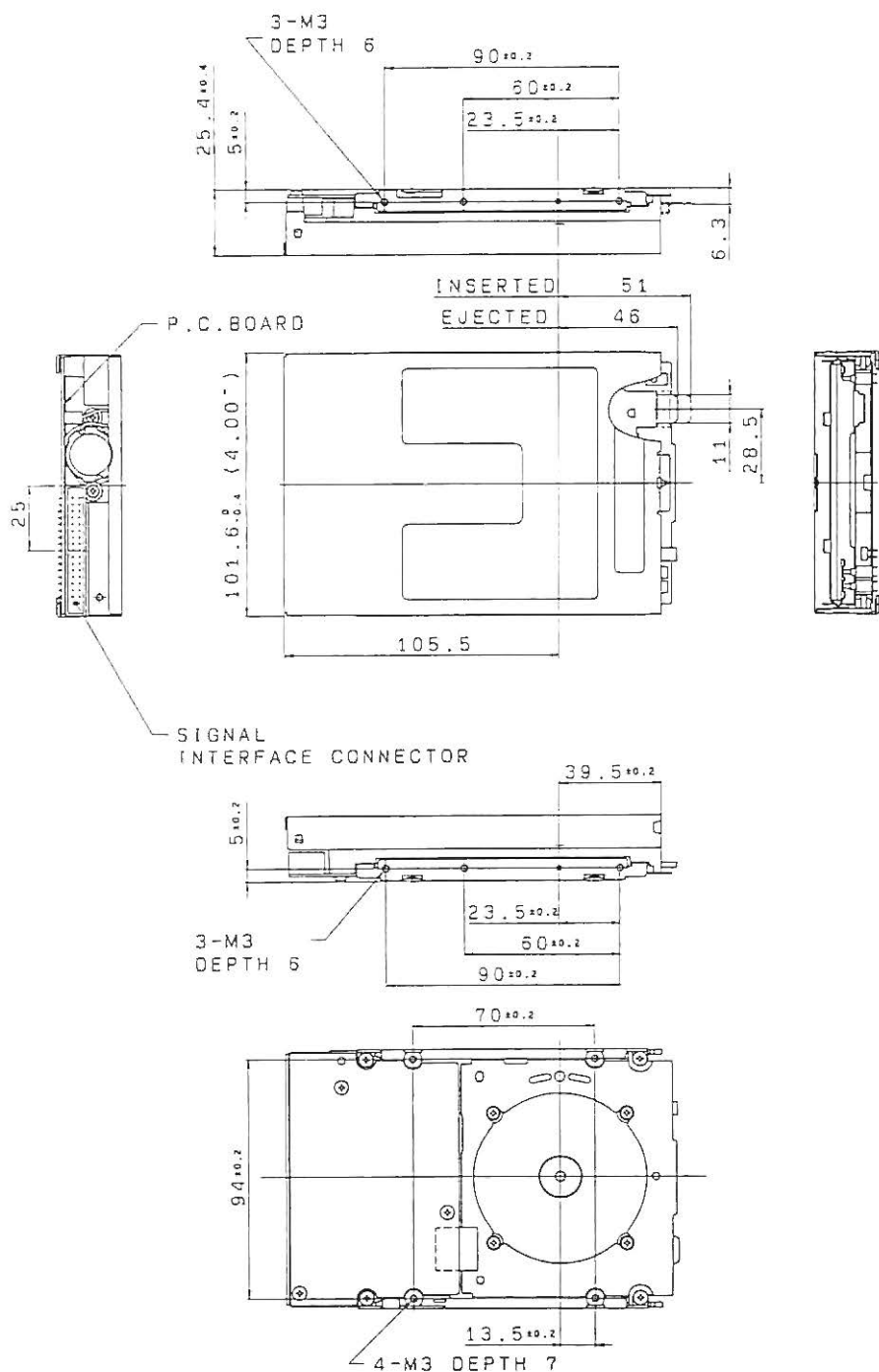
2.4 Performance

2.4.1 Recording Capacity (unformatted, MFM)

1.0 Mbytes/disk 0.5 Mbytes/surface

2.4.2 Transfer Rate

Burst transfer rate : 250 Kbits/sec for MFM



MP-F11W/F17W-70D OUTLINE DIMENSIONS

2.4.3 Access Time

- a. Track to Track Slew Rate : 3 msec min.
- b. Head Settling Time : 15 msec max.
- c. Motor Start Time : 500 msec max.

2.4.4 Functional

- a. Rotation Speed : 300 rpm
The continuous speed variation is within $\pm 1.5\%$.
The instantaneous speed variation is within $\pm 1.5\%$.
- b. Recording Density : 8717 BPI
(Side 1, Track 79)
- c. Track Density : 135 TPI
- d. Number of Cylinders : 80
- e. Number of Tracks : 160
- f. R/W Heads : 2

2.4.5 Reliability

- a. Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF) : 30,000 POH
- b. Mean Time to Repair (MTTR) : 30 minutes
- c. Preventive Maintenance (PM) : Not Required
- d. Components life : 5 years or 15,000 POH
- e. Error Rate :
 - 1. Soft Read Error : Less than 1 per 10^9 bits read
 - 2. Hard Read Error : Less than 1 per 10^{12} bits read
 - 3. Seek Error : Less than 1 per 10^6 seeks

2.5 Input Power Requirements

2.5.1 Power Consumption

Standby	0.1 W max.
Operation (read/write mode)	1.1 W typ.

2.5.2 Supply Voltages

Voltage	Max. Ripple	Current
+5.0V $\pm 10\%$	0.1Vpp	20 mA max. (Standby) 220 mA Typ. (Read/Write) 680 mA max. (Motor starts) 890 mA max. (Step during motor rotates)

2.5.3 Current Profile

See Figure 2.2

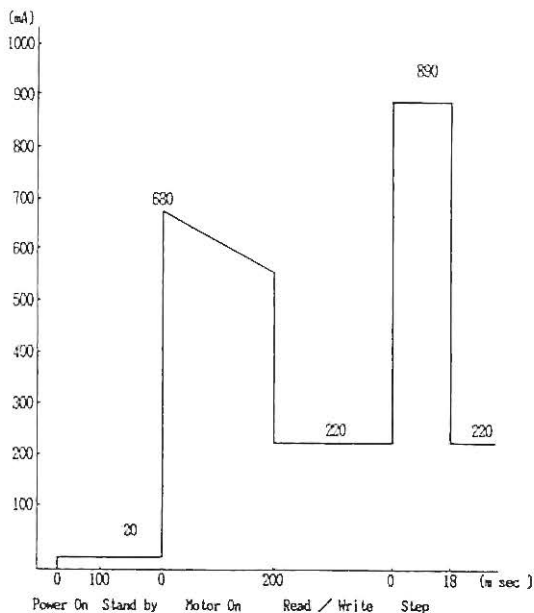


Figure 2.2. Current Profile

2.6 Environmental Limits

2.6.1 Temperature Range

Operating : 5°C to 50°C ambient (40°F to 122°F)
Transportation : -40°C to 60°C (-40°F to 140°F)
Storage : -20°C to 60°C (-20°F to 140°F)

2.6.2 Humidity Range

Operating : 8% to 80% relative humidity with a wet bulb temperature of 29°C (85°F) and no condensation.
Transportation and Storage : 5% to 95% relative humidity with a wet bulb temperature of 29°C (85°F) and no condensation.

2.6.3 Vibration

Operating : The unit can perform Read/Write operations without errors at continuous vibration from 10 to 500 Hz at a maximum of 0.5G along each of the two mutually perpendicular axes.

Transportation and Storage : The unit can withstand continuous vibration from 10 to 500 Hz with a maximum level of 2.0G along each of the three mutually perpendicular axes without any degradation of any characteristics below the performance specifications.

2.6.4 Shock

Operating : The unit can withstand a shock of 5.0G shock for 11 msec with a 1/2 sine wave shape in each of the two mutually perpendicular axis while performing normal read/write functions without damage or any loss of data.

Transportation and Storage : The unit when unpacked can withstand an 11 msec with a 1/2 sine wave shock of 70G on any of the three mutually perpendicular axis.

2.6.5 Orientation

The drive can be set horizontal or vertical including a top-loading. The detail orientations are shown in Figure 2.3.

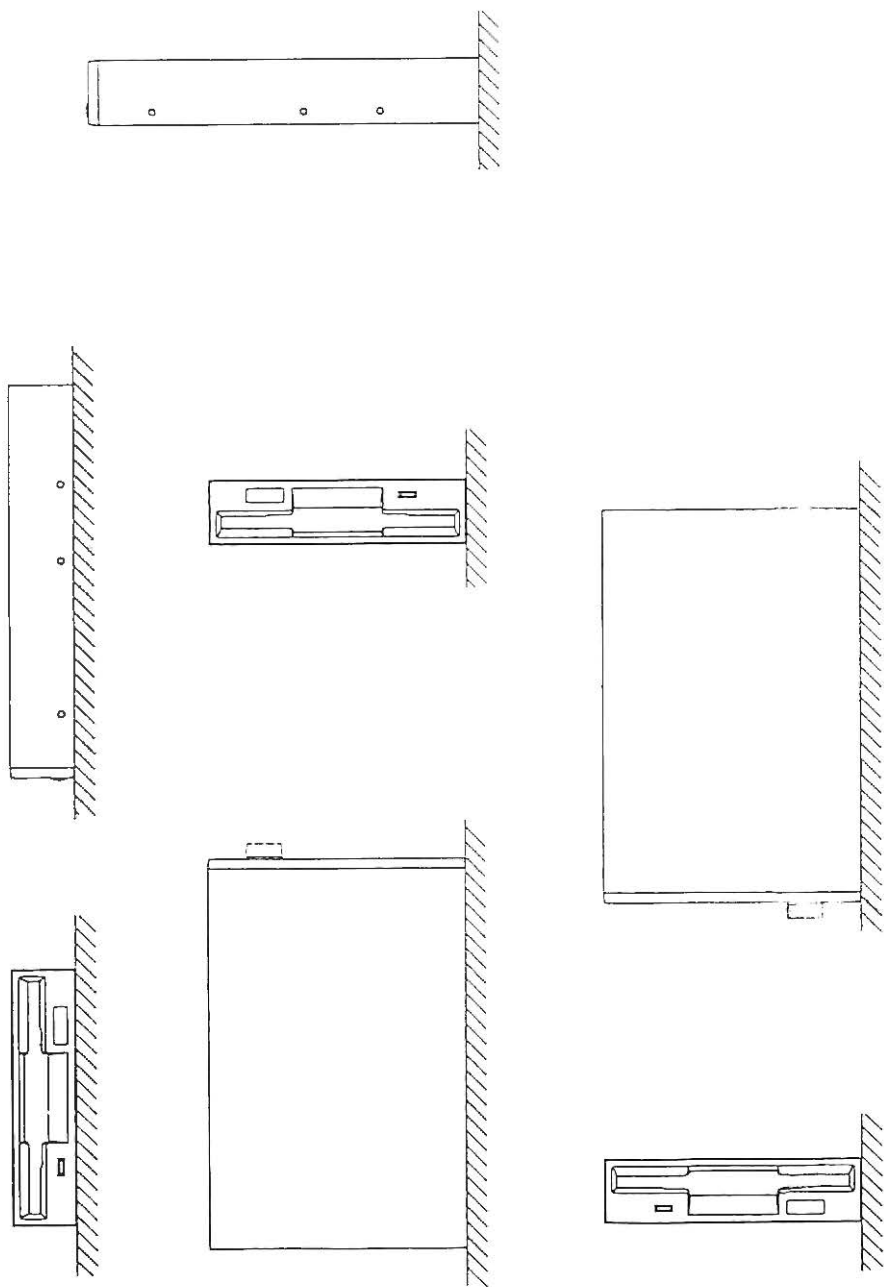


Figure 2.3. Orientations

3. Signal Interface

3.1 Connector and Pin Assignments

3.1.1 Signal connector

Receptacle : 3M 3414-6500xx or equivalent

Cable : 3M 3365/34 or equivalent

3.1.2 Signal Connector Pin Assignment

PIN	SIGNAL DESCRIPTION	PIN	SIGNAL DESCRIPTION
1	N.C.	2	N.C.
3	N.C.	4	N.C.
5	+ 5V	6	DRIVE SELECT 3
7	+ 5V	8	INDEX
9	+ 5V	10	DRIVE SELECT 0
11	+ 5V	12	DRIVE SELECT 1
13	RETURN	14	DRIVE SELECT 2
15	RETURN	16	MOTOR ON
17	RETURN	18	DIRECTION
19	RETURN	20	STEP
21	RETURN	22	WRITE DATA
23	RETURN	24	WRITE GATE
25	RETURN	26	TRACK 00
27	RETURN	28	WRITE PROTECT
29	N.C.	30	READ DATA
31	N.C.	32	HEAD SELECT
33	N.C.	34	DISK CHANGE

3.2 DC Characteristics of Interface Signals

3.2.1 Output Signal from Drive

C-MOS Open Drain Driver is used for the Output.

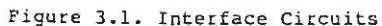
Output voltage (VOH) : Open
Output voltage (VOL) : 0.4 V max.
Output current (IOL) : 48 mA max.

3.2.2 Input Signal to Drive

Input voltage (VIH) : 2.2 V min.
Input voltage (VIL) : 0.8 V max.

The detail interface circuits are shown in Figure 3.1.

Recommended driver ICs : 7406, 7438 or equivalent.



3.3 Signal Definitions

3.3.1 DRIVE SELECT 0,1,2,3

The SELECT lines are used to enable or disable all other interface lines except a MOTOR ON line. When the SELECT line is true (low), the drive is enabled and is considered active. When the SELECT line is false (high), all controlled inputs except the MOTOR ON line are ignored and all output lines are disabled.

N.B. IN USE (LED) lamp

When a drive is selected, the IN USE lamp on the selected drive is turned on, and when a drive is not selected, it is turned off.

3.3.2 MOTOR ON

When this input is true (low), the spindle motor will start to run. When this line is made false (high), the spindle motor will decelerate and stop. The spindle motor will not rotate until a disk is inserted even if the MOTOR ON signal is low (true). If the MOTOR ON signal becomes false during either a write or erase operation, the disk motor will not stop rotating until both the ERASE GATE signal and the WRITE GATE signal become high (false).

3.3.3 STEP

When a drive is selected, a true (low) pulse on this line will cause the read/write heads to move to the adjacent track. The direction of the head movement is determined by the DIRECTION input at the trailing edge of the pulse. The step operation can be performed even if there is no disk inserted in the drive.

3.3.4 DIRECTION

When a drive is selected, a false (high) level on this input will cause a STEP input to move the read/write head away from the disk spindle. A true (low) level will cause a STEP input to move the read/write head toward the drive spindle.

3.3.5 HEAD SELECT

When a drive is selected, a true (low) level on this input will cause Head 1 (upper) to be selected. A false (high) level on this input will cause Head 0 (lower) to be selected. If the HEAD SELECT signal changes during either write or erase operation, the head will not be changed until both ERASE GATE and WRITE GATE signal become high (false).

3.3.6 WRITE GATE

When a drive is selected and this line is made true (low), the write current circuit is enabled and information in the WRITE DATA input may be written.

3.3.7 WRITE DATA

If a drive is selected, and the WRITE GATE is true (low), a true pulse (low) on the WRITE DATA line will cause a bit to be written on the disk. Pulses on this line will be neglected when WRITE GATE is false (high). No pre-compensation is required.

3.3.8 INDEX

When the drive is selected, a true (low) pulse is generated on this line by each revolution of the spindle.

3.3.9 TRACK 00

This line is true (low) when the drive is selected and the Read/Write head is positioned on track 00.

3.3.10 WRITE PROTECT

If a write-protect disk or no disk is inserted while a drive is selected, this line will be true (low) and the drive will not be able to write data.

3.3.11 READ DATA

When the drive is selected, a true (low) pulse is generated on this line every time a bit is detected.

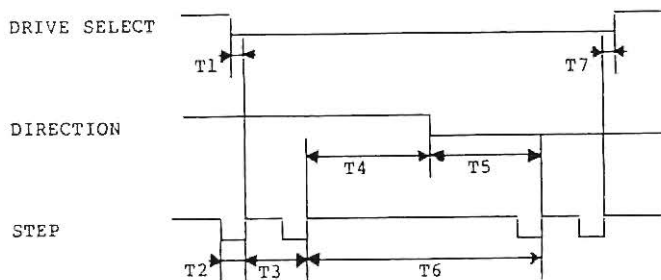
3.3.12 DISK CHANGE

This line is true (low) whenever a disk is removed from the drive. The line will remain true (low) until both the following conditions have been met:

1. A disk is inserted.
2. A STEP pulse has been received when the drive is selected.

3.4 Timing Requirements

3.4.1 Head Access



T1 : 0.5 usec min.

T2 : 0.5 usec min.

T3 : 3.0 msec min.

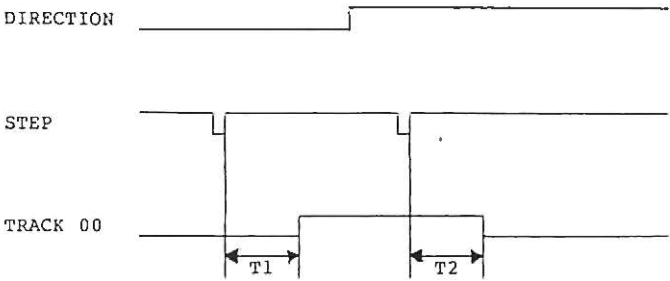
T4 : 0.5 usec min.

T5 : 0.5 usec min.

T6 : 18 msec min.

T7 : 0.5 usec min.

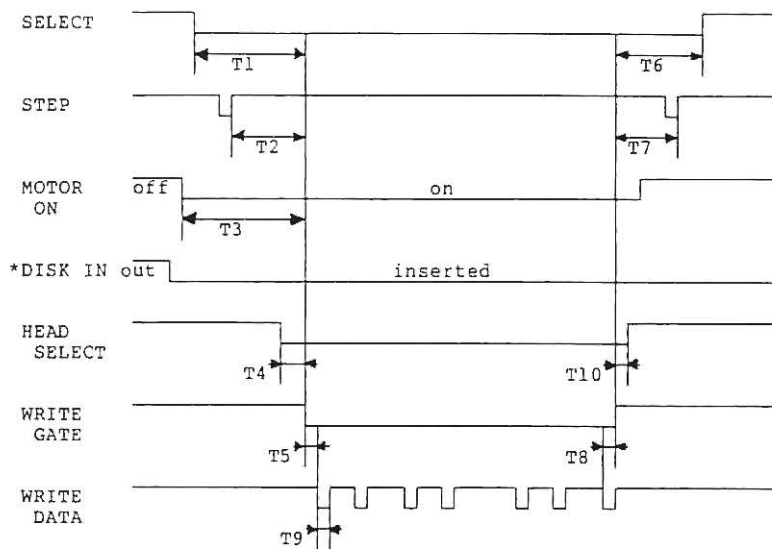
3.4.2 TRACK 00 Signal



T1 : 2.9 msec max.

T2 : 2.9 msec max.

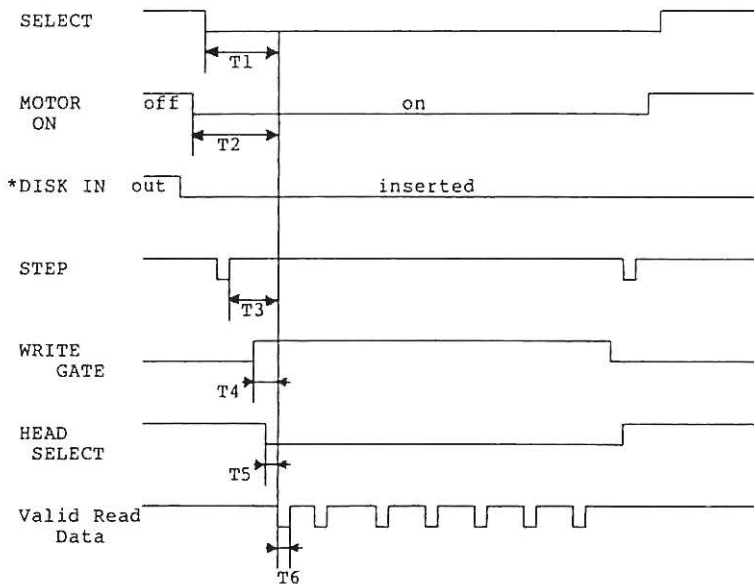
3.4.3 Write Data Timing



T1 : 0.5 usec min.	T6 : 0.5 usec min.
T2 : 18 msec min.	T7 : 905 usec min.
T3 : 500 msec min.	T8 : 8 usec max.
T4 : 100 usec min.	T9 : 150 ns min., 2000 ns max.
T5 : 8 usec max.	T10 : See 3.3.5

*DISK IN, the disk-in sensor signal inside the drive, is low when a disk is inserted in the drive.

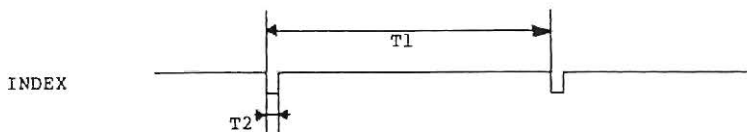
3.4.4 Read Data Timing



T1 : 0.5 usec max.	T4 : 935 usec max
T2 : 500 msec max.	T5 : 100 usec max
T3 : 18 msec max.	T6 : 500 nsec min., 1200 nsec max.

*DISK IN, the disk-in sensor signal inside the drive, is low when a disk is inserted in the drive.

3.4.5 Index Pulse

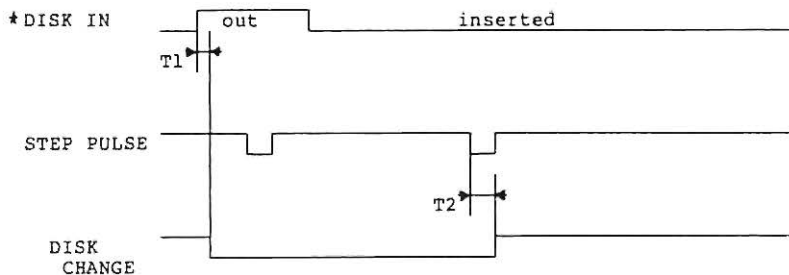


T1* : 197 msec min., 203 msec max.

T2 : 1.5 msec min., 1.7 msec max.

*When the disk motor rotation is at the steady state.

3.4.6 Disk Change



T1 : 0.5 usec max. T2 : 1.0 usec max.

*DISK IN, the disk-in sensor signal inside the drive, is low when a disk is inserted in the drive.

3.5 Power On and Power off Requirements

3.5.1 Data Protection

Turning power on or off will not cause any damage to recorded data on the disk as long as the drive is not in the midst of writing when the power is shut off or supplied.

3.5.2 Power Supply Sequencing

When the power is turned on, no special power supply sequencing is required. When the power is turned off, the power supply must fall monotonically to zero volt.

3.6 Power-On Reset Timing

A drive will be ready in 100 msec after power on. It takes up to 100 msec to reset the control IC of the drive.

4. Safety

The drive will meet the following product safety regulations:

U.L. 478

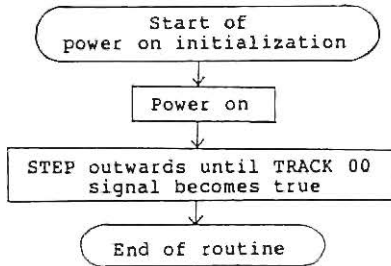
C.S.A. C.22.2, No.154

U.L. 94V-0 for Front Bezel

5. Power On Initialization

In order to reduce the peak current requirement when drives are used in a daisy chain, the MP-F11W-70D has been designed not to seek track 00 automatically. If all the drives connected in the daisy chain sought track 00 simultaneously, this would place a significant power drain on the host system. Thus, the host system must perform the following routine just after power on in order to reset the track counter inside the drive.

Power on initialization





SONY

MECHATRONIC PRODUCTS GROUP

PART NO. : 061

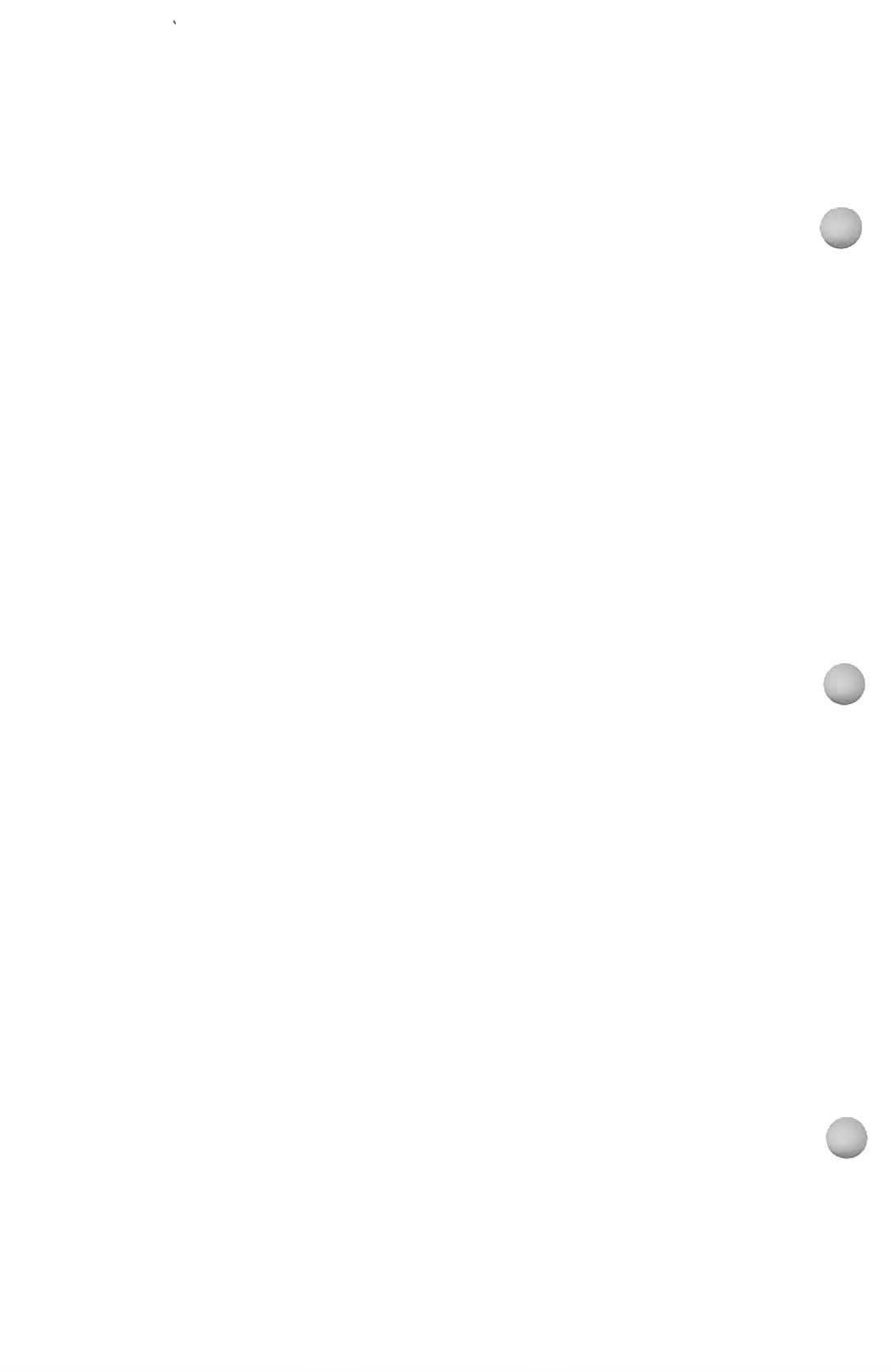
REVISION : 11-88

ISSUE DATE : Mar. 4, 88

OEM MANUAL

MODEL NAME :

MP-F11W / MP-F17W



SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page ; 1

*** Table of Contents ***

1. INTRODUCTION
 - 1-1. Purpose
 - 1-2. General description
2. MECHANISM
 - 2-1. Chassis
 - 2-2. Cassette compartment mechanism
 - 2-3. Disk chucking and disk rotation mechanism
 - 2-4. Magnetic head carriage
 - 2-5. Head positioning mechanism
 - 2-6. Detection mechanism
3. ELECTRONICS
 - 3-1. Read/write circuit
 - 3-2. Control circuit
 - 3-3. Spindle motor driver circuit
 - 3-4. Stepping motor driver circuit
4. SPECIFICATIONS
 - 4-1. Drive performance
 - 4-2. Dimensional data
5. INTERFACE DESCRIPTION
 - 5-1. Host system interface
 - 5-2. Signal interface
6. EJECT BUTTON, INDICATOR AND SELECT SWITCH
 - 6-1. Eject button
 - 6-2. Indicator
 - 6-3. Drive select switch

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 2

7. OPERATION

- 7-1. Disk cartridge description
- 7-2. Disk cartridge preparation for write protection
- 7-3. Operation
- 7-4. Disk precaution

8. ORIENTATION AND INSTALLATION

- 8-1. Orientation
- 8-2. Installation

9. ERROR DETECTION AND CORRECTION

- 9-1. Write error
- 9-2. Read error

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 3

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. Purpose

This material provides the information necessary to interface the MP-F11W/MP-F17W Micro Floppydisk drive to a floppy disk controller.

1-2. General description

The SONY Micro Floppydisk Drive represents a technological break through offering extreme lightweight, compactness, (101.6mm wide by 25.4mm high by 150.0mm deep, weighting 425g) that provides a versatile data storage component for the systems designer.

SONY's leadership in high-density recording techniques, perfected in video technology, enabled SONY engineers to develop the 3.5" Micro Floppydisk standard. Yet an unformatted, storage capacity of 1MBytes (MP-F11W, double density), 2MBytes (MP-F17W high density) in 135 tracks per inch provides that of conventional 5.25" disks or more.

A semi-rigid protective shell provides protection unique to the Micro Floppydisk. When the disk is inserted into or taken out of the drive, its shutter automatically opens and closes to protect the disk from dust, dirt, fingerprints and other foreign objects that might degrade performance. A metal centering hub allows positioning with greater ease and more positive accuracy in over 30,000 disk interchanges.

The SONY proprietary read/write and tunnel erase head, developed using video techniques, is positioned by a precision stepper motor assembly, providing fast access while maintaining high positioning accuracy. High coercivity media accomplishes high data integrity with the SONY high density head.

The SONY Micro Floppydisk drive is interface signal-compatible with conventional 5" floppydisk drives. Accordingly, popular FDC chips such as Western Digital FD1WDs, NEC μ PD765 series can be used.

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 4

Whether your application is small business systems, test instruments, personal computers or any related application, you will find that the Micro Floppydisk drive will offer a whole new range of possibilities.

The Micro Floppydisk drive offers the following features :

- * 3.5" floppy disk media with automatic shutter mechanism
- * Large capacity 1MB(MP-F11W) / 2MB(MP-F17W)
- * Small footprint
- * Light weight
- * Low power consumption
- * High track density 135 TPI
- * High reliability MTBF 30,000POHs
- * High transfer rate 250Kbps(1MB), 500Kbps(2MB)

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 5

2. MECHANISM

The mechanism mounted on the chassis consists of a cassette compartment mechanism, a disk chucking and disk rotation mechanism, magnetic heads and carriage, a head positioning mechanism, some detectors, and so on.

2-1. Chassis

The chassis made of aluminum diecast is strong, highly durable, and precision-manufactured. This is the base structure for mounting most of mechanisms and printed circuit board.

2-2. Cassette compartment mechanism

The cassette compartment mechanism precisely positions the cassette on chassis by one touch operation. The mechanism is designed that the cassette is ejected easily as well.

2-3. Disk chucking and disk rotation mechanism

The disk chucking mechanism is mounted on the top of the thin brushless direct drive DC motor. The disk chucking mechanism precisely positions a disk and drives it.

The disk rotation mechanism directly mounted in a chassis consists of a printed circuit board for drive control, a rotor magnet, a rotor yoke, a stator yoke, and so on.

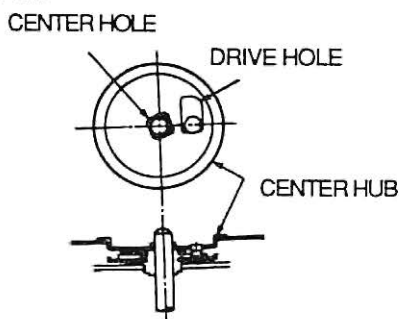


Fig. 2-1 Chucking Mechanism

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

2-4. Magnetic heads and head carriage

The tunnel erase type head with narrow track width is developed to attain a 135 TPI track density. The head is designed for higher Read signal quality. The head surface is treated for less the disk wear and the head wear. The head comprises a read/write gap to read and write data and two erase gaps to erase the recorded track edge immediately after recording. The heads and the carriage are very important parts in the MFDD, so they are especially precision-assembled.

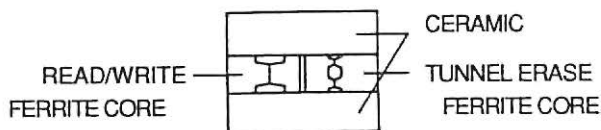


Fig. 2-2 Magnetic Head

2-5. Head positioning mechanism

The head positioning mechanism consists of a stepping motor, a lead screw, a bearing, and a guide shaft. The head carriage is held with the guide shaft and the lead screw with stepping motor. The 4-phase stepping motor rotates 2 micro steps ($18^\circ \times 2$) per track.

2-6. Detection mechanism

a) Write protect

The micro switch is mounted on the printed circuit board to detect the position of the write protect tab on the disk. If a write-protected disk is inserted and the micro switch is not pushed down, the recording/erasing power is not supplied and the data is protected from an erroneous writing command.

b) Track 00

The mechanism consists of a photo-interrupter to detect the outermost track position (Track 00). The head carriage is not moved more outer track, after the MFDD detects the Track 00. So, the head and head positioning mechanism do not get damaged.

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 7

c) Index

Since the MFDD is designed to make the spindle motor and the disk be fixed in the same corresponding position, the Index pulse is generated by the spindle motor circuit.

d) Disk-in

If the cassette pushes the micro switch on the printed circuit board, it is detected that the cassette is inserted.

e) Density select (Only for MP-F17Ws)

The micro switch is mounted on the printed circuit board to detect the hole of the high density disk. If a high density cassette is inserted and the micro switch is not pushed, the MFDD works in high density mode. If a normal density disk is inserted and the micro switch is pushed down, the MFDD works in normal density mode.

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 8

3. ELECTRONICS

The electronics of the MFDD consists of a read/write circuit, a control circuit and some drivers, and so forth. The electronic circuits are mounted on two printed circuit boards (Motor and Logic boards).

3-1. Read/write circuit

The read/write circuit consists of a read circuit, a write circuit, and a power on detection circuit. These circuits are mostly included in a read/write amplifier LSI(bipolar) on the Logic board.

3-2. Control circuit

The control circuit consists of an input and output interface circuit, a spindle motor control circuit, a stepping motor control circuit, a sensor circuit, and a function control circuit. These circuits are mostly included in a control LSI(C-MOS) on the Logic board.

3-3. Spindle motor driver circuit

This circuit consists of a three phase spindle motor driver, a rotation speed detector, a rotation phase detector, and a current limiter. These circuits are mostly included in a spindle motor driver IC(bipolar) on the Motor board.

3-4. Stepping motor driver circuit

This circuit consists of two bridge driver circuits. The IC is made by the bipolar process, which is mounted in the Logic board.

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

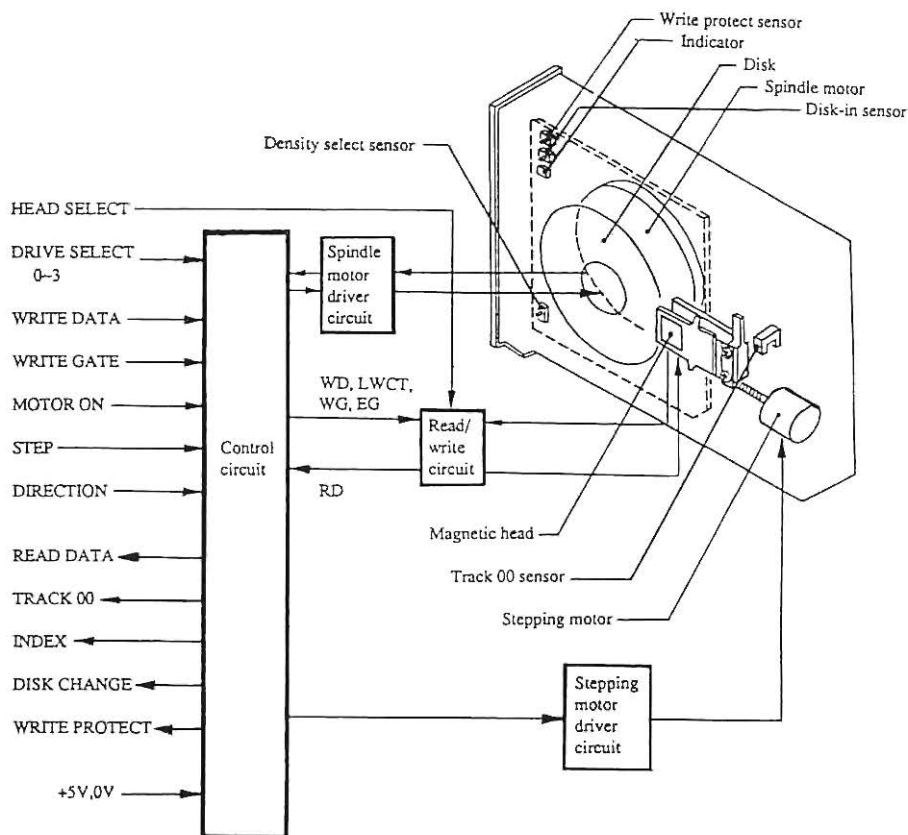


Fig. 3-1 General Block Diagram

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 10

4. SPECIFICATIONS

4-1. Drive performance

Table 4-1 lists performance specifications for the SONY Micro Floppydisk drive.

TABLE 4-1 Performance Specifications

Specification	MP-F11W	MP-F17W (2MB mode)
CAPACITY		
Unformatted per disk	1MB for MFM	2MB for MFM
Unformatted per track	6.25KB for MFM	12.5KB for MFM
Recording density	8,717BPI	17,434BPI
Burst transfer rate	250Kbits/sec	500Kbits/sec
ACCESS TIME		
Track to track	3msec	
Settling Time	15msec	
FUNCTIONAL		
Rotational speed	300rpm	
Track density	135TPI	
Cylinders	80	
Tracks	160	
R/W heads	2	
Encoding method	MFM or FM	
POWER CONSUMPTION		
Read/Write mode	220mA	
Standby mode	20mA(TTL I/F), 6mA(C-MOS I/F)	

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 11

4-2. Dimensional data

Table 4-2 lists the dimensional data for the Micro Floppydisk drive.

TABLE 4-2 Dimensional Data

Physical Dimension	Value
Height	25.4 mm
Width	101.6 mm
Depth	150.0 mm
Weight	425 g

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 12

5. INTERFACE DESCRIPTION

5-1. Host system interface

The SONY Micro Floppydisk drive is compatible with conventional floppy disk controllers. The interface consists of 15 signal lines for data, control and hand-shaking (see Figure 5-1, details will appear in a product specification of each mode).

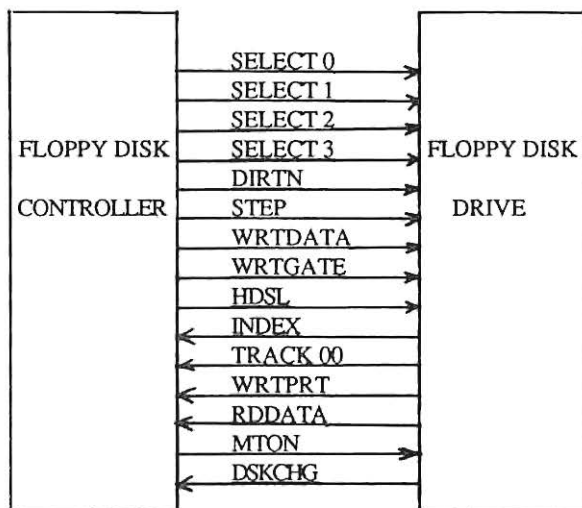


Fig. 5-1 Interface Signal Diagram

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 13

5-2. Signal interface

The drive has 15 interface signals. Ten signals are input to the drive, and six are output.

Table 5-2 MNEMONIC

SIGNAL DESCRIPTION	MNEMONIC
DRIVE SELECT 0	SELECT 0
DRIVE SELECT 1	SELECT 1
DRIVE SELECT 2	SELECT 2
DRIVE SELECT 3	SELECT 3
DIRECTION SELECT	DIRTN
STEP	STEP
WRITE DATA	WRTDATA
WRITE GATE	WRTGATE
HEAD SELECT	HDSL
INDEX	INDEX
TRACK00	TRK00
WRITE PROTECT	WRTPRT
READ DATA	RDDATA
MOTOR ON	MTON
DISK CHANGE	DSKCHG

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 14

6. EJECT BUTTON, INDICATOR AND SELECT SWITCH

6-1. Eject button

The eject button (see Fig. 6-1) is used to remove a disk cartridge from the unit. Depression of the eject button causes the disk cartridge in the unit to be ejected.

6-2. Indicator

The activity indicator (see Fig. 6-1) indicates that a drive is selected.

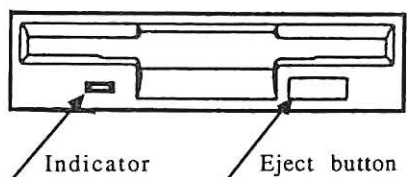


Fig. 6-1 Front Bezel

SONY	OEM Manual MP-F11W / MP-F17W	PART # : 061
		Page : 15

6-3. Drive select switch

Drive Select switch located next to a power connector on the rear side is used to designate drive0 up to drive3 in a daisy chain application. Usually, this switch is set to drive 1 in shipping from the drive factory.

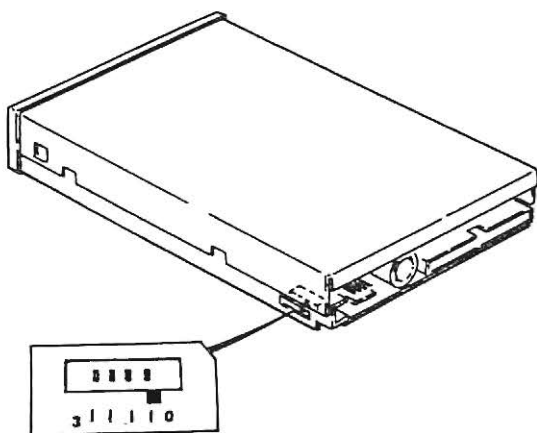


Fig. 6-2 Drive Select Switch

REVISION NO. : 11-88	DATE OF REVISION : MAR. 4, 88
----------------------	-------------------------------



SECTION 4

PART REPLACEMENT

4-1 COVER ASS'Y REPLACEMENT

4-1-1 Removal

- a. Insert your finger into the rear right side portion of the Cover Ass'y as shown in Fig. 4-1, and dislocate the Cover Ass'y from the hook while applying some force to the direction marked with arrow. The whole Cover Ass'y can be taken out.

4-1-2 Installation

- a. Match the projection located in the front side of the Cover Ass'y with square hole of the front panel ass'y and then put the rear of the Cover Ass'y into the proper position. (Refer to Fig. 4-1)

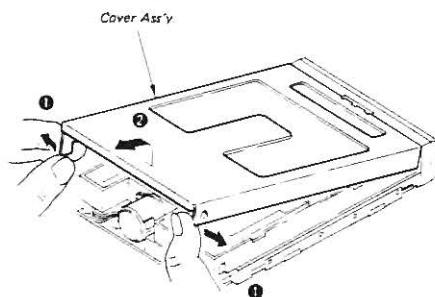


Fig. 4-1 Cover Ass'y Replacement

4-2 FRONT PANEL ASS'Y AND EJECT BUTTON REPLACEMENT

4-2-1 Removal

- a. Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- b. Push slightly the plastic hinges located on each of right and left sides with (-) shaped screw driver through the square hole of upper cover, and pull it slowly toward you. (Refer to Fig. 4-2)
- c. Dislocate the Eject Button from the hook of the slide plate.

4-2-2 Installation

- a. Hang the Eject Button to the hook of slide plate as shown Fig. 4-2.
- b. Install the Front Panel Ass'y into the metal frame by sliding in the hook located on each side of the Front Panel Ass'y.

- c. Make sure that protuberances of LED and the Eject Button are properly located in the recess and square hole of the Front Panel Ass'y.
- d. Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)

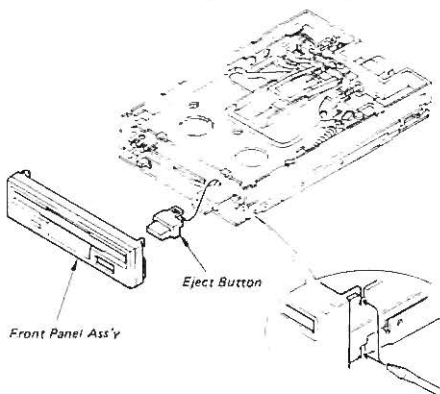


Fig. 4-2 Front Panel Ass'y Replacement

4-3 LG-2 MOUNTED BOARD REPLACEMENT

4-3-1 Removal

- a. Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- b. Disconnect the all connectors. (CN102 for stepping motor, CN104 for 00 sensor, CN105 and CN106 for head carriage ass'y)
- c. Desolder the jumper cable (CN1) on MT-2

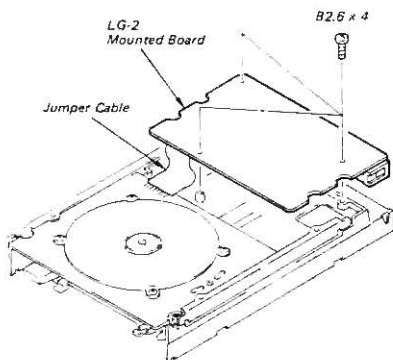


Fig. 4-3 LG-2 Mounted Board Replacement

- d. Remove the three screws (B2.6x4) securing the LG-2 Mounted Board and then remove the LG-2 Mounted Board. (Refer to Fig. 4-3)

4-3-2 Installation

- a. Solder the jumper cable to the CN1 of MT-2 mounted board.
- b. Install the LG-2 Mounted Board with three screws (B2.6x4).
- c. Connect the all connectors.
- d. Perform the Radial Alignment and TRK00 sensor Adjustment. (Refer to 5-1)
- e. Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)

4-4 MT-2 MOUNTED BOARD REPLACEMENT

4-4-1 Removal

- a. Desolder the jumper cable on MT-2 Mounted Board with soldering iron.
- b. Remove the four screws (P2.6x4) securing the Stator Yoke Ass'y and then remove the Stator Yoke Ass'y. (Refer to Fig. 4-4)
- c. Disconnect the connector CN2 (hall IC ass'y) and then remove the MT-2 Mounted Board.

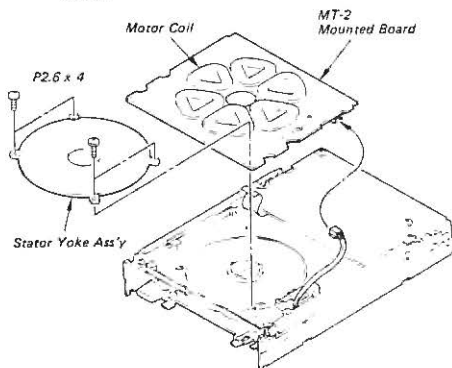


Fig. 4-4 MT-2 Mounted Board Replacement

4-4-2 Installation

- a. Connect the connector CN2 (hall IC ass'y) onto the MT-2 Mounted Board.
- b. Solder the Jumper Cable to CN1 of MT-2 Mounted Board.

- c. Match the hole of the MT-2 Mounted Board with the emboss of the chassis ass'y.
- d. Install the Stator Yoke Ass'y on MT-2 Mounted Board with four screws (P2.6x4), not to damage to six motor coils for disk motor. (Refer to Fig. 4-4)

4-5 HALL IC ASS'Y REPLACEMENT

4-5-1 Removal

- a. Remove the four screws (P2.6x4) securing the stator yoke ass'y and then remove the stator yoke ass'y. (Refer to Fig. 4-4)
- b. Disconnect the connector CN2 (Hall IC Ass'y).
- c. Remove the screw (PSW2x5) securing the Hall IC Ass'y and then remove the Hall IC Ass'y. (Refer to Fig. 4-5)

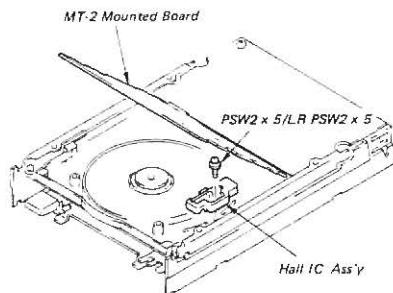


Fig. 4-5 Hall IC Ass'y Replacement

4-5-2 Installation

- a. Fasten loosely the Hall IC Ass'y with a screw (PSW2x5). But this screw must not be tightened for later adjustment.
- b. Connect the connector CN2 (Hall IC Ass'y) onto the MT-2 mounted board.
- c. Match the hole of the MT-2 mounted board with the emboss of the chassis ass'y.
- d. Install the stator yoke ass'y on MT-2 mounted board with four screws (P2.6x4), not to damage to six motor coils for disk motor. (Refer to Fig. 4-4)
- e. Perform the Index phase adjustment. (Refer to 5-3)

4-6 CASSETTE HOLDER ASS'Y REPLACEMENT

4-6-1 Removal

- Connect the drive to the MFD Function Checker (Refer to Fig. 2-14), move the head to the TRK00 and then disconnect the drive from MFD Function Checker.
- Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- Remove the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- Be careful not to apply the excessive force to the head carriage ass'y. While pushing the eject lever, take the Cassette Holder Ass'y. (Refer to Fig. 4-6)

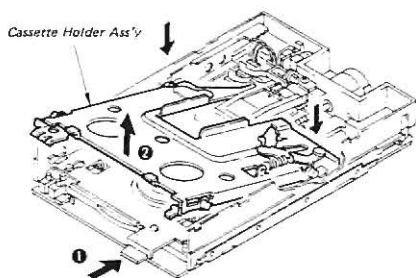


Fig. 4-6 Cassette Holder Ass'y Replacement

4-6-2 Installation

- Insert carefully the Cassette Holder Ass'y underneath the arm of the head carriage ass'y, then set the holder into the location shown by arrow as shown in Fig. 4-6, while pushing the eject lever.
- Install the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)

4-7 SLIDE PLATE ASS'Y REPLACEMENT

4-7-1 Removal

- Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- Remove the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- Remove the cassette holder ass'y. (Refer to 4-6)
- Slide the trigger arm to set the Disk In-mode as shown in Fig. 4-7.
- Remove the one end of Tension Springs on chassis ass'y and then take the Slide Plate Ass'y. (Refer to Fig. 4-7)

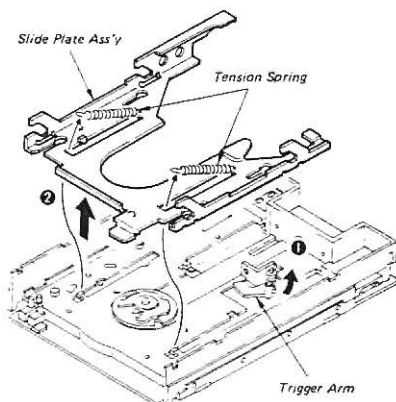


Fig. 4-7 Slide Plate Ass'y Replacement

4-7-2 Installation

- While pushing the trigger arm, set the Slide Plate Ass'y into the location shown in Fig. 4-7.
- Hang the Tension Springs on hook of chassis ass'y.
- Push the Slide Plate Ass'y, while pushing the trigger arm back side. (This stays "disk-in mode")
- Install the cassette holder ass'y. (Refer to 4-6)
- Install the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- Make the head clean. (Refer to 5-4)

4-8 00 SENSOR REPLACEMENT

4-8-1 Removal

- Connect the drive to the MED Function Checker as shown in Fig. 2-14, move the head to TRK79 and then disconnect the drive from the MED Function Checker.
- Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- Disconnect the connector CN104 (00 Sensor) from the LG-2 mounted board.
- Remove the screw (PSW2.6x5) securing the 00 Sensor and remove 00 Sensor. (Refer to Fig. 4-8)

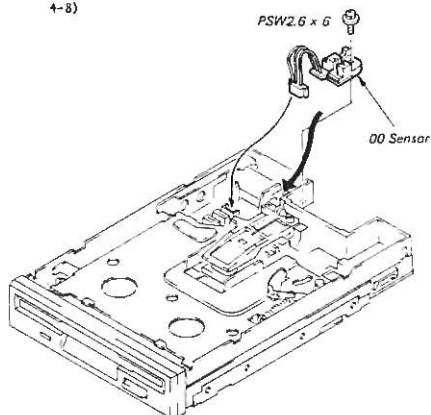


Fig. 4-8 00 Sensor Replacement

4-8-2 Installation

- Install the 00 Sensor with a screw (PSW2.6x5).
- Connect the CN104 connector onto the LG-2 mounted board.
- Perform the radial alignment and TRK00 sensor adjustment. (Refer to 5-1)
- Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)

4-9 HEAD CARRIAGE ASS'Y REPLACEMENT

4-9-1 Removal

- Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- Remove the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- Remove the cassette holder ass'y. (Refer to 4-6)

- Disconnect the connectors CN105 and CN106 (flexible boards) from the LG-2 mounted board.
- Remove the screw (P2.6x4) securing the Guide Retainer and then remove the Guide Retainer, Head Carriage Ass'y and Slide Guide Shaft. (Refer to Fig. 4-9)

4-9-2 Installation

Note: Apply Sony oil to the Guide Shaft before installation. Apply Sony oil to the openings of Head Carriage Ass'y using the bamboo stick.

- Pass the Guide Shaft through the opening of Head Carriage Ass'y.

Note: The spring of Head Carriage Ass'y, that is located in around shaft hole, should be installed inside so that the Guide Shaft is forced outwardly by the spring force, as shown in Fig. 4-9.

- Put the Head Carriage Ass'y and the Slide Guide Shaft in place, and install the guide retainer with a screw (P2.6x4). (Refer to Fig. 4-9)
- Connect the flexible boards to CN105 and CN106 on the LG-2 mounted board.

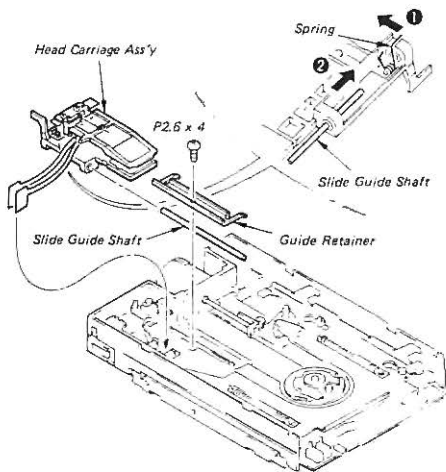


Fig. 4-9 Head Carriage Ass'y Replacement

- d. Install the cassette holder ass'y. (Refer to 4-6)
- e. Install the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- f. Perform the radial alignment and TRK00 sensor adjustment. (Refer to 5-1)
- g. Perform the head compliance. (Refer to 5-2)
- h. Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- i. Make the head clean. (Refer to 5-4)

4-10 STEPPING MOTOR ASS'Y (ROTOR ASS'Y AND STATOR ASS'Y) REPLACEMENT

4-10-1 Removal

- a. Remove the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- b. Remove the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- c. Remove the cassette holder ass'y. (Refer to 4-6)
- d. Disconnect the connector CN102 (Stator Ass'y) from the LG-2 mounted board.
- e. Remove the three screws (B2.6x4) securing LG-2 mounted board so that removal of Stator Ass'y can be easily performed.
- f. Remove the two screws (PSW2.6x5) securing the Stator Ass'y and then remove the Stator Ass'y and steel ball. (Refer to Fig. 4-10)
- g. Wipe away the grease applied around lead screw with soft cloth before removal of Stator Ass'y and Rotor Ass'y, not to leave the grease in the chassis hole during the removal.

- h. While twisting Rotor Ass'y, separate the Rotor Ass'y from the needle pin of head carriage ass'y.

- i. Take the steel ball from the hole of chassis ass'y.

4-10-2 Installation

Note: The stepping motor must be replaced with the whole ass'y, since the wrong combination (Rotor Ass'y and Stator Ass'y) in the ass'y causes the malfunction.

Note: Apply Molykote Grease (EM101) (same quantity of match tip) on whole area of lead screw and two steel balls before the installation.

- a. Insert the steel ball into hole of the chassis ass'y.
- b. While lifting the head carriage ass'y a little, insert the lead screw of the Rotor Ass'y between the needle and plate spring of head carriage ass'y.
- c. Insert the steel ball into hole of Rotor Ass'y.
- d. Fasten loosely the Stator Ass'y with two screws (PSW2.6x5). But these screws must not be rightened for later adjustment.
- e. Connect the connector CN102 (Rotor Ass'y) onto the LG-2 mounted board.
- f. Install the cassette holder ass'y. (Refer to 4-6)
- g. Install the front panel ass'y and eject button. (Refer to 4-2)
- h. Perform the radial alignment and TRK00 sensor adjustment. (Refer to 5-1)
- i. Install the cover ass'y. (Refer to 4-1)
- j. Make the head clean. (Refer to 5-4)

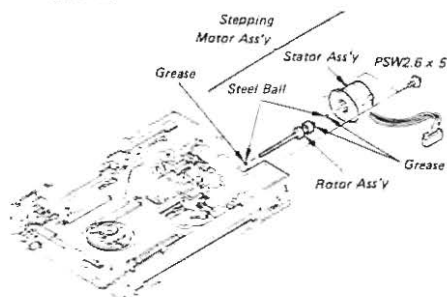


Fig. 4-10 Stepping Motor Ass'y (Stator Ass'y and Rotor Ass'y) Replacement

6-6-2 Chip parts replacement procedure

This unit uses chip components such as carbon resistor, ceramic capacitor, transistor and diode in some circuits. It also uses IC's of flat-pack type. As the appearance of carbon resistor and ceramic capacitor are identical, distinguishing of each can be possible by visual check of reference address of silk-screen print on the printed circuit board. As the shape of transistor and diode are same, they also are distinguished by the reference address of silk-screen print.

Tools:

Soldering iron: 20W

(If possible, use soldering tip with heat-controller of $270 \pm 10^\circ\text{C}$)

Desoldering metal braid ("SOLDER TAUL" or equivalent)

Solder (of 0.6mm dia. is recommended.)

Tweezers

Soldering Conditions:

Tip temperature: $270 \pm 10^\circ\text{C}$

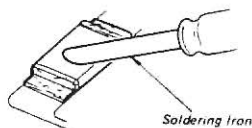
Solder within 2sec. per an electrode

Higher temperature or longer tip application than specified may be damaged to the chip component.

(1) Resistor and capacitor

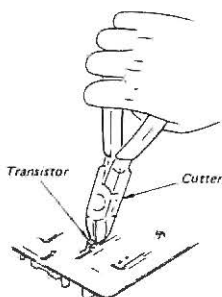
- Add heat onto the chip-part by the top of soldering iron tip and slide the chip-part aside when the solder is melted.
- Confirm visually with care that there is no pattern peeling, damage, and/or bridge where the part was removed or its surrounding.
- Presolder the pattern into thin where the part was removed.
- Place a new chip-part onto the pattern and solder both sides.

CAUTION: Do not use the chip-part again once used.



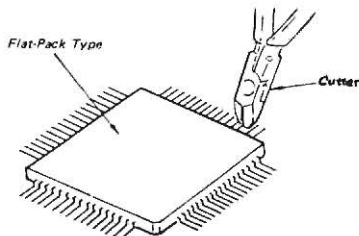
(2) Transistor and diode

- Cut the leads of the semiconductor part to be removed with a cutter.
- Remove the each pin of semiconductor from the pattern by tweezers while heating the pin by soldering iron.
- Confirm visually with care that there is no pattern peeling, damage, and/or bridge where the part was removed or its surrounding.
- Presolder the pattern into thin where the part was removed.
- Place a new semiconductor onto the pattern and solder the leads.



(3) IC (Flat-pack type)

- Cut the leads of the IC to be removed with a cutter.
- Remove the each pin of IC from the pattern by tweezers while heating the pin by soldering iron.
- Confirm visually with care that there is no pattern peeling, damage, and/or bridge where the part was removed or its surrounding.



- d. Presolder the pattern into thin where the part was removed.
- e. Place a new IC onto the pattern and solder it.
- f. Confirm by a tester that each conduction between IC's terminal and copper pattern is surely made.
- g. If not, resolder the portion.



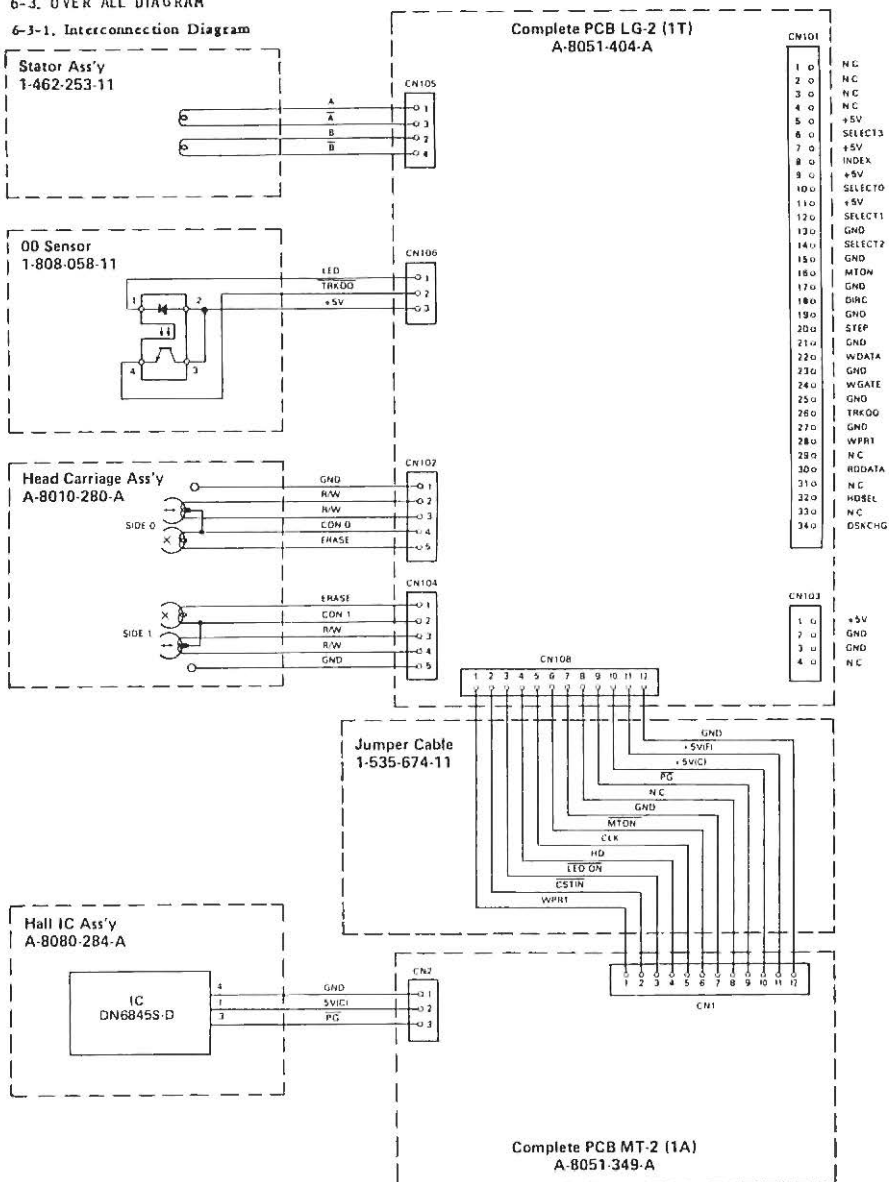
6-2. MECHANICAL PARTS LIST

- Note: 1. Parts printed in **Bold-Face type** are normally stocked for replacement purposes. The remaining parts shown in this list are not normally required for routine service work. Orders for parts not shown in **Bold-Face type** will be processed, but allow for additional delivery time.
2. The screws and washers may be supplied with the substitution that is similar to ones listed because of part-standardization program in SONY.

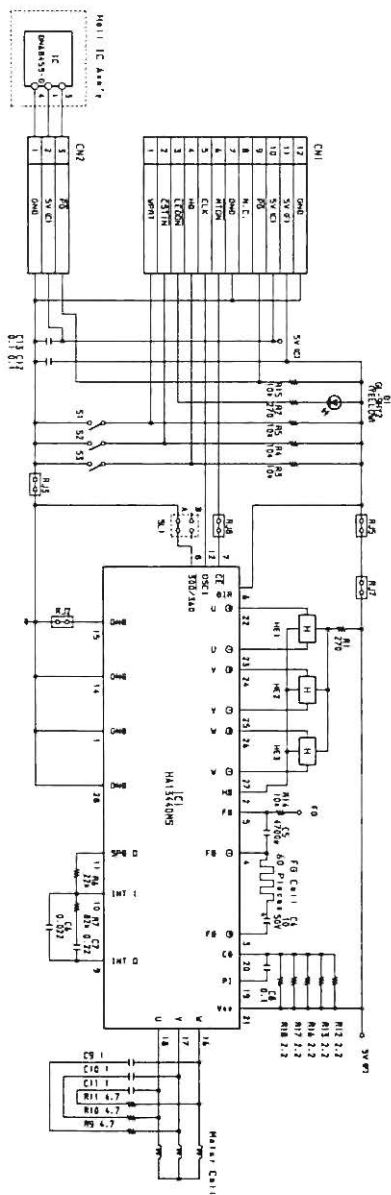
<u>No.</u>	<u>Parts No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
1	A-8010-280-A	Head Carriage Ass'y (ON)
2	A-8010-253-A	Stepping Motor Ass'y
3	A-8010-283-A	Cassette Holder Ass'y
4	4-613-114-01	Tension Spring
5	A-8010-234-A	Slide Plate Ass'y
6	4-613-132-01	Tension Spring
7	A-8051-404-A	LG-2 (1T) Mounted Board
8	A-8051-349-A	MT-2 (1A) Mounted Board
9	A-8080-284-A	Hall IC Ass'y
10	8-759-404-25	DM6845S-D
11	X-4613-102-1	Stator Yoke Ass'y
12	1-808-058-11	00 Sensor
13	4-606-001-11	Slide Guide Shaft
14	4-613-103-01	Trigger Arm
15	4-613-104-01	Spring
16	4-613-105-01	Guide Retainer
17	X-4613-105-1	Bracket Ass'y (Left)
18	X-4613-106-1	Bracket Ass'y (Right)
19	4-613-145-02	Cover
20	3-701-428-01	Special Screw +B 2.6x4
	4-613-717-01	Screw LR PSW 2x5
	4-614-322-01	Screw LR PSW 2.6x5
	7-621-259-25	Screw +F 2.6x4
	7-621-775-20	Screw +B 2.6x5
	7-621-759-45	Screw +PSW 2.6x6
	7-623-923-11	Nylone Washer 2.6

6-3. OVER ALL DIAGRAM

6-3-1. Interconnection Diagram



6-4-2. Circuit Diagram on MT-2 (7A)



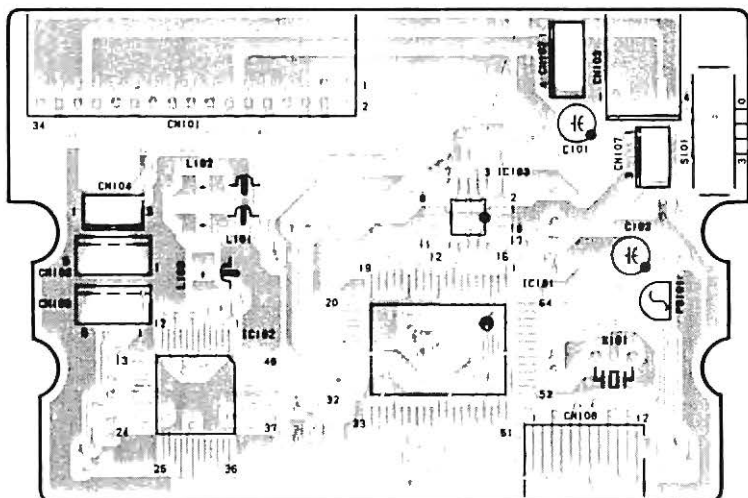
MP-F11W-700



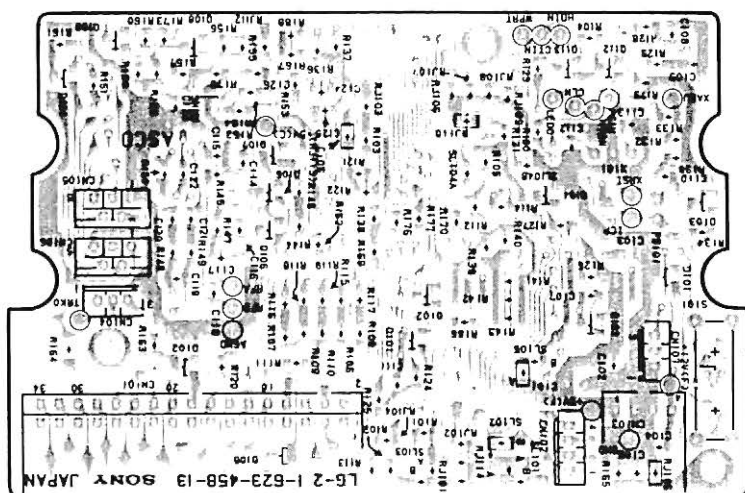
6-5. PARTS LAYOUT

6-5-1. Parts Layout on LG-2 (1T)

- Component Side -

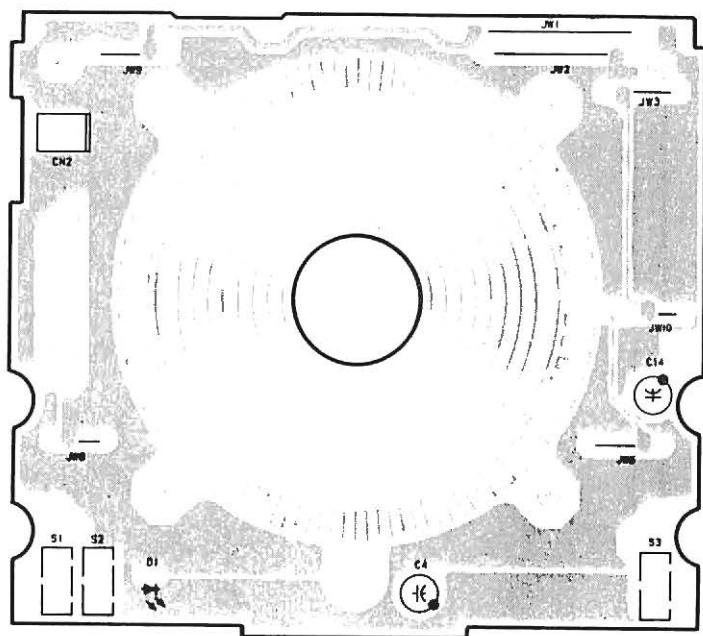


- Pattern Side -

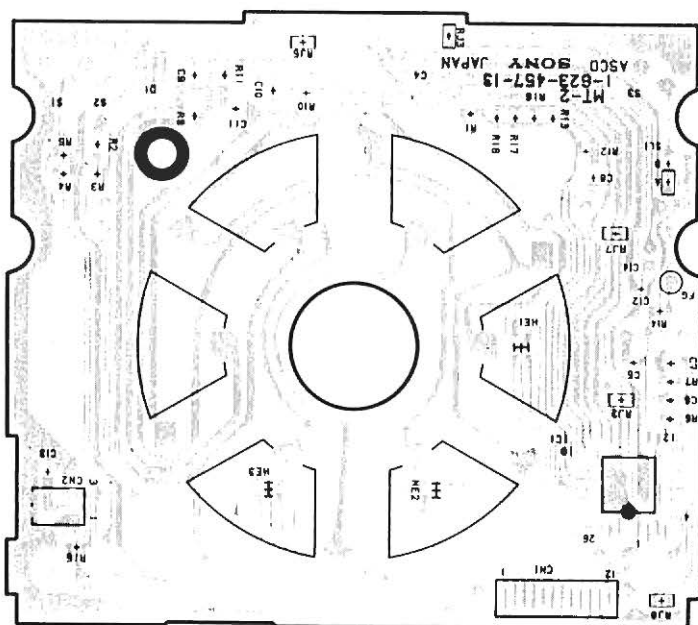


6-5-2. Parts Layout on MT-2 (1A)

- Component Side -



- Pattern Side -



6-6. ELECTRIC PARTS

6-6-1. ELECTRIC PARTS LIST

Note: 1. All capacitors are in micro farads unless otherwise specified.

2. All inductors are in micro henries unless otherwise specified.

3. All resistors are in ohms.

4. "CHIP" stands for chip component.

Ref. No.	Parts No.	Description	Ref. No.	Parts No.	Description
1G-2 (1T) MOUNTED BOARD			RESISTORS		
CAPACITORS			R101	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C101	1-126-154-11	ELECT 47 20% 6.3V	R105	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C102	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.1 25V	R106	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C107	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R107	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C108	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.1 25V	R108	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C109	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.1 25V	R109	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C110	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.1 25V	R110	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C111	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R111	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C112	1-163-241-11	CERAMIC CHIP 39PF 5% 50V	R112	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C113	1-163-241-11	CERAMIC CHIP 39PF 5% 50V	R114	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C115	1-163-020-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.0082 10% 50V	R115	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C118	1-163-115-00	CERAMIC CHIP 560PF 5% 50V	R116	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C119	1-163-115-00	CERAMIC CHIP 560PF 5% 50V	R117	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C120	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R118	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C121	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R119	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C122	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R120	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
C123	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.1 25V	R124	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP 10K 5% 1/10W
C124	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R125	1-216-045-00	METAL CHIP 680 5% 1/10W
C125	1-163-809-11	CERAMIC CHIP 0.047 10% 25V	R126	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP 10K 5% 1/10W
C126	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP 0.1 25V	R127	1-216-045-00	METAL CHIP 680 5% 1/10W
CONNECTORS			R128	1-216-085-00	METAL CHIP 33K 5% 1/10W
CN101	1-564-941-11	HEADER, CONNECTOR 34P	R129	1-216-085-00	METAL CHIP 33K 5% 1/10W
CN102	1-564-003-00	PIN, CONNECTOR 4P	R130	1-216-119-00	METAL CHIP 820K 5% 1/10W
CN104	1-564-002-00	PIN, CONNECTOR 3P	R131	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP 10K 5% 1/10W
CN105	1-562-787-21	CONNECTOR, FLEXIBLE 5P	R132	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP 10K 5% 1/10W
CN106	1-562-787-21	CONNECTOR, FLEXIBLE 5P	R133	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
CN108	1-535-674-11	JUMPER CABLE	R134	1-216-097-00	METAL CHIP 100K 5% 1/10W
DIODES			R136	1-216-059-00	METAL CHIP 2.7K 5% 1/10W
D101	8-719-100-03	1S2835 (CHIP)	R138	1-216-059-00	METAL CHIP 2.7K 5% 1/10W
D102	8-719-100-03	1S2835 (CHIP)	R139	1-216-166-00	METAL CHIP 47 5% 1/8W
D103	8-719-100-05	1S2837 (CHIP)	R140	1-216-166-00	METAL CHIP 47 5% 1/8W
D104	8-719-100-05	1S2837 (CHIP)	R141	1-216-166-00	METAL CHIP 47 5% 1/8W
D106	8-719-100-03	1S2835 (CHIP)	R142	1-216-166-00	METAL CHIP 47 5% 1/8W
ICs			R143	1-216-166-00	METAL CHIP 47 5% 1/8W
IC101	8-752-325-50	CXD1142Q	R145	1-216-017-00	METAL CHIP 47 5% 1/10W
IC102	8-752-033-09	CXA1286Q-2	R147	1-216-049-00	METAL CHIP 1K 5% 1/10W
IC103	8-759-305-19	HA13421AMP	R148	1-216-041-00	METAL CHIP 470 5% 1/10W
COILS			R149	1-216-041-00	METAL CHIP 470 5% 1/10W
L101	1-410-941-21	INDUCTOR CHIP 560	R150	1-216-063-00	METAL CHIP 3.9K 5% 1/10W
L102	1-410-941-21	INDUCTOR CHIP 560	R151	1-216-067-00	METAL CHIP 5.6K 5% 1/10W
L103	1-408-785-21	INDUCTOR CHIP 47	R152	1-216-085-00	METAL CHIP 33K 5% 1/10W
TRANSISTORS			R154	1-216-748-11	METAL CHIP 39K 1% 1/10W
Q101	8-729-162-44	2SB524-BV4 (CHIP)	R155	1-216-091-00	METAL CHIP 56K 5% 1/10W
Q102	8-729-900-53	DTCL14EK (CHIP)	R156	1-216-061-00	METAL CHIP 3.3K 5% 1/10W
Q103	8-729-162-44	2SB524-BV4 (CHIP)	R158	1-216-075-00	METAL CHIP 12K 5% 1/10W
Q104	8-729-900-53	DTCL14EK (CHIP)	R161	1-216-043-00	METAL CHIP 560 5% 1/10W
			R163	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP 10K 5% 1/10W
			R164	1-216-180-00	METAL CHIP 180 5% 1/8W
			R166	1-216-089-00	METAL CHIP 47K 5% 1/10W
			R168	1-216-089-00	METAL CHIP 47K 5% 1/10W
			R170	1-216-089-00	METAL CHIP 47K 5% 1/10W

MP-F11W-700

<u>Ref. No.</u>	<u>Parts No.</u>	<u>Description</u>			
R176	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R177	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R180	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R1105	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
R1110	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
R1113	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
SLA105	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
SLA102	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W

SWITCH

S101 1-554-644-00 SWITCH, SLIDE

OSCILLATOR

X101 1-567-912-11 OSCILLATOR, CERAMIC (4.91M)

IC LINK

PS101 1-532-727-11 IC LINK

MT-2 (1A) MOUNTED BOARD

CAPACITORS

C4	1-124-261-00	ELECT	10	20%	50V
C5	1-163-017-00	CERAMIC CHIP	0.0047	10%	50V
C6	1-163-037-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.022	10%	25V
C7	1-163-081-00	CERAMIC CHIP	0.22		25V
C8	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1		25V
C9	1-162-638-11	CERAMIC CHIP	1		16V
C10	1-162-638-11	CERAMIC CHIP	1		16V
C11	1-162-638-11	CERAMIC CHIP	1		16V
C12	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1		25V
C13	1-163-038-00	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1		25V

CONNECTOR

CN2 1-566-427-11 PIN, CONNECTOR 3P

DIODE

D1 8-719-904-92 GL-9HY2 (Yellow)

IC

IC1 8-759-305-25 HA13440MS

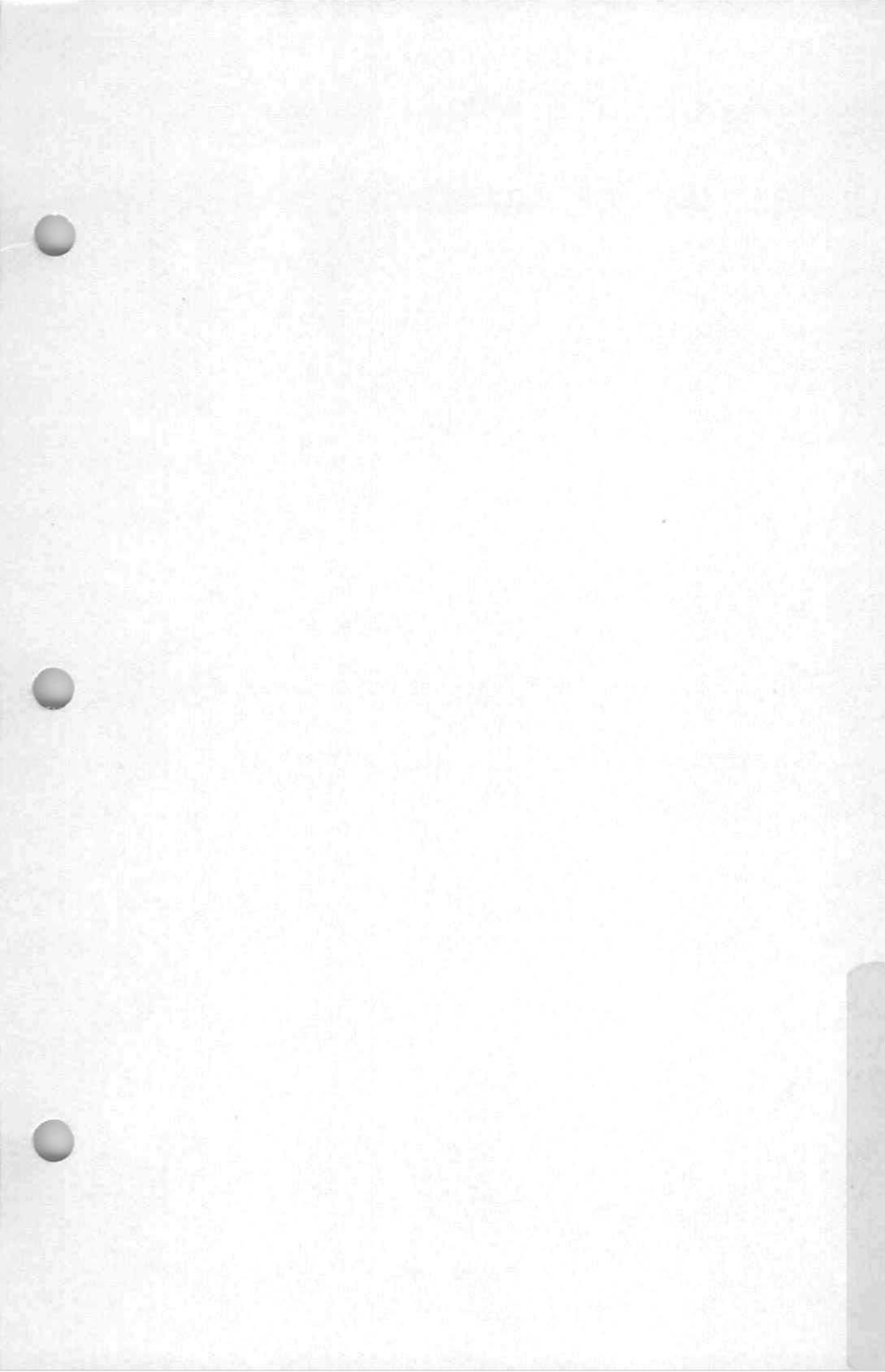
RESISTORS

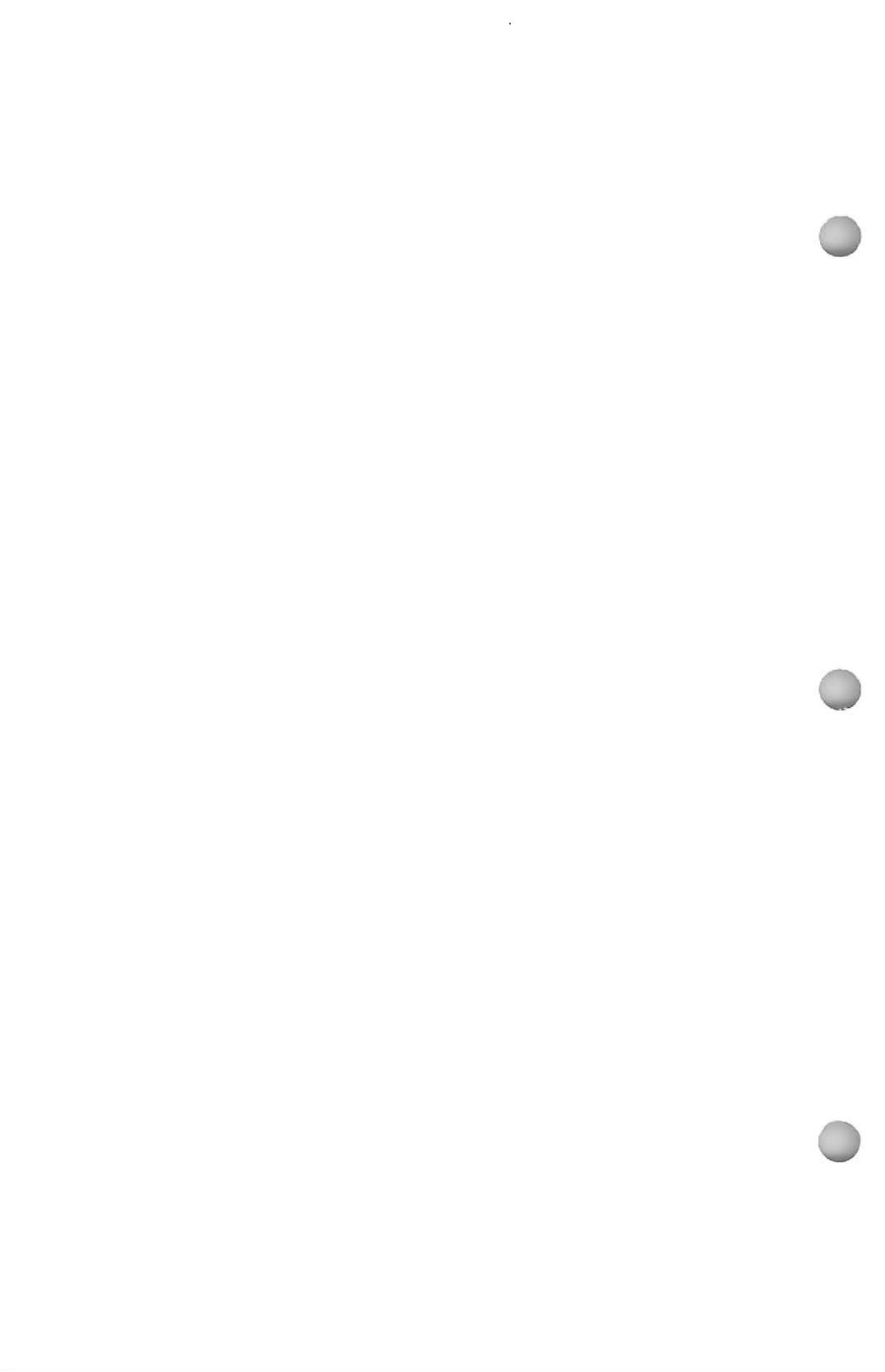
R1	1-216-035-00	METAL CHIP	270	5%	1/10W
R2	1-216-184-00	METAL CHIP	270	5%	1/8W
R4	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R5	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R6	1-216-081-00	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R7	1-216-095-00	METAL CHIP	82K	5%	1/10W
R9	1-216-142-00	METAL CHIP	4.7	5%	1/8W
R10	1-216-142-00	METAL CHIP	4.7	5%	1/8W
R11	1-216-142-00	METAL CHIP	4.7	5%	1/8W
R12	1-216-298-00	METAL CHIP	2.2	5%	1/10W
R13	1-216-298-00	METAL CHIP	2.2	5%	1/10W
R14	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R15	1-216-073-00	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R16	1-216-298-00	METAL CHIP	2.2	5%	1/10W
R17	1-216-298-00	METAL CHIP	2.2	5%	1/10W
R18	1-216-298-00	METAL CHIP	2.2	5%	1/10W
RJ2	1-216-296-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/8W

<u>Ref. No.</u>	<u>Parts No.</u>	<u>Description</u>			
RJ3	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
RJ5	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
RJ7	1-216-296-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/8W
RJ8	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W
SLA1	1-216-295-00	METAL CHIP	0	5%	1/10W

SWITCHES

S1 1-571-237-11 SWITCH, MICRO
S2 1-571-237-11 SWITCH, MICRO





Software



Software



Software Contents

BIOS Services	1
Device I/O Services	1
Keyboard	3
Video Display	7
Serial Communications	20
Line Printer	24
System Clock	26
Sound Multiplexer	30
Diskette I/O Support for Diskette Only	31
Equipment	38
Memory Size	39
Bootstrap Loader	39
System Services	40
Machine Identification	40
EEPROM	41
BIOS Sound Support	43
Keyboard ASCII and Scan Codes	47
MS-DOS Memory Map	51
ROM BIOS Data Area	52
Additional Data Area	58



BIOS Services

Device I/O Services

Introduction

The BIOS (Basic Input/Output System) is the lowest-level interface between other software (application programs and the operating system itself) and the hardware. The BIOS routines provide various device input/output services as well as bootstrap and print screen and other services. Some of the services that BIOS provides are not available through the operating system, such as the graphics routines.

All calls to the BIOS are made through software interrupts (that is, by means of assembly language "INT x" instructions). Each I/O device is provided with a software interrupt, which transfers execution to the routine.

Entry parameters to BIOS routines are normally passed in CPU registers. Similarly, exit parameters are generally returned from these routines to the caller in CPU registers. To insure BIOS compatibility with other machines, the register usage and conventions are, for the most part, identical.

The following pages describe the entry and exit requirements for each BIOS routine. To execute a BIOS call, load the registers as indicated under the "Entry Conditions" banner. (Register AH will contain the function number in cases where a single interrupt can perform more than one operation.) Then issue the interrupt given for the call. The following example can be used to read a character from the keyboard:

```
MOV AH,0  
INT 16H
```

Upon return, AL contains the ASCII character and AH the keyboard scan code.

Note: All registers except those used to return parameters to the caller are saved and restored by the BIOS routines.

Following is a quick reference list of software interrupts for all device I/O and system status services.

Service	Software Interrupts
Video Display	10 hex (16 dec)
Equipment	11 hex (17 dec)
Memory Size	12 hex (18 dec)
Diskette	13 hex (19 dec)
Serial Communications	14 hex (20 dec)
System Services	15 hex (21dec)
Keyboard	16 hex (22 dec)
Line Printer	17 hex (23 dec)
Bootstrap Loader	19 hex (25 dec)
System Clock	1Ahex (26 dec)

Keyboard

16 hex (22 dec)

Function Summary

AH	= 0:	Read keyboard (destructive with wait)
AH	= 1:	Scan keyboard (nondestructive, no wait)
AH	= 2:	Get current shift status
AH	= 5:	Store ASCII character and scan code in keyboard buffer
AH	= 10H:	Extended keyboard read
AH	= 11H:	Extended ASCII status
AH	= 12H:	Extended shift status read

Function Descriptions

Read Keyboard

Read the next character typed at the keyboard. Return the ASCII value of the character and the keyboard scan code, removing the entry from the keyboard buffer (destructive read).

Entry Conditions

AH = 0

Exit Conditions

AL = *ASCII value of character*

AH = *keyboard scan code*

Scan Keyboard

Set up the zero flag (Z flag) to indicate whether a character is available to read from the keyboard or not. If a character is available, return the ASCII value of the character and the keyboard scan code. The entry remains in the keyboard buffer (non-destructive read).

Entry Conditions

AH = 1

Exit Conditions

Z = no character available

NZ = a character is available, in which case:

AL = *ASCII value of character*

AH = *keyboard scan code*

Get Shift Status

Return the current shift status.

Entry Conditions

AH = 2

Exit Conditions

AL = *current shift status* (bit settings: set = true, reset = false)

Bit 0 = RIGHT SHIFT key depressed

Bit 1 = LEFT SHIFT key depressed

Bit 2 = CTRL (control) key depressed

Bit 3 = ALT (alternate mode) key depressed

Bit 4 = SCROLL state active

Bit 5 = NUMBER lock engaged

Bit 6 = CAPS lock engaged

Bit 7 = INSERT state active

Store ASCII Character

Entry Conditions

AH = 5
CL = ASCII character
CH = Scan Code

Exit Conditions

AL = 00: Successful
AL = 01: Buffer full
[C] = Operation failed

Extended Keyboard Read

Entry Conditions

AH = 10H

Exit Conditions

AL = *ASCII value of character*
AH = *keyboard scan code*

Extended ASCII Status

Entry Conditions

AH = 11H

Exit Conditions

Z = No character is available
NZ = A character is available, in which case:
AL = *ASCII value of character*
AH = *keyboard scan code*

Extended Shift Status Read

Entry Conditions

AH = 12H

Exit Conditions

AL = *shift status* (bit settings: set = true, reset = false)

- Bit 7 = INSERT active
- Bit 6 = CAPS LOCK active
- Bit 5 = NUM LOCK active
- Bit 4 = SCROLL LOCK active
- Bit 3 = ALT pressed
- Bit 2 = CTRL pressed
- Bit 1 = LEFT SHIFT pressed
- Bit 0 = RIGHT SHIFT pressed

AH = *extended shift status* (bit settings: set = true, reset = false)

- Bit 7 = SYS REQ pressed
- Bit 6 = CAPS LOCK active
- Bit 5 = NUM LOCK active
- Bit 4 = SCROLL LOCK active
- Bit 3 = RIGHT ALT active
- Bit 2 = RIGHT CTRL active
- Bit 1 = LEFT ALT active
- Bit 0 = LEFT CTRL active

Video Display

These routines provide an interface for the video display - the output half of the console (CON) device. MS-DOS considers the video display to be the default standard output (STDOUT) device.

Software Interrupts

10 hex (16 dec)

Function Summary Table Supported Video BIOS Calls

INT 10H

AH = 00	Set Video Mode
AH = 01	Set Cursor Type
AH = 02	Set Cursor Position
AH = 03	Read Cursor Position
AH = 05	Select Active Display Page
AH = 06	Scroll Active Page Up
AH = 07	Scroll Active Page Down
AH = 08	Read Attribute/Character at Current Cursor Position
AH = 09	Write Attribute/Character at Current Cursor Position
AH = 0A	Write Character Only at Current Cursor Position
AH = 0B	Set Color Palette
AH = 0C	Write Dot
AH = 0D	Read Dot
AH = 0E	Write TTY to Active Display
AH = 0F	Current Video State

INT 10H

AH = 10	Color Palette Interface
AL = 00	Set Individual Register
AL = 01	Set Border Color
AL = 02	Set All Palette Registers and Border
AH = 13	Write String
AL = 00	Write Character String
AL = 01	Write Character String and Move Cursor
AL = 02	Write Character and Attribute Strings
AL = 03	Write Character and Attribute Strings and Move Cursor

Function Descriptions

Set CRT Mode

Entry Conditions

AH = 0

AL = *mode value*, as follows:

Alpha Modes

AL = 0: 40x25 black and white

AL = 1: 40x25 color

AL = 2: 80x25 black and white

AL = 3: 80x25 color

Graphics Modes

AL = 4: 320x200 color graphics

AL = 5: 320x200 black and white
graphics with 4 shades

AL = 6: 640x200 black and white graphics
with 2 shades

AL = 7: monochrome text

Additional Modes

AL = 8: 160x200 color graphics
with 16 colors

AL = 9: 320x200 color graphics
with 16 colors

AL = A: 640x200 color graphics
with 4 colors

Note: If the high order bit of the AL register is 1, then the video buffer is not cleared.

Set Cursor Type

Set the cursor type and attribute.

Entry Conditions

AH = 1

CH = *bit values:*

Bits 5-6 = an invisible or erratically blinking cursor

Bits 5-6 = 0: produces a visible, blinking cursor

Bits 4-0 = *start line for cursor within character cell*

CL = *bit values:*

Bits 4-0 = *end line for cursor within character cell*

Set Cursor Position

Write (set) cursor position.

Entry Conditions

AH = 2

BH = *page number* (must be 0 for graphics modes)

DH = *row* (0 = top row)

DL = *column* (0 = leftmost column)

Get Cursor Position

Read (get) cursor position.

Entry Conditions

AH = 3

BH = *page number* (must be 0 for graphics modes)

Exit Conditions

DH = *row of current cursor position* (0 = top row)

DL = *column of current cursor position*
(0 = leftmost column)

CX = *cursor type currently set* [1]:

See previous "Set Cursor Type" (AH = 1).

Select Active Page

Select active display page (valid in alpha mode only).

Entry Conditions

AH = 5

AL = 0 through 7: *new page value for modes 0, 1*

AL = 0 through 3: *new page values for modes 2, 3*

AL = 80H: read CRT/CPU page registers

AL = 81H: set CPU page register to value in BL

AL = 82H: set CRT page register to value in BH

AL = 83H: set CRT and CPU page registers in BH and BL

Exit Conditions

If Bit 7 of AL = 1 upon entry, then:

BH = *contents of CRT page register*

BL = *contents of CPU page register*

Scroll Up

Scroll active page up.

Entry Conditions

AH = 6

AL = *numbers of lines to scroll*. The number of lines that will be left blank at the bottom of the window.
(0 = blank entire window)

CH = *row of upper left corner of scroll window*

CL = *column of upper left corner of scroll window*

DH = *row of lower right corner of scroll window*

DL = *column of lower right corner of scroll window*

BH = *attribute (alpha modes) or color (graphics modes) to be used on blank line*

Attributes

Color modes.

Foreground color:

Bit 0 = blue

Bit 1 = green

Bit 2 = red

Bit 3 = intensity

All bits off = black

Background color:

Bit 4 = blue

Bit 5 = green

Bit 6 = red

Bit 7 = blink

All bits off = white

Scroll Down

Scroll active page down.

Entry Conditions

- AH = 7
- AL = *number of lines to scroll* (0 = blank entire window)
- CH = *row of upper left corner of scroll window*
- CL = *column of upper left corner of scroll window*
- DH = *row of lower right corner of scroll window*
- DL = *column of lower right corner of scroll window*
- BH = *attribute (alpha modes) of color (graphics modes) to be used on blank line. See "Scroll Up" (AH = 6) for attribute values and "Set Color Palette" (AH = 11) for color values.*

Read Attribute or Color/Character

Read a character and its attribute or color at the current cursor position.

Entry Conditions

- AH = 8
- BH = *display page number* (not used in graphics modes)

Exit Conditions

- AL = *character read*
- AH = *attribute of character* (alpha modes only)

Write Attribute or Color/Character

Write a character and its attribute or color at the current cursor position.

Entry Conditions

- AH = 9
- BH = *display page number* (not used in graphics modes)
- CX = *number of characters to write*
- AL = *character to write*
- BL = *attribute of character* (for alpha modes) *or color of character* (for graphics modes. If Bit 7 of BL is set, the color of the character is XOR'ed with the color value). See "Scroll Up" (AH = 6) for attribute values and "Set Color Palette" (AH = 0BH) for color values.

Write Character Only

Write character only at current cursor position.

Entry Conditions

- AH = 0AH
- BH = *display page number* (valid for alpha modes only)
- CX = *number of characters to write*
- AL = *character to write*
- BL = *color of character* (graphics mode)

Set Color Palette

Select the color palette.

Entry Conditions

AH = 0BH

BH = 0: Set background color (0-15) to color value in BL.

BL = *color value*:

1 = blue	5 = magenta	9 = light blue	13 = light magenta
2 = green	6 = yellow	10 = light green	14 = yellow
3 = cyan	7 = light grey	11 = light cyan	15 = white
4 = red	8 = dark grey	12 = light red	

or

BH = 1: Set default palette to the number (0 or 1) in BL.

In black and white modes:

BL = 0: 1 for white

BL = 1: 1 for black

In 4 color graphics modes:

BL = 0: (1 = green, 2 = red, 3 = yellow)

BL = 1: (1 = cyan, 2 = magenta, 3 = white)

In 16 color graphics modes:

1 = blue	5 = magenta	9 = light blue	13 = light magenta
2 = green	6 = yellow	10 = light green	14 = yellow
3 = cyan	7 = light grey	11 = light cyan	15 = white
4 = red	8 = dark grey	12 = light red	

Note: For alpha modes, Palette Entry 0 indicates the border color. For graphics modes, Palette Entry 0 indicates the border and the background color.

Write Dot

Write a pixel (dot).

Entry Conditions

AH = 0CH

DX = *row number*

CX = *column number*

AL = *color value* (When Bit 7 of AL is set, the resultant color value of the dot is the exclusive OR of the current dot color value and the value in AL.)

Read Dot

Read a pixel (dot).

Entry Conditions

AH = 0DH

DX = *row number*

CX = *column number*

Exit Conditions

AL = *color value of dot read*

Write TTY

Write a character in teletype fashion. (Control characters are interpreted in the normal manner.)

Entry Conditions

- AH = 0EH
- AL = *character to write*
- BL = *foreground color* (graphics mode)
- BH = *display page* (alpha modes)

Get CRT Mode

Get the current video mode.

Entry Conditions

- AH = 0FH

Exit Conditions

- AL = *current video mode*. See the previous "Set CTR Mode" (AH = 0) for values
- AH = *number of columns on screen*
- BH = *current active display page*

Set Palette Registers

Sets palette registers.

Entry Conditions

AH = 10H

AL = 0: Set Palette register

BL = *number of palette register (0 -15) to set*

BH = *color value to store*

AL = 1: Set border color register

BH = *color value to store*

AL = 2: Set palette color value to store and
border registers

ES:DX points to a 17-byte list.

Bytes 0-15 = *values for palette registers 0-15*

Byte 16 = *value for border register*

Write String

Display a string of characters on screen.

Entry Conditions

AH = 13H

ES:BP = *pointer to start of string*

CX = *length of string* (attributes do not count)

DX = *starting cursor position* (DH = row, DL = column)

BH = *page number* (for text modes)

BL = *attribute for characters* (graphics modes)

AL = 00: Characters only string, cursor not updated

= 01: Characters only string, cursor updated

= 02: Character, attribute alternating string, cursor
not updated

= 03: Character, attribute alternating string, cursor
updated

Serial Communications

These routines provide asynchronous byte stream I/O from and to the RS-232C serial communications port. This device is labeled the auxiliary (AUX) I/O device in the device list maintained by MS-DOS.

Software Interrupts

14 hex (20 dec)

Function Summary

- AH = 0: Reset Comm port
- AH = 1: Transmit character
- AH = 2: Receive character
- AH = 3: Get current Comm status
- DX = *communication port number* (0 or 1)

Function Descriptions

Reset Comm Port

Reset (or initialize) the communication port according to the parameters in AL, DL, and DH.

Entry Conditions

AH = 0

AL = RS-232C parameters, as follows:

DX = port number (0 or 1)

7 6 5	4 3	2	1 0
Baud Rate	Parity	Stop Bits	Word Length

000 = 110 baud 00 = none 0 = 1 bit 10 = 7 bits

001 = 150 baud 01 = odd 1 = 2 bits 11 = 8 bits

010 = 300 baud 11 = even

011 = 600 baud

100 = 1200 baud

101 = 2400 baud

110 = 4800 baud

111 = 9600 baud

Exit Conditions

AX = RS-232C status; See the following "Get Current Comm Status" (AH = 3)

Transmit Character

Transmit (output) the character in AL (which is preserved).

Entry Conditions

AH = 1

AL = *character to transmit*

DX = *port number* (0 or 1)

Exit Conditions

AH = *RS-232C status*; See the following "Get Current Comm Status" (AH = 3). If Bit 7 is set, the routine was unable to transmit the character because of a timeout error.)

AL is preserved

Receive Character

Receive (input) a character in AL (wait for a character, if necessary). On exit, AH will contain the RS-232 status, except that only the error bits (1, 2, 3, 4, 7) can be set; the timeout bit (7), if set, indicates that data set ready was not received and the bits in AH are not meaningful. Thus, AH is non-zero only when an error occurred.

Entry Conditions

AH = 2

DX = *port number* (0 or 1)

Exit Conditions

AL = *character received*

AH = *RS-232C status*; See the following "Get Current Comm Status" (AH = 3)

Get Current Comm Status

Read the communication status into AX.

Entry Conditions

AH = 3

DX = *port number* (0 or 1)

Exit Conditions

AH = *RS-232C status*, as follows (set = true):

Bit 0 = data ready

Bit 1 = overrun error

Bit 2 = parity error

Bit 3 = framing error

Bit 4 = break detect

Bit 5 = transmitter holding register empty

Bit 6 = transmitter shift register empty

Bit 7 = timeout occurred

AL = *modem status*, as follows (set = true):

Bit 0 = delta clear to send

Bit 1 = delta data set ready

Bit 2 = trailing edge ring detector

Bit 3 = delta receive line signal detect

Bit 4 = clear to send

Bit 5 = data set ready

Bit 6 = ring indicator

Bit 7 = receive line signal detect

Line Printer

These routines provide an interface to the parallel line printer. This device is labeled "PRN" in the device list maintained by the operating system.

Software Interrupts

17 hex (23 dec)

Function Summary

- AH = 0: Print character
- AH = 1: Reset printer port
- AH = 2: Get current printer status

Function Descriptions

Print a Character

Entry Conditions

- AH = 0
- AL = *character to print*
- DX = *printer to be used* (0-2)

Exit Conditions

- 0AH = *printer status*. See the following "Get Current Printer Status" (AH = 2)
(If Bit 0 is set, the character could not be printed because of a timeout error.)

Reset Printer Port

Reset (or initialize) the printer port.

Entry Conditions

AH = 1

DX = *printer to be used* (0-2)

Exit Conditions

AH = *printer status*; See the following "Get Current Printer Status" (AH = 2)

Get Current Printer Status

Read the printer status into AH.

Entry Conditions

AH = 2

Exit Conditions

DX = *printer to be used* (0-2)

AH = *printer status as follows* (set = true):

Bit 0 = timeout occurred

Bit 1 = [unused]

Bit 2 = [unused]

Bit 3 = I/O error

Bit 4 = selected

Bit 5 = out of paper

Bit 6 = acknowledge

Bit 7 = not busy

System Clock

These routines provide methods of reading and setting the clock maintained by the system. This device is labeled **CLOCK** in the device list of the operating system. An interface for setting the multiplexer for audio source is also provided.

Software Interrupts

1A hex (26 dec)

Function Summary

AH	= 0:	Get time of day
AH	= 1:	Set time of day
AH	= 2:	Read real-time clock
AH	= 3:	Set real-time clock
AH	= 4:	Read date from real-time clock
AH	= 5:	Set the date in the real-time clock
AH	= 80H:	Set up sound multiplexer

The clock runs at the rate of 1,193,180/65,536 per second (about 18.2 times per second).

Function Descriptions

Get Time of Day

Get (read) the time of day in binary format.

Entry Conditions

AH = 0

Exit Conditions

CX = *high* (most significant) *portion of the clock count*

DX = *low* (least significant) *portion of the clock count*

AL = 0 if the clock was read or written (via AH = 0,1) within the current 24-hour period; otherwise, AL = 0

Set Time of Day

Set (write) the time of day using binary format.

Entry Conditions

AH = 1

CX = *high* (most significant) *portion of clock count*

DX = *low* (least significant) *portion of clock count*

Read Clock Time of Day

Read the time of day kept in the clock.

Entry Conditions

AH = 2

Exit Conditions

CH = hours in BCD

CL = minutes in BCD

DH = seconds in BCD

Set Clock Time of Day

Set the time of day kept in the clock.

Entry Conditions

AH = 3

CH = hours in BCD

CL = minutes in BCD

DH = seconds in BCD

Read Clock Date

Read the date kept in the clock.

Entry Conditions

AH = 4

Exit Conditions

CH = century in BCD

CL = year in BCD

DH = month in BCD

DL = day in BCD

Set Clock Date

Set the date kept in the clock.

Entry Conditions

AH = 5

CH = century in BCD

CL = year in BCD

DH = month in BCD

DL = day in BCD

Sound Multiplexer

Sets the multiplexer for audio source.

Entry Conditions

AH = 80

AL = *source of sound*

00 = 8253 channel 2

02 = audio in

03 = complex sound generator chip

Disk I/O Support for Diskette Only

System Configuration

Software Interrupt

13 hex (19 dec)

Function Summary

AH	= 0:	Reset diskette
AH	= 1:	Return status of last diskette operation
AH	= 2:	Read sector(s) from diskette
AH	= 3:	Write sector(s) to diskette
AH	= 4:	Verify sector(s) on diskette
AH	= 5:	Format track on diskette
AH	= 08H:	Read drive parameters
AH	= 15H:	Read DASD type
AH	= 16H:	Diskette change line status

Function Descriptions

Reset Diskette

Reset the diskette system. Resets associated hardware and recalibrates all diskette drives.

Entry Conditions

AH = 0

Exit Conditions

See the following "Exits From All Calls."

Return Status of Last Diskette Operation

Returns the diskette status of the last operation in AH.

Entry Conditions

AH = 1

Exit Conditions

AL = *status of the last operation*. For values, see the following "Exits From All Calls."

Read Sector(s) from Diskette

Read the desired sector(s) from the diskette into RAM.

Entry Conditions

AH = 2

DL = *drive number* (0-2 if Tandy 1000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

DH = *head number* (0-1)

CH = *track number* (0-79)

CL = *sector number* (1-9)

AL = *sector count* (1-9)

ES:BX = *pointer to disk buffer*

Exit Conditions

See the following "Exits from all Calls."

AL = *number of sectors read*

Write Sector(s) to Diskette

Write the desired sector(s) from RAM to disk.

Entry Conditions

AH = 3

DL = *drive number* (0-2 if Tandy 1000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

DH = *head number* (0-1)

CH = *track number* (0-79)

CL = *sector number* (1-9)

AL = *sector count* (1-9)

ES:BX = *pointer to disk buffer*

Exit Conditions

See the following "Exits From All Calls."

AL = *number of sectors written*

Verify Sector(s) on Diskette

Verify the desired sector(s) are readable.

Entry Conditions

AH = 4

DL = *drive number* (0-2 if Tandy 1000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

DH = *head number* (0-1)

CH = *track number* (0-79)

CL = *sector number* (1-9)

AL = *sector count* (1-9)

Exit Conditions

See the following "Exits From All Calls."

AL = *number of sectors verified*

Format on Diskette

Format the desired track.

Entry Conditions

AH = 5

AL = *sector count* (1-9)

DL = *drive number* (0-2 if Tandy 1000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

DH = *head number* (0-1)

CH = *track number* (0-79)

CL = *sector number* (1-9)

ES:BX = *pointer to a group of address fields for each track. Each address field is made up of 4 bytes. These are C, H, R, and N, where:*

C = *track number*

H = *head number*

R = *sector number*

N = *the number of bytes per sector*
(00 = 128, 01 = 256, 02 = 512, 03 = 1024)

There is one entry for every sector on a given track.

Exit Conditions

See the following "Exits From All Calls."

Read Drive Parameters

Return the drive parameters.

Entry Conditions

AH = 08H

DL = *drive number* (0-2 if Tandy 1000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

Exit Conditions

AX = 0

BH = 0

CH = *Maximum usable track number*

CL = *Maximum usable sector number*

DH = *Maximum usable head number*

DL = *Number of diskette drives installed* (0-2 if Tandy 1000TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

ES:DI = *Pointer to diskette drive parameter table for the maximum media type supported on the specified drive*

CF = 0: No error
CF = 1: Illegal parameter

Read DASD Type

Return the change line status.

Entry Conditions

AH = 15H
DL = *drive number* (0-1 if Tandy 10000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

Exit Conditions

CF = 1: Operation was not successful. Previous versions of the Tandy 1000 will return CF = 1.
AH = 1: Invalid command.
CF = 0: Operation was successful
AH = 0: Drive not present
= 1: Diskette, no change line available
= 2: Diskette, change line available

Diskette Change Line Status

Return the status of the diskette change line.

Entry Conditions

AH = 16H

DL = *drive number* (0-2 if Tandy 1000 TL; 0-1 if Tandy 1000 SL)

Exit Conditions

CF = 0: If AH = 0

CF = 1: If AH is non 0

AH = 0: Diskette change signal not active

= 1: Invalid diskette parameter

= 6: Diskette change signal active

= 80: Diskette drive not ready (drive door is open)

Exits From All Calls

AH = *Status of operation*, where set = true

Error Code	Condition
------------	-----------

01H	Illegal Function
-----	------------------

02H	Address Mark Not Found
-----	------------------------

03H	Write Protect Error
-----	---------------------

04H	Sector Not Found
-----	------------------

06H	Diskette Change Line Active
-----	-----------------------------

08H	DMA Overrun
-----	-------------

09H	Attempt to DMA Across a 64K Boundary
-----	--------------------------------------

10H	Bad CRC on Disk Read
-----	----------------------

20H	Controller Failure
-----	--------------------

40H	Seek Failure
-----	--------------

80H	Device Timeout, Device Failed to Respond
-----	--

[NC] = operation successful (AH = 0)

[C] = operation failed (AH = error status)

Equipment

This service returns the “equipment flag” (hardware configuration of the computer system) in the AX register.

Software Interrupts

11 hex (17 dec)

The “equipment flag” returned in the AX register has the following meanings for each bit:

Reset = the indicated equipment is not in the system

Set = the indicated equipment is in the system

Bit 0 = diskette installed

Bit 1 = math coprocessor

Bits 2,3 always = 11

Bits 4,5 *initial video mode*

01 40x25 Color

10 80x25 Color

11 80x25 Monochrome

Bits 6,7 *number of diskette drives* (only if Bit 0 = 1)

00 1

01 2

10 3 (Tandy 1000 TL ONLY)

Bit 8 0 = DMA present (**always present**)

1 = no DMA present

Bits 9, 10, 11 *number of RS232 cards*

Bit 12 game I/O adapter present (joystick)

Bit 13 not used

Bits 14,15 *number of printers*

Memory Size

This service returns the total number of kilobytes of RAM in the computer system (contiguous starting from Address 0) in the AX register. The maximum value returned is 640.

Software Interrupts

12 hex (18 dec)

Bootstrap Loader

Track 0, Sector 1 is read into Segment 0, Offset 7C00.

Control is then transferred as follows: (CS) = 0000H

(IP) = 7C00H

(DL) – drive where bootstrap sector was read

Software Interrupts

19 hex (25 dec)

System Services

Software Interrupts

15 hex (21dec)

Function Summary

AH = C0H: Machine identification

AH = 15H: Read and write EEPROM data

Function Descriptions

Machine Identification

The machine identification algorithm is the same as all previous Tandy 1000's. As well, the Tandy 1000 SL and Tandy 1000 TL computers have a new BIOS call to further identify the machine.

All current and previous Tandy 1000 computers have the following machine identification:

Byte at address FFFF:E = FF hex (compatible with IBM PC)

Byte at address FC000:0 = 21 hex (Tandy 1000 unique)

Entry Conditions

AH = C0H

Exit Conditions

If CF = 0

ES:BX = *pointer to machine identification data in ROM*

DW 0003 *Byte count of data that follows (always 3)*

DB *xx* *Model ID*

DB *xx* *Submodel ID*

DB *xx* *BIOS revision level*

IF CF = 1, the call is not supported (all previous versions of the Tandy 1000)

	Tandy 1000 SL	Tandy 1000 TL
Model ID	FF	FF
Submodel ID	00	01
BIOS revision level	.xx	.xx

Function Descriptions

Read From EEPROM

Read the 16-bit value from the indicated EEPROM word.

Entry Conditions

AH = 70H

AL = 0

BL = *word number to read* (0-63)

Exit Conditions

DX = *word value*

Carry flag set indicates EEPROM call not supported.

Write to EEPROM

Write a 16-bit value to the indicated EEPROM word.

Entry Conditions

AH = 70H

AL = 1

BL = *word number to write* (0-63)

DX = *word value to write*

Exit Conditions

Carry Flag set indicates EEPROM call not supported.

Tandy 1000 SL and Tandy 1000 TL BIOS Sound Support

The BIOS in these computers has the same support for sound as all previous Tandy 1000 computers, as well as support for additional sound features. The API for this new BIOS support is defined in the following information.

Software Interrupts

1A hex (26 dec)

Function Summary

AH	=	81H:	Get sound status
AH	=	82H:	Input sound (from the microphone)
AH	=	83H:	Output sound (to the speaker)
AH	=	84H:	Stop sound input and output

Function Descriptions

Get Sound Status

Gets sound status.

Entry Conditions

AH = 81H

Exit Conditions

Not Busy:

AX = 00C4H

CF = 0

Busy:

AX = 00C4H

CF = 1

Input Sound

Inputs sound from the microphone.

Entry Conditions

AH = 82H

ES:BX = *buffer address*

CX = *buffer length*

DX = *transfer rate* (1-4095, where 1 is the fastest transfer rate)

Exit Conditions

Not Busy:

AH = 0

CF = 0

Busy:

AH = 0

CF = 1

Output Sound

Outputs sound to the speaker.

Entry Conditions

AH = 83H: Output sound (to the speaker)

ES:BX = *buffer address*

CX = *buffer length*

DX = *transfer rate* (1-4095, where 1 is the fastest transfer rate)

AL = *volume* (0-7, where 0 = no sound)

Exit Conditions

Not Busy:

AH = 0

CF = 0

Busy:

AH = 0

CF = 1

Stop Sound Input and Output

Stops sound input and output.

Entry Conditions

AH = 84H

Notes: The transfer rate values in register DX are not the same for calls AH = 82H and AH = 83H. To input a buffer of data with the AH = 82H call with a given DX value, then play it back with the AH = 83H call so that it sounds the same, set the DX value for output approximately 11.5 times as large as the DX value for input when run on a Tandy 1000 SL and approximately 10.0 times faster on a Tandy 1000 TL.

This BIOS call uses the DMA hardware to input and output the sound buffer. When functions AH=82H and AH=83H are called, the BIOS initiates the I/O and returns to the calling program immediately. When the DMA transfer is complete, the BIOS will receive a hardware interrupt and will execute a software INT 15H with AH=91H and AL=FBH. If an application program needs to know when the data transfer is complete, it has to hook INT 15H and watch for this event.

The BIOS call masks the hardware restriction of not being able to DMA across a 64 kilobyte memory address boundary from the calling program.

Keyboard ASCII and Scan Codes

Function Keys, Cursor Keypad, Numeric Keypad

SCAN CODE	NORM CASE ASCII CODE		UPPER CASE ASCII CODE		CTRL CASE ALT CASE ASCII CODE		ASCII CODE		
3B	F1	x3B	F11	x54	F21	x5E	F31	x68	
3C	F2	x3C	F12	x55	F22	x5F	F32	x69	
3D	F3	x3D	F13	x56	F23	x60	F33	x6A	
3E	F4	x3E	F14	x57	F24	x61	F34	x6B	
3F	F5	x3F	F15	x58	F25	x62	F35	x6C	
40	F6	x40	F16	x59	F26	x63	F36	x6D	
41	F7	x41	F17	x5A	F27	x64	F37	x6E	
42	F8	x42	F18	x5B	F28	x65	F38	x6F	
43	F9	x43	F19	x5C	F29	x66	F39	x70	
44	F10	x44	F20	x5D	F30	x67	F40	x71	
57	F11	e8500		e8700		e8900		e8B00	
58	F12	e8600		e8800		e8A00		e8C00	
E037	PrintScrn*		PrintScrn*		CPPrSc	x72	SysRq*	--	
46	Scr Lock -		Scr Lock-		--	--	Scr Lock	--	
E145	Pause* --		Pause* --				Pause*	--	
E046					Break*	x00			
E052	Insert		x52	e52E0	--	e92E0	--	eA200	
E047	Home		x47	e47E0	x77	e77E0	--	e9700	
E049	Page Up		x49	e49E0	x84	e84E0	--	e9900	
E053	Delete		x53	e53E0	--	e93E0	--	eA300	
E04F	End		x4F	e4FE0	x75	e75E0	--	e9F00	
E051	Page Down		x51	e51E0	x76	e76E0	--	eA100	
E048	Up		x48	e48E0	--	e8DE0	--	e9800	
E04B	Left		x4B	e4BE0	x73	e73E0	--	e9B00	
E050	Down		x50	e50E0	--	e91E0	--	eA000	
E04D	Right		x4D	e4DE0	x74	e74E0	--	e9D00	
45	Num Lock--		Num Lock --		--	--	Num Lock	--	
E035	/	2F	/	2F		e9500		eA400	
37	*	2A	*	2A		e9600		e37F0	
47	Home	x47	7	37	ClrSc	x77	Y	--	
48	UP	x48	8	38		e8D00	Y	--	
49	Page Up	x49	9	39	TOS	x84	Y	--	
4A	-	2D	-	2D		e8E00		e4AF0	
4B	Left	x4B	4	34	LWord	x73	Y	--	
4C		e4CF0	5	35		e8F00	Y	--	
4D	RIGHT	x4D	6	36	RWord	x74	Y	--	
4E	+	2B	+	2B		e9000		e4EF0	
4F	End	x4F	1	31	ErEOL	x75	Y	--	
50	DOWN	x50	2	32		e9100	Y	--	
51	Pg Dn	x51	3	33	ErEOS	x76	Y	--	
52	Ins	x52	0	30		e9200	Y	--	
53	Del	x53	.	2E		e9300	--	--	
E01C	Enter	0D	Enter	0D	LF	0A		eA600	
01	ESC	1B	ESC	1B	ESC	1B		e01F0	
02	1	31	!	21	--	--	ALT1	x78	
03	2	32	@	40	NULL	00		ALT2	x79
04	3	33	#	23	--	--		ALT3	x7A
05	4	34	\$	24	--	--		ALT4	x7B
06	5	35	%	25	--	--		ALT5	x7C
07	6	36	^	5E	RS	1E		ALT6	x7D
08	7	37	&	26	--	--		ALT7	x7E
09	8	38	*	2A	--	--		ALT8	x7F

SCAN CODE	NORM CASE ASCII CODE		UPPER CASE ASCII CODE		CTRL CASE ALT CASE ASCII CODE		ASCII CODE	
0A	9	39	{	28	--	--	ALT9	x80
0B	-	30	}	29	--	--	ALT0	x81
0C	-	2D	-	5F	US	1F	ALT-	x82
0D	=	3D	+	2B	-	--	ALT=	x83
0E	BS	08	BS	08	DEL	7F		e0EF0
0F	HT	09	BTAB	x0F		e9400		eA500
10	q	71	Q	51	DC1	11	ALTQ	x10
11	w	77	W	57	ETB	17	ALTW	x11
12	e	65	E	45	ENQ	05	ALTE	x12
13	r	72	R	52	DC2	12	ALTR	x13
14	t	74	T	54	DC4	14	ALTT	x14
15	y	79	Y	59	EM	19	ALTY	x15
16	u	75	U	55	NAK	15	ALTU	x16
17	i	69	I	49	HT	09	ALTI	x17
18	o	6F	O	4F	SI	0F	ALTO	x18
19	p	70	P	50	DLE	10	ALTP	x19
1A	[	5B	{	7B	ESC	1B		e1AF0
1B	]	5D	}	7D	GS	1D		e1BF0
1C	Enter	0D	Enter	0D	LF	0A		e1CF0
1D	Ctrl	--	Ctrl	--	Ctrl	--	Ctrl	--
E01D	Ctrl	--	Ctrl	--	Ctrl	--	Ctrl	--
1E	a	61	A	41	SOH	01	ALTA	x1E
1F	s	73	S	53	DC3	13	ALTS	x1F
20	d	64	D	44	EOT	04	ALTD	x20
21	f	66	F	46	ACK	06	ALTF	x21
22	g	67	G	47	BEL	07	ALTG	x22
23	h	68	H	48	BS	08	ALTH	x23
24	j	6A	J	4A	LF	0A	ALTJ	x24
25	k	6B	K	4B	VT	0B	ALTK	x25
26	l	6C	L	4C	FF	0C	ALTL	x26
27	:	3B	:	3A	--	--		e27F0
28	'	27	'	22	--	--		e28F0
29	~	60	~	7E	--	--		e29F0
2A	LShift	--	LShift	--			LShift	--
2B	\	5C	|	7C	FS	1C		e2BF0
2C	z	7A	Z	5A	SUB	1A	ALTZ	x2C
2D	x	78	X	58	CAN	18	ALT X	x2D
2E	c	63	C	43	ETX	03	ALTC	x2E
2F	v	76	V	56	SYN	16	ALTV	x2F
30	b	62	B	42	STX	02	ALTB	x30
31	n	6E	N	4E	SO	0E	ALT N	x31
32	m	6D	M	4D	CR	0D	ALTM	x32
33	,	2C	<	3C	--	--		e33F0
34	.	2E	>	3E	--	--		e34F0
35	/	2F	?	3F	--	--		e35F0
36	RShift	--	RShift	--	RShift	--	RShift	--
38	Alt	--	Alt	--	Alt	--	Alt	--
E038	Alt	--	Alt	--	Alt	--	Alt	--
39	SPACE	20	SPACE	20	SPACE	20	SPACE	20
3A	CapsLock	--	CapsLock	--	--	--	CapsLock	--
56+	\	5C	|	7C	--	--	--	--

Keyboard Tables

These symbols have special meanings in the following tables:

- Indicates that no ASCII code is generated for the key combination.
- x Values preceded by x are extended ASCII codes. The keyboard driver returns a NULL ASCII code and the number in the table for the scan code.
- e Values preceded by e are produced when you are using an enhanced BIOS. When using the BIOS Read Key function, these keys are either discarded or translated to a value compatible with older computers. When using the Enhanced Read Key function, AH = 10H, INT 16H, these keys are returned to your program.
- + A + in the scan code field denotes the extra key on the international version of the enhanced keyboard. This key is not available on the standard USA enhanced keyboard.
- ¥ The ALT key provides a way to generate the ASCII code of the decimal numbers in the range 1 to 255. Hold down the ALT key while typing a number in that range on the numeric keypad. When you release the ALT key, the character of the ASCII code you typed is generated and displayed.
- BREAK Empties the keyboard queue and executes the keyboard break interrupt (INT 1BH). Places a NULL ASCII scan code in the keyboard queue.
- PAUSE Delays system activity until you press another key.
- PrtSC or Print Scrn Invokes the BIOS print screen function (INT 5H).

CPrSc	Tells MS-DOS to direct console output to both the printer and the console. A second CPrSc halts printer output.
SysRq	Interrupts the current process and allows another program to take control, if supported. When the SysRq key is pressed, INT 15H is invoked with AX = 8500H. When the key is released, INT 15H is invoked with AX = 8501H.
Reset	Restarts your computer.

MS-DOS Memory Map

Hexadecimal

Starting Address

(Segment:Offset)

Description

000:00	BIOS Interrupt Vectors
000:80	Available Interrupt Vectors
0040:00 ¹	ROM BIOS Data Area
0050:00	MSDOS and BASIC Data Area
0070:00	I/O.SYS Drivers
0190:00 ²	MS-DOS
05B0:00 ²	Available to user
X800:00 ³	Video RAM in 32K video modes
XC00:00 ³	Video RAM in 16K video mode
B800:00 ⁴	Video RAM Window (32K)
E000:00	ROM Drive
F000:00	Reserved for system ROM
FC00:00	System BIOS ROM

Notes:

¹ Detailed description in following pages.

² Approximate address; subject to change.

³ X is defined as follows:

Memory Size	X Value
128K	1
256K	3
384K	5
512K	7
640K	9
768K	B

⁴ Video memory accessed through the B800:0 window for all video modes.

ROM BIOS Data Area

The following table gives the starting offset, and length of each BIOS device driver. This area is located at segment 40:00.

Comm card address	0000	8 (1 word per card)
Printer addresses	0008	8 (1 word per printer)
Devices installed	0010	2 (16 bits)
Not used	0012	1
Memory size	0013	2 (1 word)
I/O channel RAM size	0015	2 (1 word)
KBD data area	0017	39
Disk data area	003E	11
Video data area	0049	30
Not used	0067	5
Clock data area	006C	5
KBD Break & Reset flags	0071	3
Not used	0074	4
Printer timeout counter	0078	4 (1 byte per printer)
Comm timeout counter	007C	4 (1 byte per card)
KBD extra data area	0080	4 (2 words)

The structure and usage of the Video driver RAM data area is as follows:

HEX Offset	From Segment	Length and Intended Use
	0040:0000	
49H		1 byte - current CRT mode (0-7)
4AH		1 word - screen column width
4CH		1 word - byte length of screen
4EH		1 word - address/offset of beginning of current display page
50H		8 words- row/col coordinates of the cursor for each of up to 8 display pages
60H		1 word - current cursor type (See "Set Cursor Type" for correct encoding)
62		1 byte - current display page 1 word - base address + 4 of the CRT controller card
65H		1 byte - copy of value written to the Mode Select Register
66H		1 byte - current color palette setting

The equipment check BIOS call (INT 11H) and memory size BIOS call (INT 12H) return information from the following data areas:

HEX Offset

From Segment

0040:0000

Length and

Intended Use

10H

Devices installed word

13H

Memory installed word

The structure and usage of the diskette driver RAM data area is as follows:

HEX Offset

From Segment

0040:0000

Length and

Intended Use

3EH

1 byte - drive recalibration status - bit 3-0, if 0 then drive 3-0 needs recalibration before next Seek. Bit 7 indicates interrupt occurrence

3FH

1 byte - motor status - Bit 3-0 drive 3-0 motor is on/off. Bit 7 - current operation is write, requires delay

40H

1 byte - motor turn off timeout counter (see Timer ISR)

41H

1 byte - disk status - codes are defined as in this section

42H

7 bytes - 7 bytes of status returned by the controller during result phase of operation

Value	Error Condition
01H	Illegal Function
02H	Address Mark Not Found
03H	Write Protect Error
04H	Sector Not Found
06H	Diskette Change Line Active
08H	DMA Overrun
09H	Attempt to DMA Across a 64K Boundary
10H	Bad CRC on Disk Read
20H	Controller Failure
40H	Seek Failure
80H	Device Timeout, Device Failed to Respond

The structure and usage of the RS232 driver RAM data area is as follows:

HEX Offset

From Segment
0040:0000

Length and
Intended Use

00H	4 words - Base address of each one of 4 possible comm cards
7CH	4 words - 1 word timeout count for each of 4 possible comm cards

The structure and usage of the Keyboard driver RAM data area is as follows:

HEX Offset**From Segment****0040:0010****Length and
Intended Use**

17	1 byte-	Keyboard shift state flag returned by function 02
	Bits 7-	INSERT state active, 6 - CAPS LOCK on/off, 5 - NUM LOCK on/off, 4 - SCROLL LOCK on/off, 3 - ALT key pressed 2 - CTRL key pressed 1 - Left SHIFT key pressed, 0 - Right SHIFT key pressed,
18	1byte- Bits	Secondary shift state flag, INSERT key pressed, 6 - CAPS LOCK pressed, 5 - NUM LOCK pressed, 4 - SCROLL LOCK NUM LOCK pressed, 4 - SCROLL pressed, 4 - SCROLL LOCK pressed, 3 - Pause on/off, pressed, 3 - Pause on/off, 2,1,0 - not used
19	1 byte-	Used to store ALT keypad entry
1A	1 word-	Pointer to beginning of the keyboard buffer
1C	1 word-	Pointer to end of the keyboard buffer
1E	16-	Keyboard buffer (enough for words)
	15-	Type ahead entries

The structure and usage of the clock service routine is as follows:

HEX Offset**From Segment****0040:0000****Length and****Intended Use**

6CH	1 word -	Least significant 16 bits of clock count
6EH	1 word -	Most significant 16 bits of clock count
70H	1 byte -	Twentyfour hour rollover flag

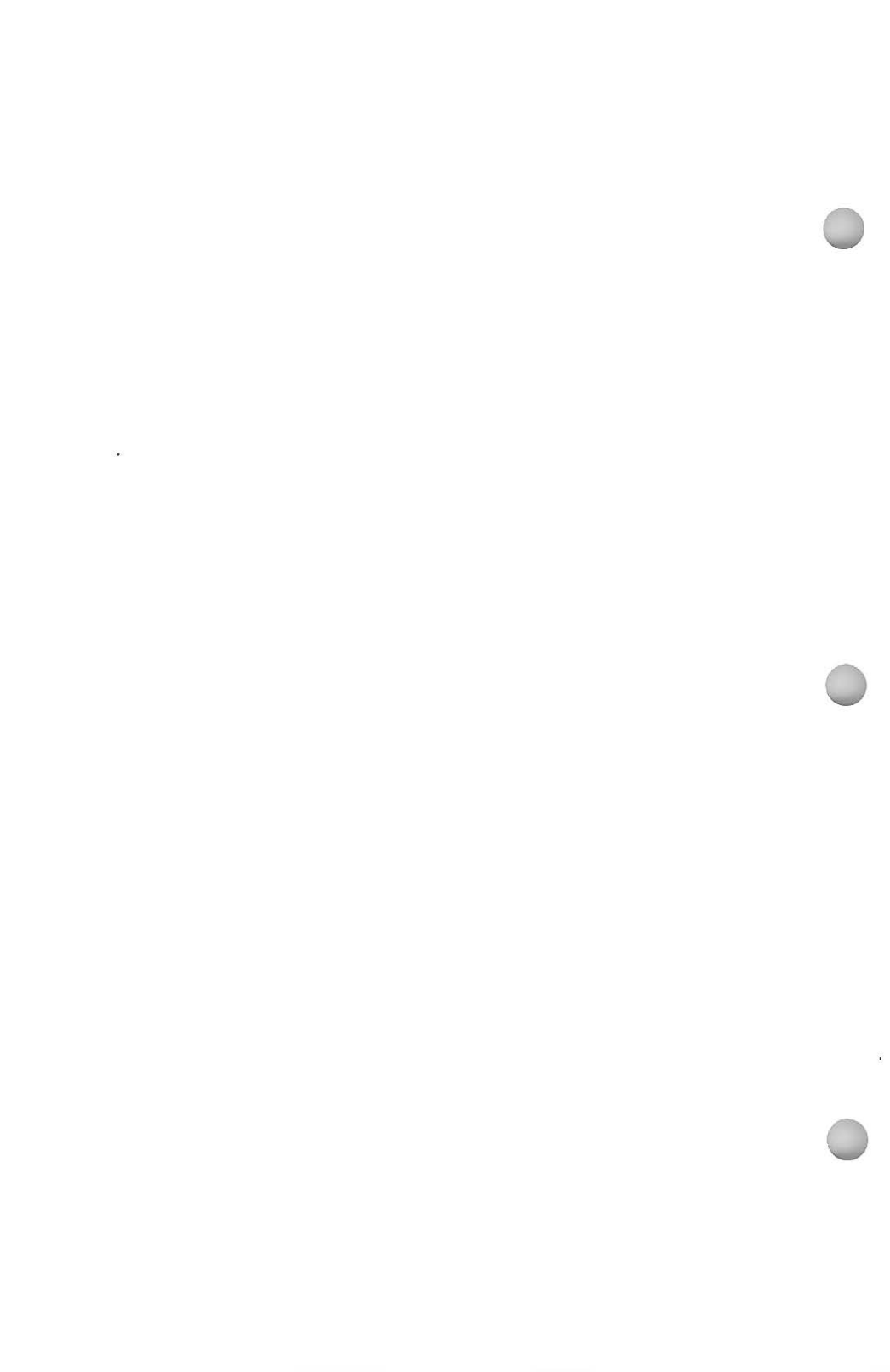
Additional Data Area

HEX Offset
From Segment
0040:0000

B0H	2 words	international support
B4H	1 byte	0 = No monochrome monitor FFH = Monochrome monitor
B5H	1 byte	Bit 0: 0 = Drive A is 5-1/4" 1 = Drive A is 3-1/2" Bit 1: 0 = Drive B is 5-1/4" 1 = Drive B is 3-1/2" Bit 2: 0 = Tandy 1000 keyboard layout 1 = IBM keyboard layout Bit 3: 0 = Slow CPU speed mode 1 = Fast CPU speed mode Bit 4: 0 = Internal color video support enabled 1 = Internal color video support disabled, external color video enabled

HEX Offset
From Segment
0040:0000

		Bit 5: 0	= No external mono-
			chrome video installed
		1	= External monochrome video installed
B6H	1 byte	Bit 0:	0 = Drive C is 5-1/4"
			1 = Drive C is 3-1/2"
40:C2	1 byte	01	= ROM drive is A:
		02	= ROM drive is B:
		03	= ROM drive is C:



KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key		Hardware Kybrd		Kybrd Interrupt		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
#	Descript.	Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
1	Esc	76	F076	01	81	011B	011B	011B	----	011B	011B	011B	0100
2	F1	05	F005	3B	BB	3B00	5400	5E00	6800	3B00	5400	5E00	6800
3	F2	06	F006	3C	BC	3C00	5500	5F00	6900	3C00	5500	5F00	6900
4	F3	04	F004	3D	BD	3D00	5600	6000	6A00	3D00	5600	6000	6A00
5	F4	0C	F00C	3E	BE	3E00	5700	6100	6B00	3E00	5700	6100	6B00
6	F5	03	F003	3F	BF	3F00	5800	6200	6C00	3F00	5800	6200	6C00
7	F6	0B	F00B	40	C0	4000	5900	6300	6D00	4000	5900	6300	6D00
8	F7	83	F083	41	C1	4100	5A00	6400	6E00	4100	5A00	6400	6E00
9	F8	0A	F00A	42	C2	4200	5B00	6500	6F00	4200	5B00	6500	6F00
10	F9	01	F001	43	C3	4300	5C00	6600	7000	4300	5C00	6600	7000
11	F10	09	F009	44	C4	4400	5D00	6700	7100	4400	5D00	6700	7100
12	F11	78	F078	57	D7	----	----	----	----	8500	8700	8900	8B00
13	F12	07	F007	58	D8	----	----	----	----	8600	8800	8A00	8C00
14	Print Scrn	E07C	E0F07C	E02AE037	E0B7E0AA	Note ¹	Note ¹	7200	----	Note ¹	Note ¹	7200	----
15	Scroll Lock	7E	F07E	46	C6	Note ²	Note ²	----	Note ²	Note ²	Note ²	----	Note ²
16	Pause Break	E11477	E1F014F077	E11D45	E19DC5	Note ³	Note ³	Note ⁴	Note ³	Note ³	Note ³	Note ⁴	Note ³
17	~ or \	0E	F00E	2B	AB	2960	297E	----	----	6000	7E00	----	2900
18	! or 1	16	F016	02	82	0231	0221	----	7800	0231	0221	----	7800

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	Hardware Kybrd		Kybrd Interrupt		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
19	@ or 2	1E	F01E	03	83	0332	0340	0300	7900	0332	0340	0300	7900
20	# or 3	26	F026	04	84	0433	0423	----	7A00	0433	0423	----	7A00
21	\$ or 4	25	F025	05	85	0534	0524	----	7B00	0534	0524	----	7B00
22	% or 5	2E	F02E	06	86	0635	0625	----	7C00	0635	0625	----	7C00
23	^ or 6	36	F036	07	87	0736	075E	071E	7D00	0736	075E	071E	7D00
24	& or 7	3D	F03D	08	88	0837	0826	----	7E00	0837	0826	----	7E00
25	* or 8	3E	F03E	09	89	0938	092A	----	7F00	0938	092A	----	7F00
26	(or 9	46	F046	0A	8A	0A39	0A28	----	8000	0A39	0A28	----	8000
27	) or 0	45	F045	0B	8B	0B34	0B29	----	8100	0B34	0B29	----	8100
28	_ or -	4E	F04E	0C	8C	0C2D	0C5F	0C1F	8200	0C2D	0C5F	0C1F	8200
29	+ or =	55	F055	0D	8D	0D3D	0D2B	----	8300	0D3D	0D2B	----	8300
30	Backspace	66	F066	0E	8E	0E08	0E08	0E7F	----	0E08	0E08	0E7F	0E00
31	Insert	E070	E0F070	E02AE052	E0D2E0AA	5200	5200	----	----	52E0	52E0	52E0	A200
32	Home	E06C	E0F06C	E02AE047	E0C7E0AA	4700	4700	7700	----	47E0	47E0	77E0	9700
33	Pg Up	E07D	E0F07D	E02AE049	E0C9E0AA	4900	4900	8400	----	49E0	49E0	84E0	9900
34	Num Lock	77	F077	45	C5	Note ⁵	Note ⁵	----	Note ⁵	Note ⁵	Note ⁵	----	Note ⁵
35	/	E04A	E0F04A	E035	E0B5	352F	352F	----	----	E02F	E02F	9500	A400
36	*	7C	F07C	37	B7	372A	372A	----	----	372A	372A	9600	3700
37	-	7B	F07B	4A	CA	4A2D	4A2D	----	----	4A2D	4A2D	8E00	4A00

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	Hardware Kybrd		Kybrd Interrupt		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
38	Tab	0D	F00D	0F	8F	0F90	0F00	-----	-----	0F09	0F00	9400	A500
39	Q or q	15	F015	10	90	1071	1051	1011	1000	1071	1051	1011	1000
40	W or w	1D	F01D	11	91	1177	1157	1117	1100	1177	1157	1117	1100
41	E or e	24	F024	12	92	1265	1245	1205	1200	1265	1245	1205	1200
42	R or r	2D	F02D	13	93	1372	1352	1312	1300	1372	1352	1312	1300
43	T or t	2C	F02C	14	94	1474	1454	1414	1400	1474	1454	1414	1400
44	Y or y	35	F035	15	95	1579	1559	1519	1500	1579	1559	1519	1500
45	U or u	3C	F03C	16	96	1675	1655	1615	1600	1675	1655	1615	1600
46	I or i	43	F043	17	97	1769	1749	1709	1700	1769	1749	1709	1700
47	O or o	44	F044	18	98	186F	184F	180F	1800	186F	184F	180F	1800
48	P or p	4D	F04D	19	99	1970	1950	1910	1900	1970	1950	1910	1900
49	{ or [	54	F054	1A	9A	1A5B	1A7B	1A1B	-----	1A5B	1A7B	1A1B	1A00
50	} or \	5B	F05B	1B	9B	1B5D	1B7D	1B1D	-----	1B5D	1B7D	1B1D	1B00
51	| or `	5D	F05D	2B	AB	2B5C	2B7C	2B1C	-----	2B5C	2B7C	2B1C	2B00
52	Delete	E071	E0F071	E02AE053	E0D3E0AA	5300	5300	-----	-----	53E0	53E0	93E0	A300
53	End	E069	E0F069	E02AE04F	E0CFE0AA	4F00	4F00	7500	-----	4FE0	4FE0	75E0	9F00
54	Page Down	E07A	E0F07A	E02AE051	E0D1E0AA	5100	5100	7600	-----	51E0	51E0	76E0	A100
55	7 or Home	6C	F06C	47	C7	4700	4737	7700	Note ⁶	4700	4737	7700	Note ⁶
56	8	75	F075	48	C8	4800	4838	-----	Note ⁶	4800	4838	8D00	Note ⁶
57	9 or Page Up	7D	F07D	49	C9	4900	4939	8400	Note ⁶	4900	4939	8400	Note ⁶

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	Hardware Kybrd		Kybrd Interrupt		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
58	+	79	F079	4E	CE	4E2B	4E2B	----	----	4E2B	4E2B	9000	4E00
59	Caps Lock	58	F058	3A	BA	Note ⁷	Note ⁷	----	Note ⁷	Note ⁷	Note ⁷	----	Note ⁷
60	A or a	1C	F01C	1E	9E	1E61	1E41	1E01	1E00	1E61	1E41	1E01	1E00
61	S or s	1B	F01B	1F	9F	1F73	1F53	1F13	1F00	1F73	1F53	1F13	1F00
62	D or d	23	F023	20	A0	2064	2044	2004	2000	2064	2044	2004	2000
63	F or f	2B	F02B	21	A1	2166	2146	2106	2100	2166	2146	2106	2100
64	G or g	34	F034	22	A2	2267	2247	2207	2200	2267	2247	2207	2200
65	H or h	33	F033	23	A3	2368	2348	2308	2300	2368	2348	2308	2300
66	J or j	3B	F03B	24	A4	246A	244A	240A	2400	246A	244A	240A	2400
67	K or k	42	F042	25	A5	256B	254B	250B	2500	256B	254B	250B	2500
68	L or l	4B	F04B	26	A6	266C	264C	260C	2600	266C	264C	260C	2600
69	: or ;	4C	F04C	27	A7	273B	273A	----	----	273B	273A	----	2700
70	" or '	52	F052	28	A8	2827	2822	----	----	2827	2822	----	2800
71	Enter	5A	F05A	1C	9C	1C0D	1C0D	1C0A	----	1C0D	1C0D	1C0A	1C00
72	4	6B	F06B	4B	CB	4B00	4B34	7300	Note ⁶	4B00	4B34	7300	Note ⁶
73	5	73	F073	4C	CC	----	4C35	---	Note ⁶	4C00	4C35	8F00	Note ⁶
74	6	74	F074	4D	CD	4D00	4D36	7400	Note ⁶	4D00	4D36	7400	Note ⁶

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

[illegible]

KEYBOARD SCAN CODES

Key #	Key Descript.	Hardware Kybrd		Kybrd Interrupt		Standard ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)				Extended ASCII (Scancode/ASCII code)			
		Make Code	Break Code	Make Code	Break Code	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt	Norm	Shift	Ctrl	Alt
95	Right Alt	E011	E0F011	E038	E0B8	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉
96	Right Ctrl	E014	E0F014	E01D	E09D	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉	Note ¹⁰ ₉
97	Left Arrow	E06B	E0F06B	E02AE04B	E0CBE0AA	4B00	4B00	7300	----	4BE0	4BE0	73E0	9B00
98	Down Arrow	E072	E0F072	E02AE050	E0D0E0AA	5000	5000	----	----	50E0	50E0	91E0	A000
99	Right Arrow	E074	E0F074	E024E04D	E0CDE0AA	4D00	4000	7400	----	4DE0	4DE0	74E0	9D00 ⁶
100	0 or Ins	70	F070	52	D2	5200	5230	----	Note ⁶	5200	523H	9200	Note ⁶
101	. or Del	71	F071	53	D3	5300	532E	----	----	5300	532E	9300	----
102	Enter	E05A	E0F05A	E01C	E09C	1C0D	1C0D	1C0A	----	E00D	E00D	E00A	A600

NOTES

Note1 —INT 05H is invoked and a screen dump is performed

Note2 —the scroll lock active bit is toggled

Note3 —the pause state is initiated

Note4 —INT 1BH is invoked

Note5 —the numlock active bit is toggled

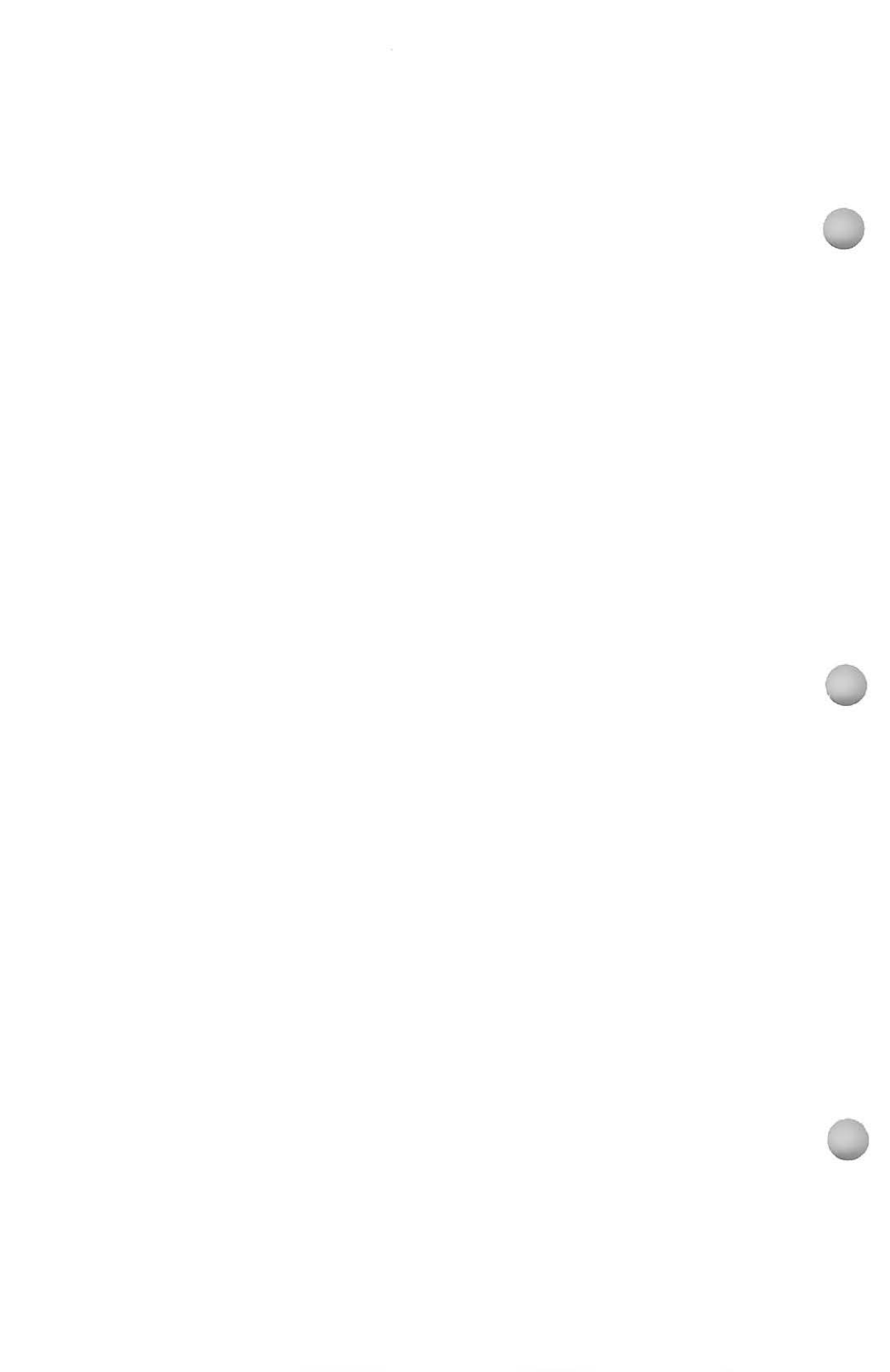
Note6 —ALT num pad generates raw ascii code of typed number

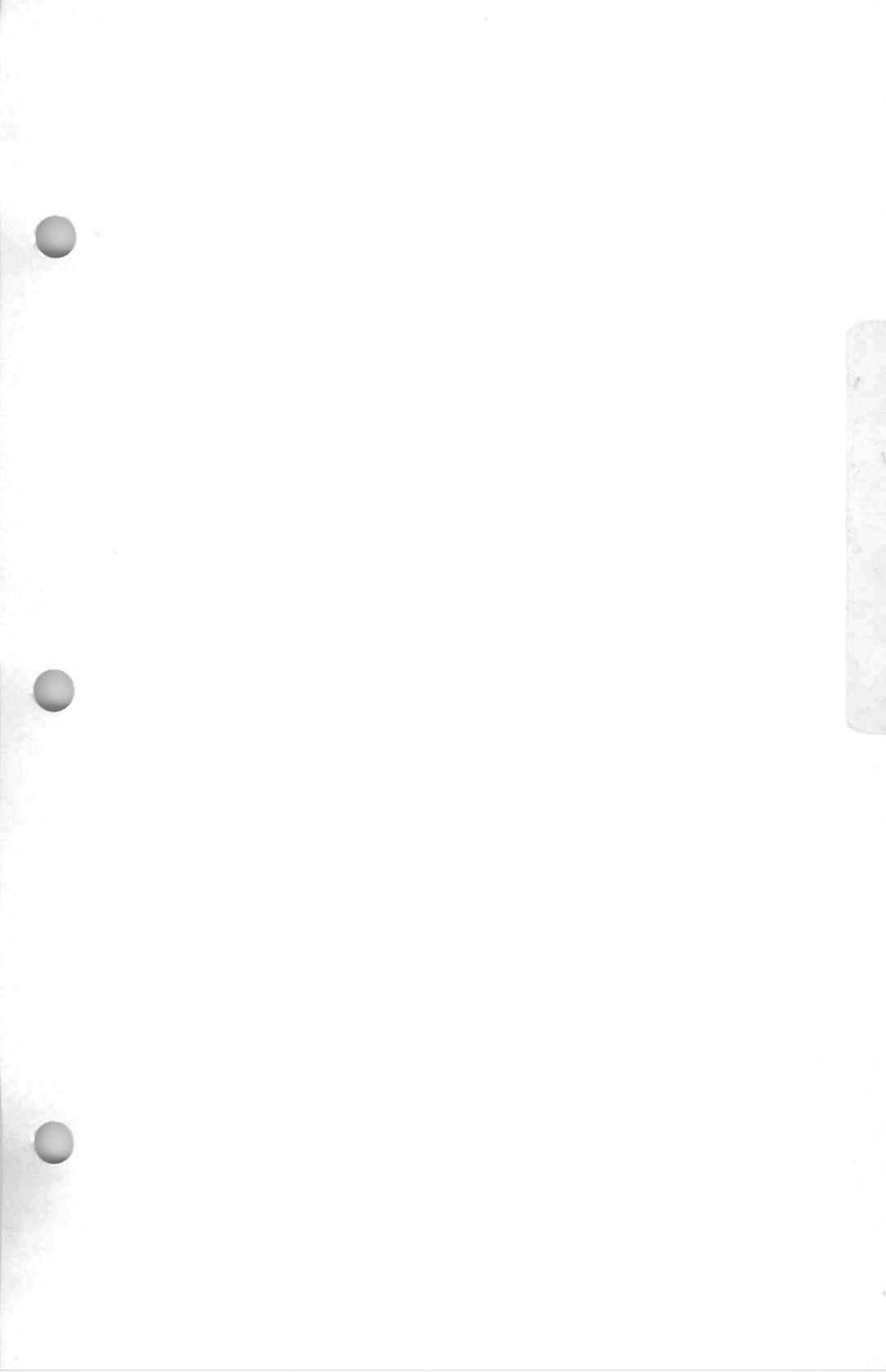
Note7 —the caps lock active bit is toggled

Note8 —hold shift lock active until key is released

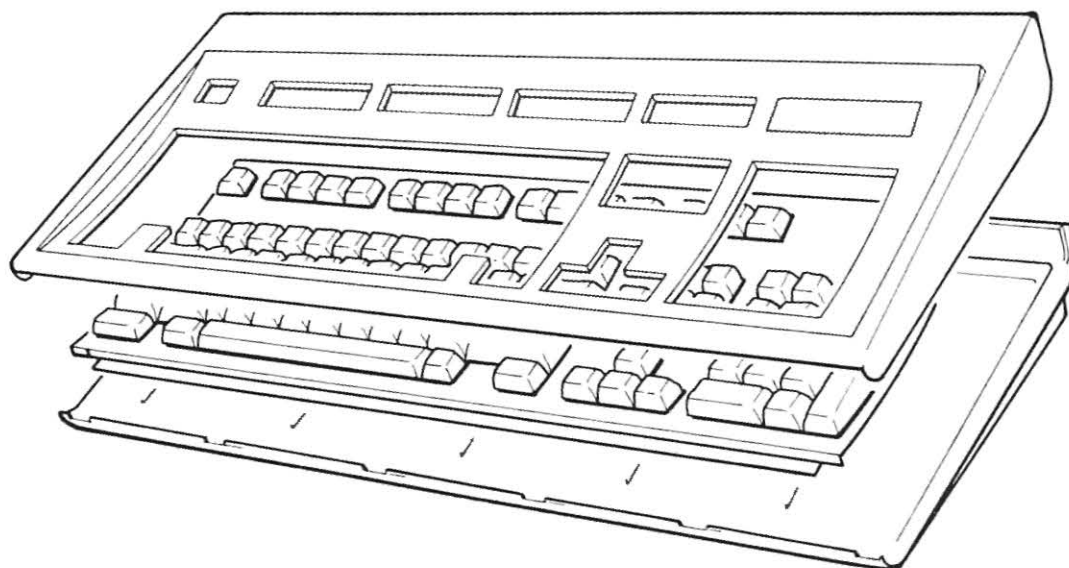
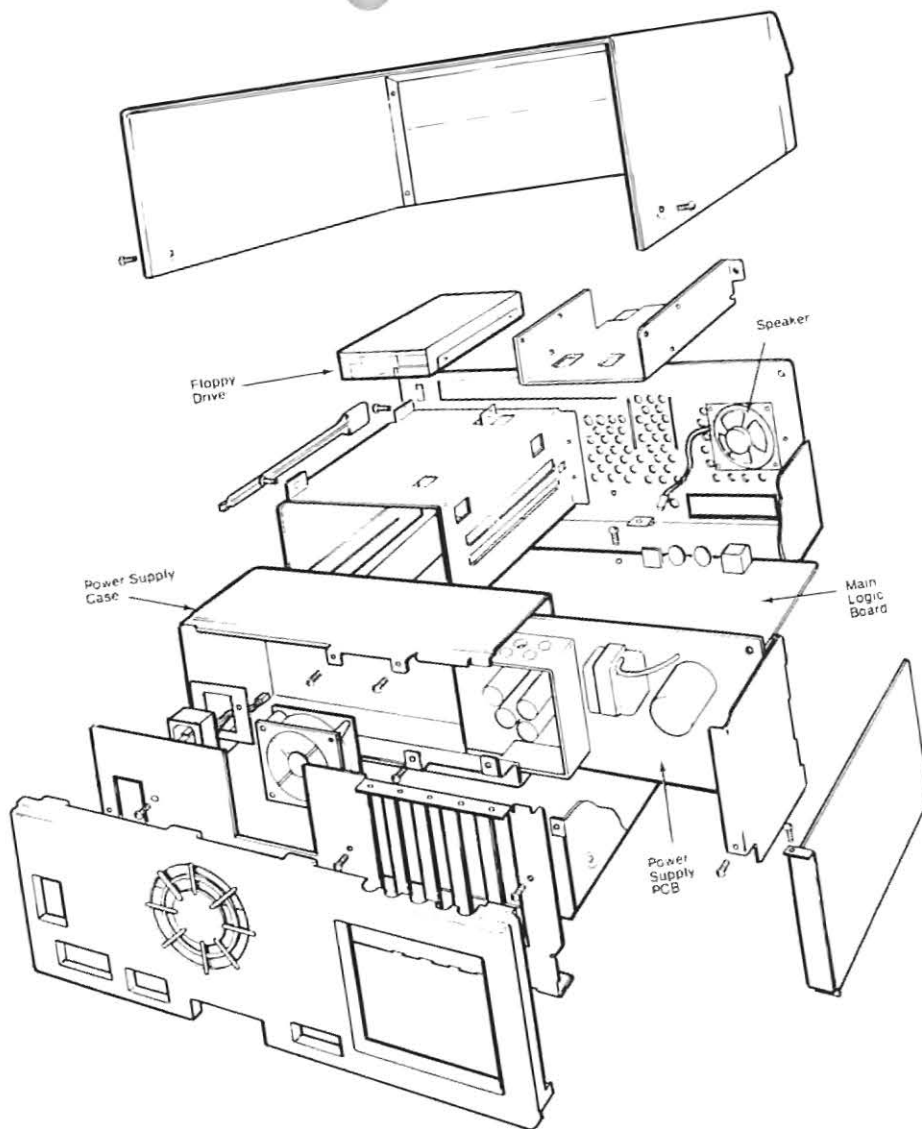
Note9 —hold control shift active until key is released

Note10—hold alternate shift active until key is released



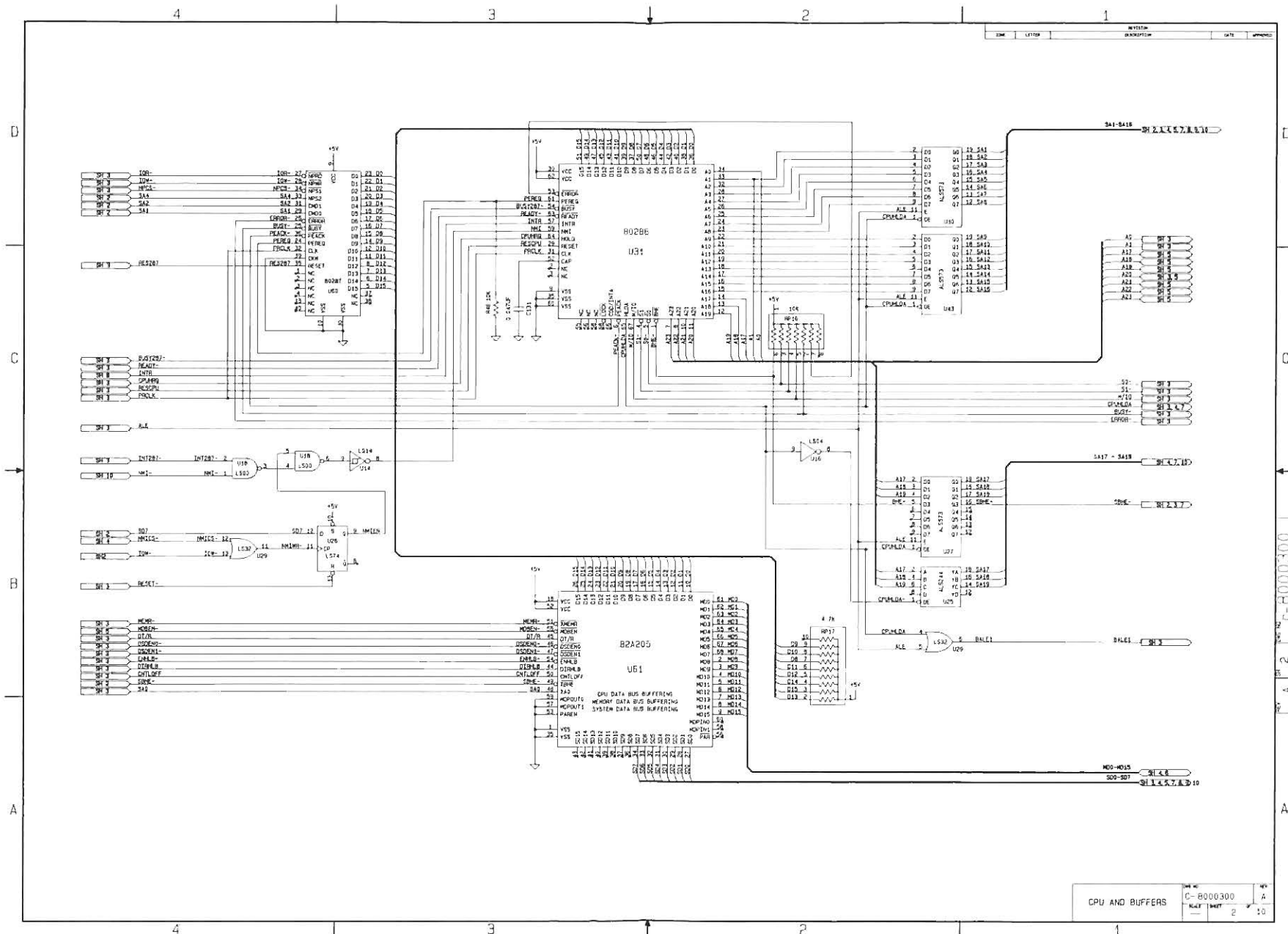




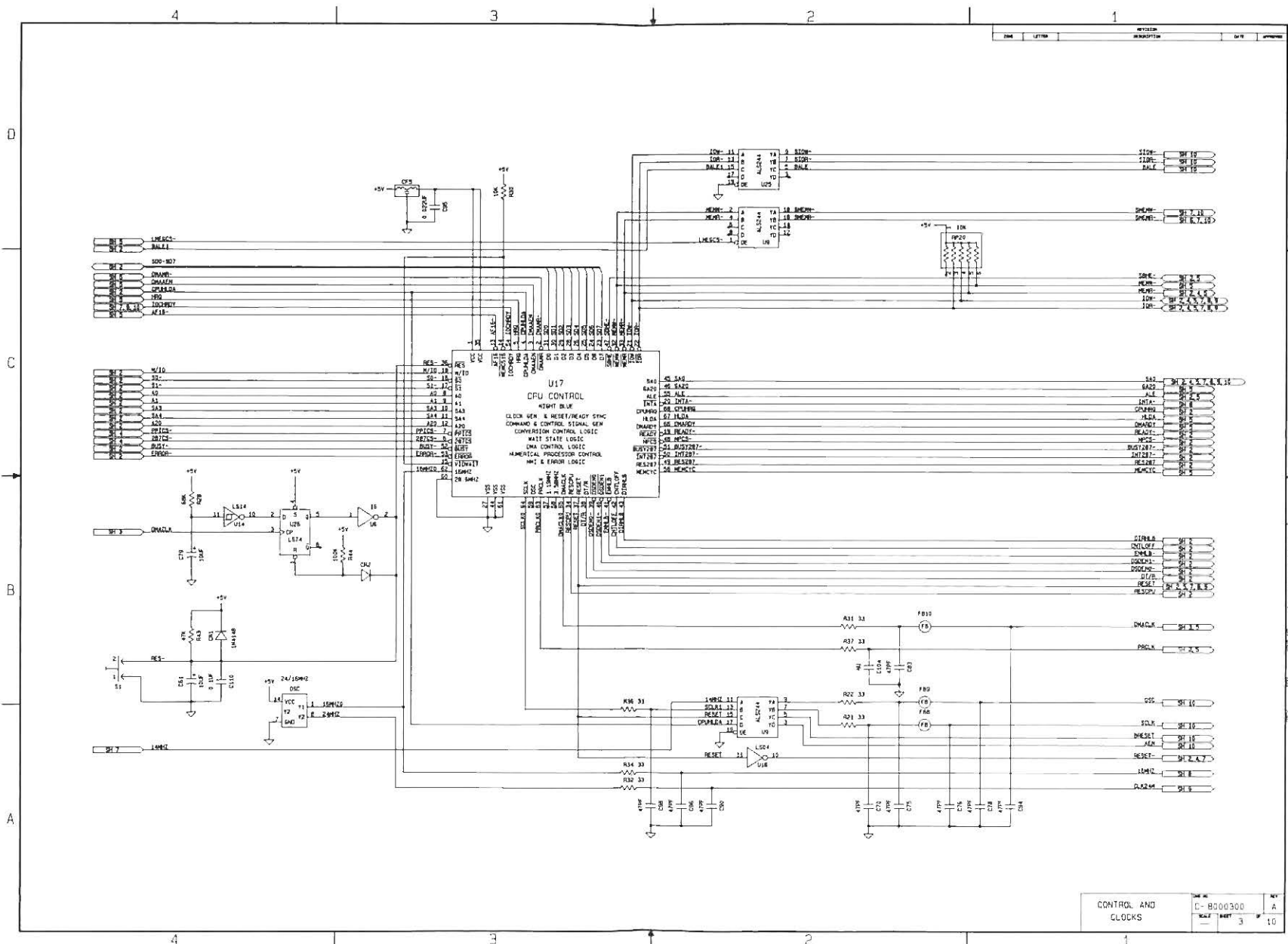




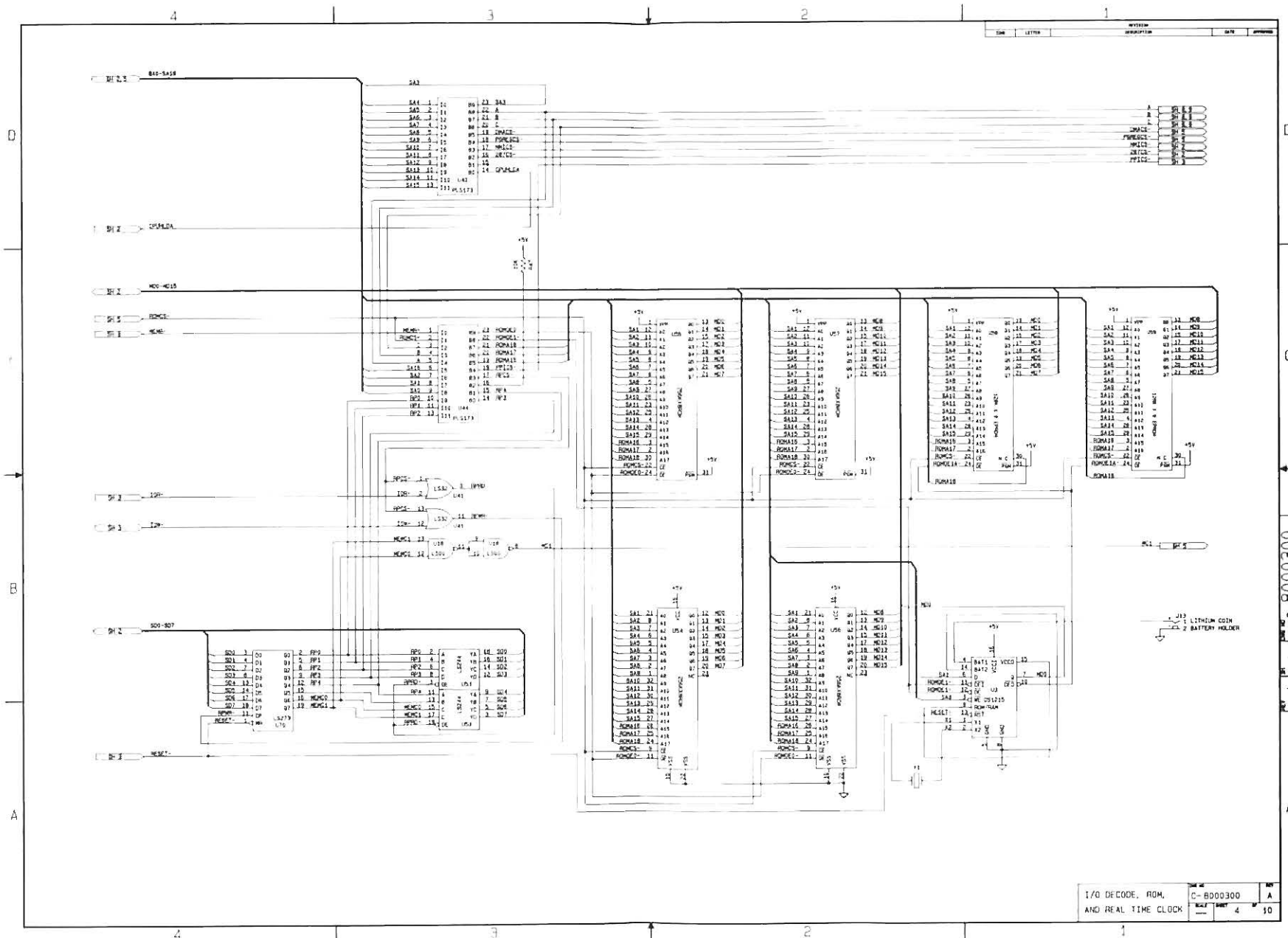


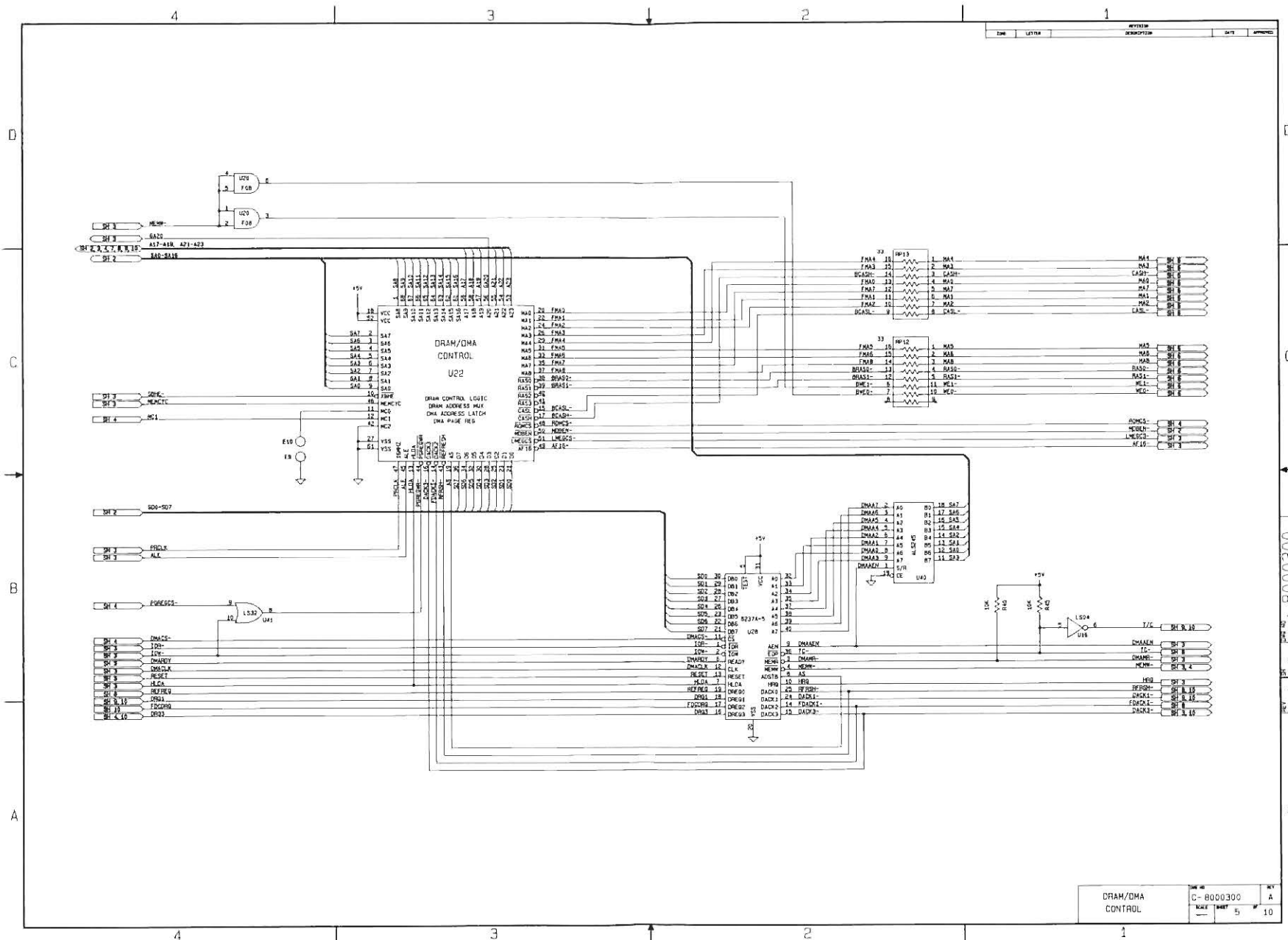




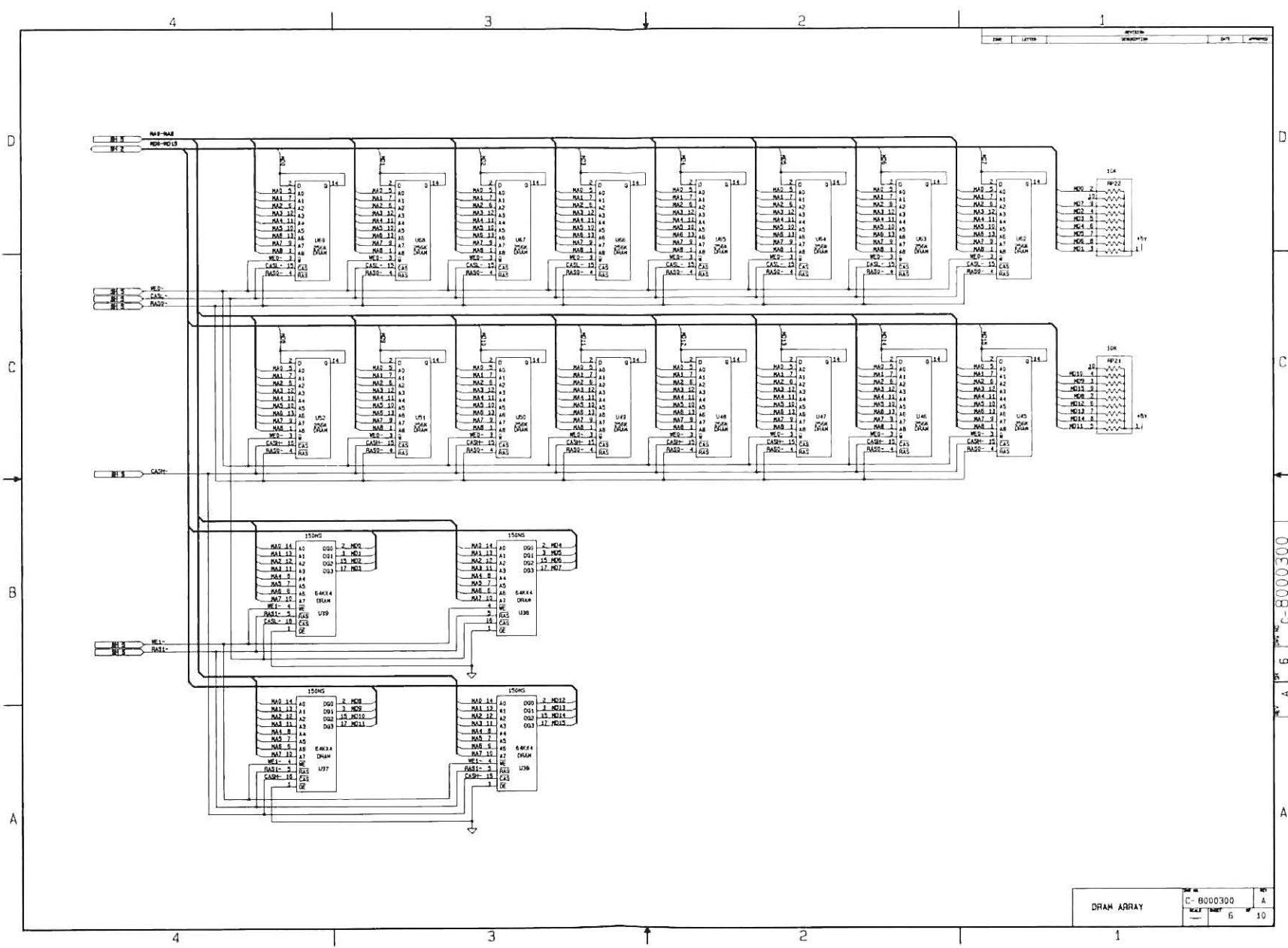




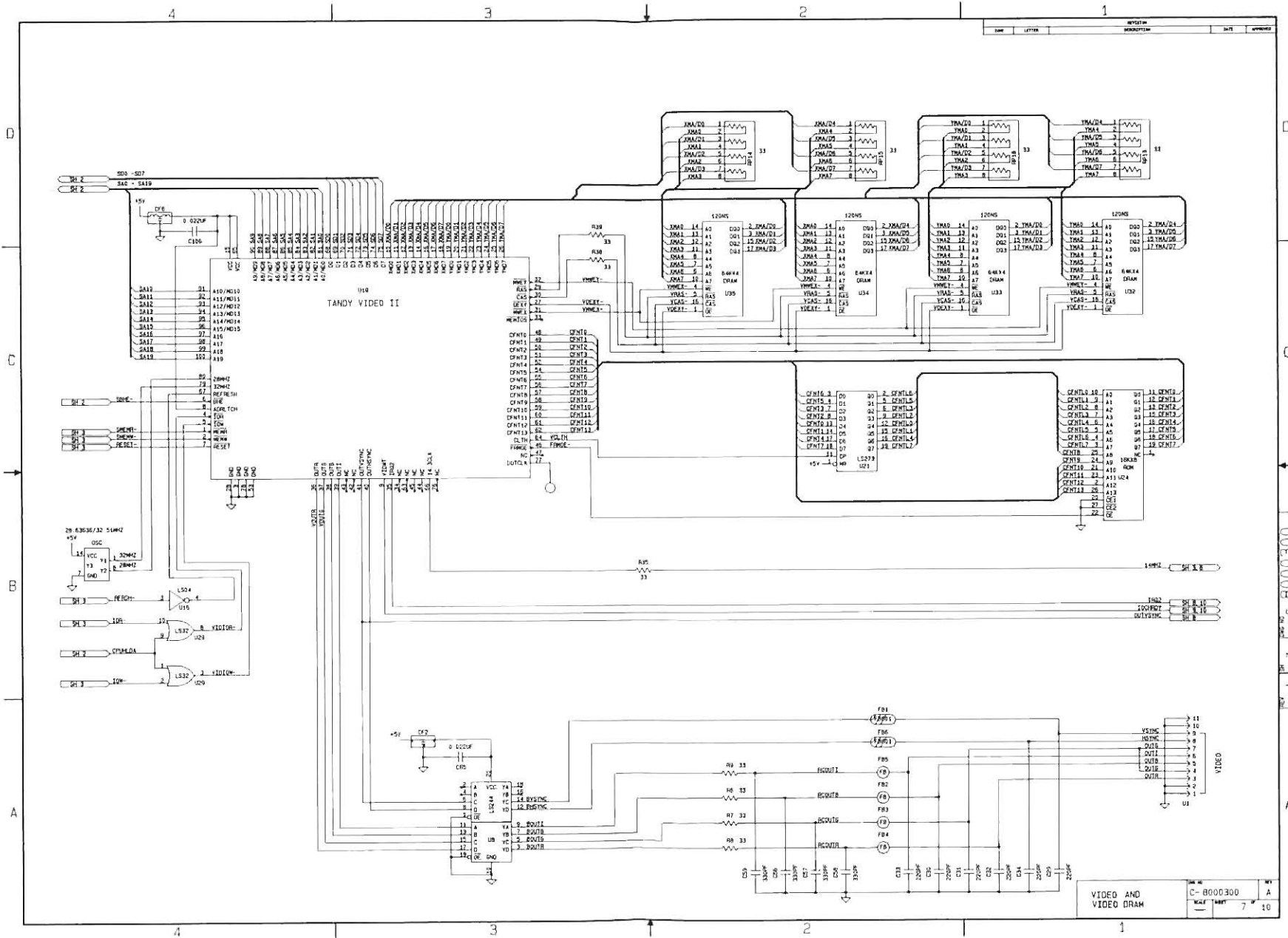








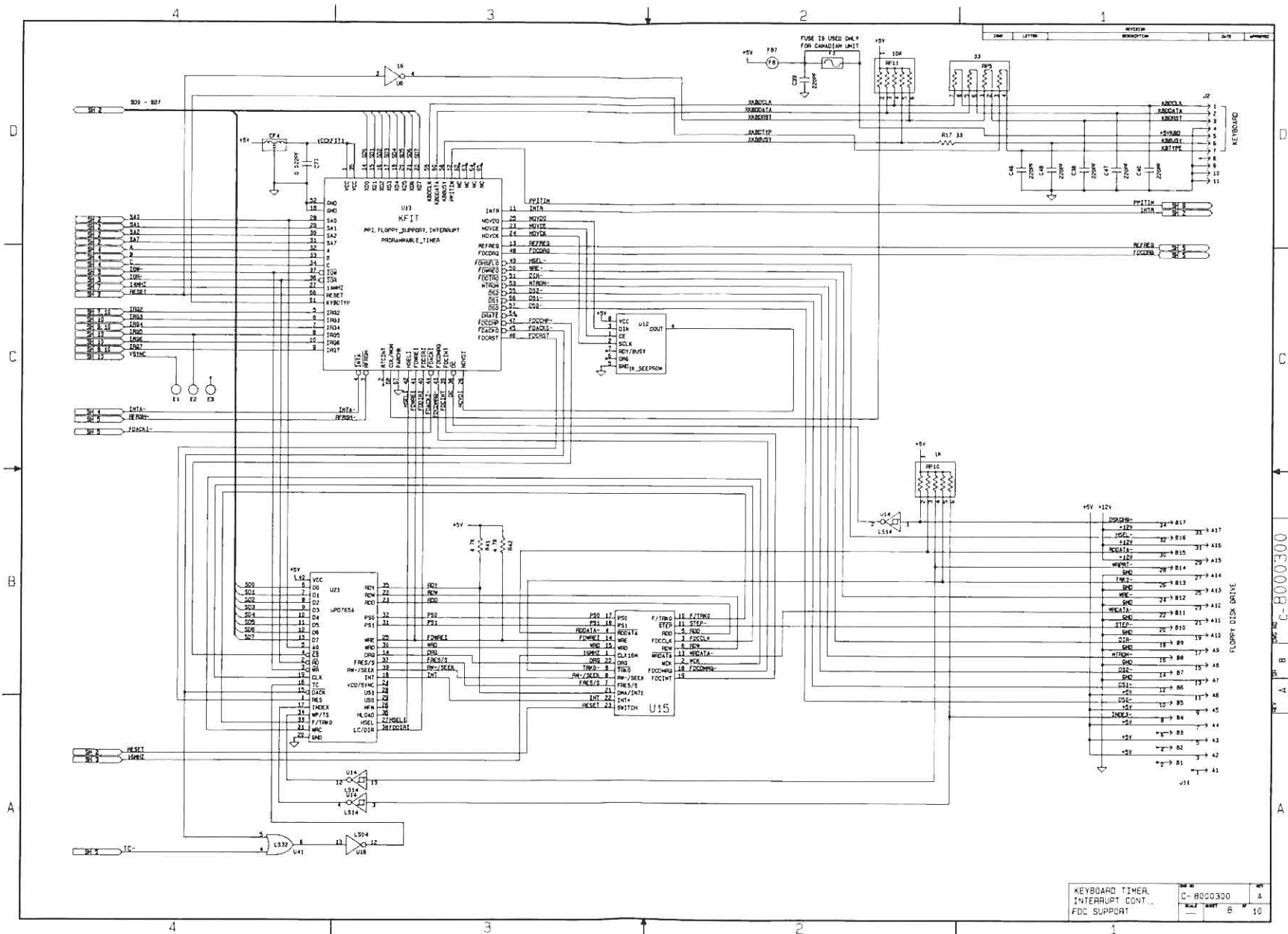




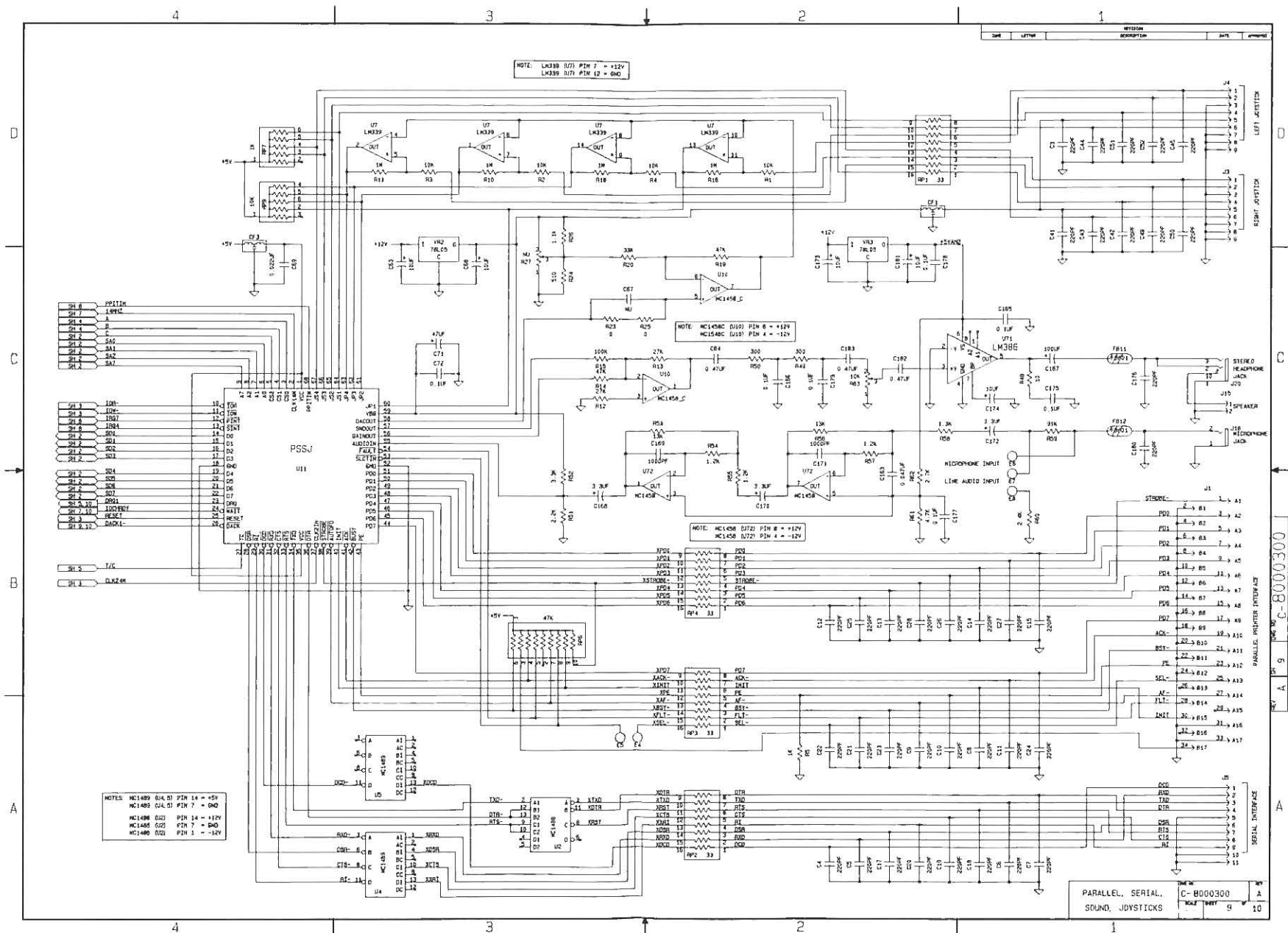
00000000-3

VIDEO AND VIDEO DRAM
C-8000300
SCALE 7 10

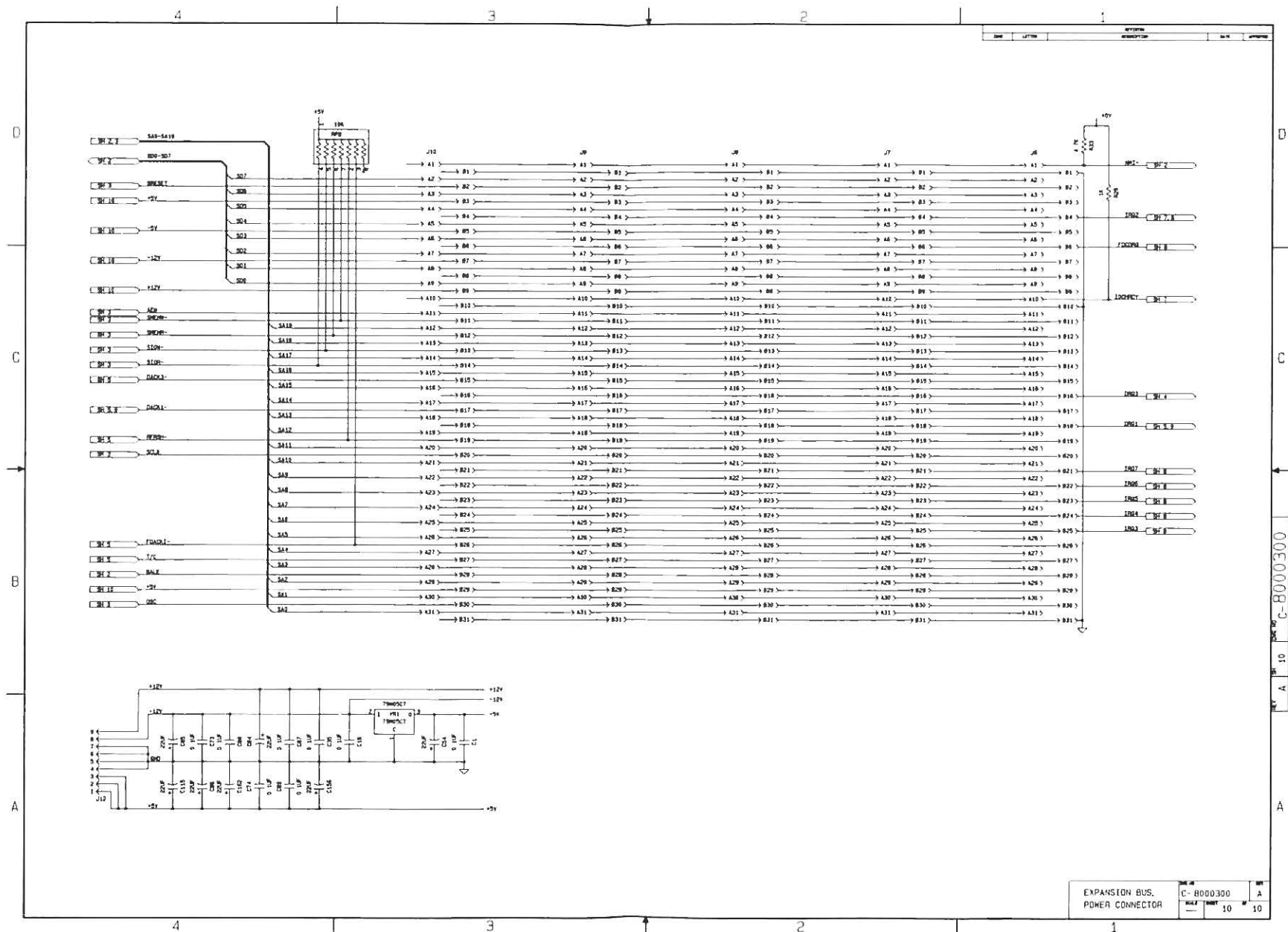




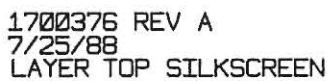




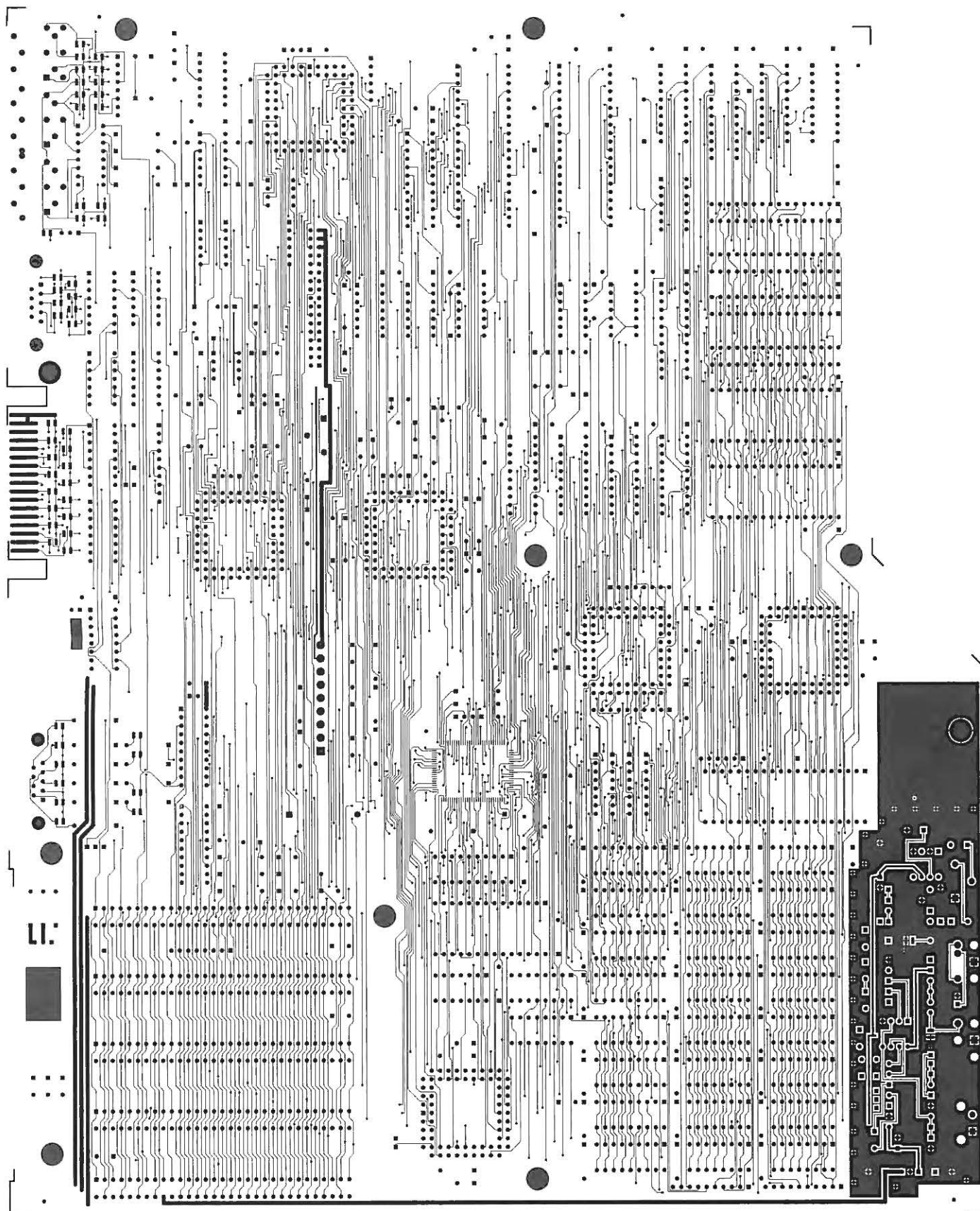






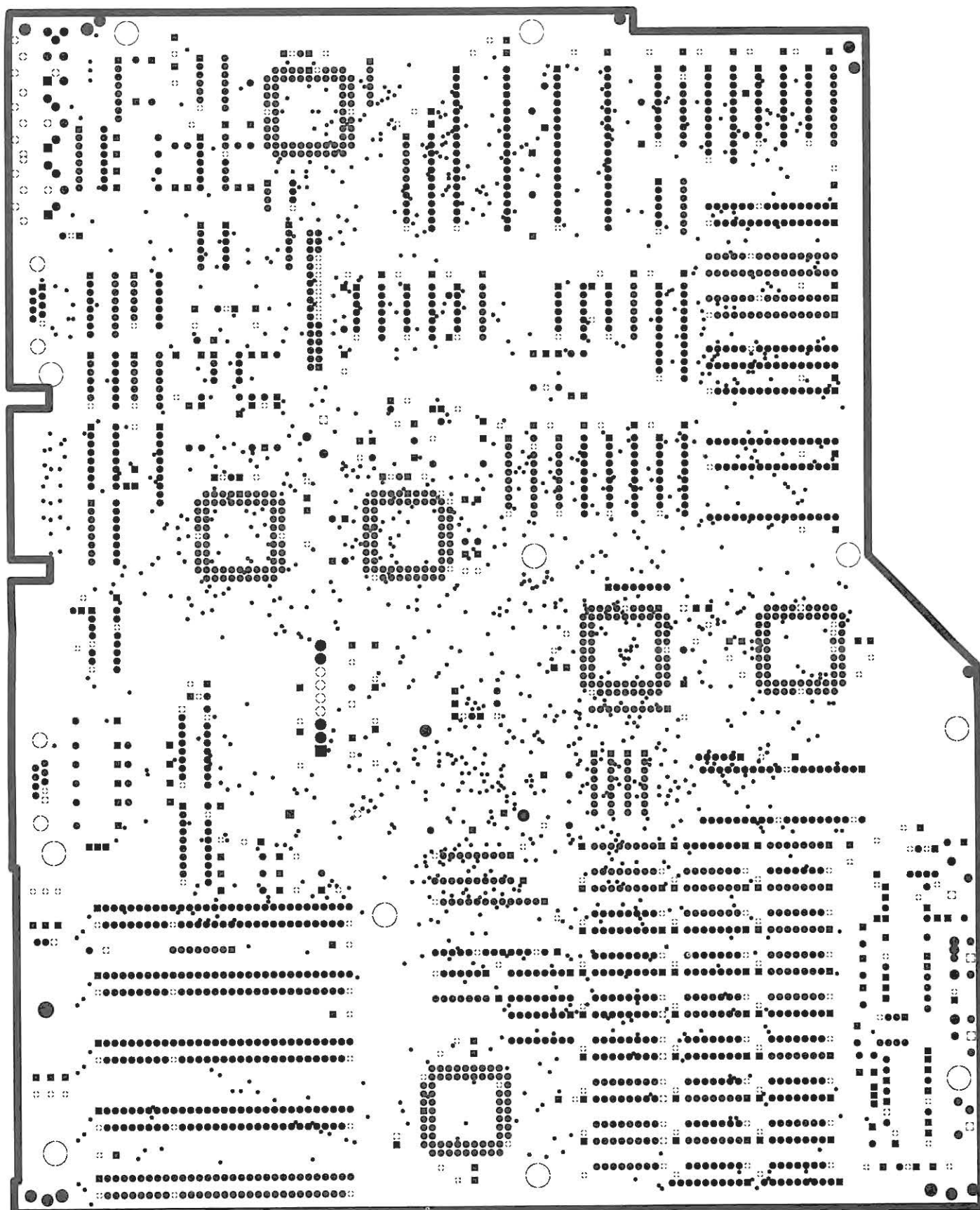






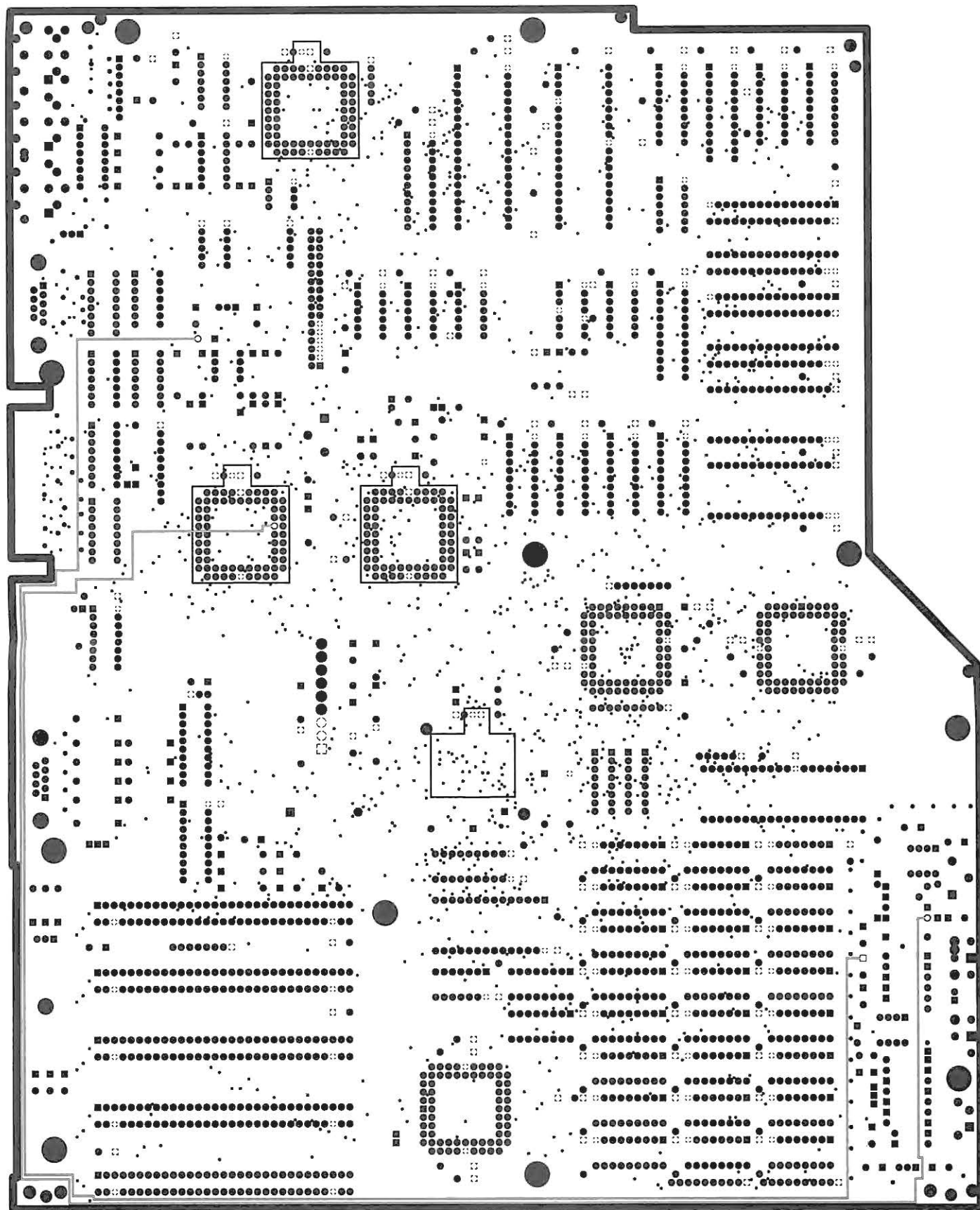
1700376 REV A
7/25/88
LAYER 1 TOP SIDE





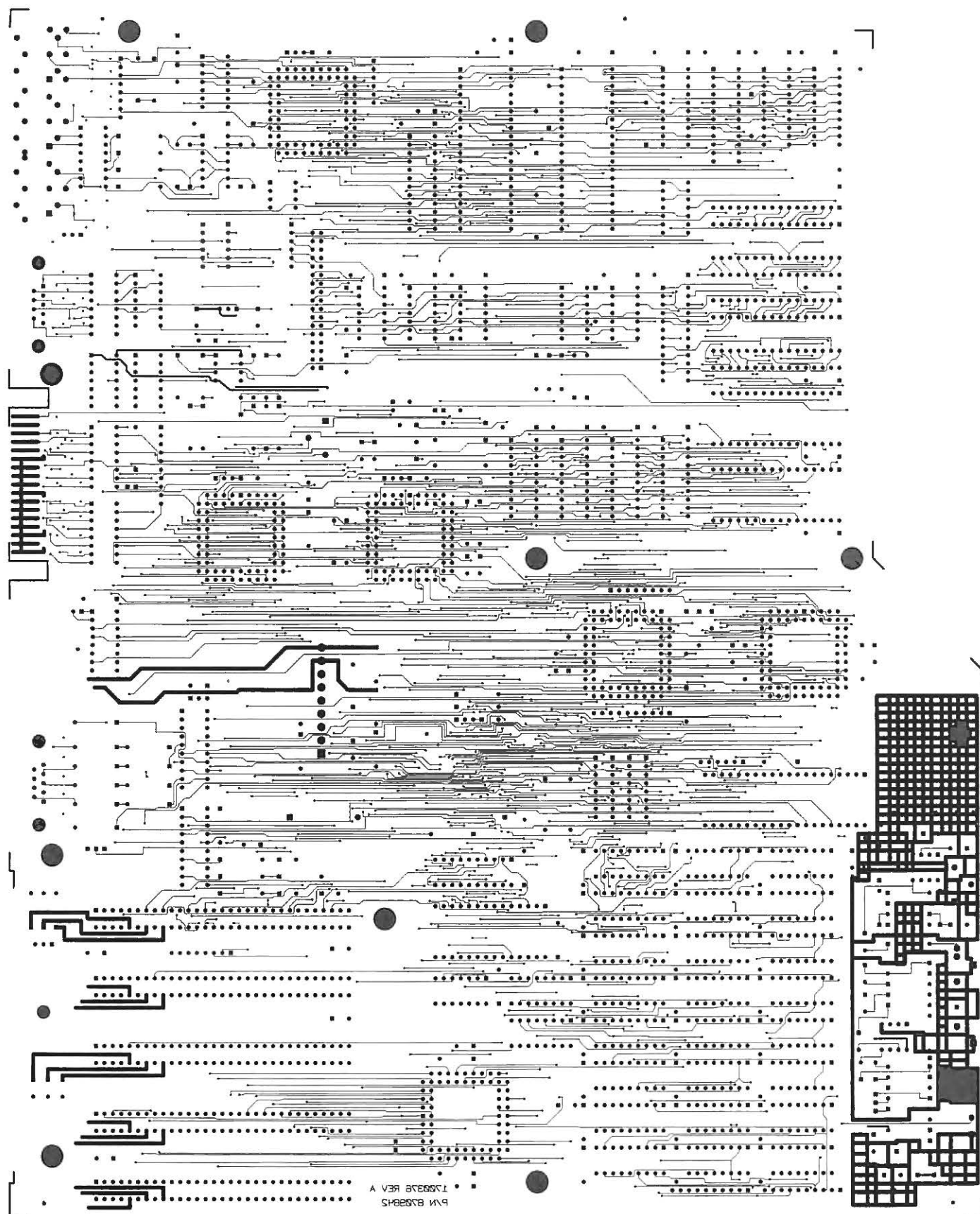
1700376 REV A
7/25/88
LAYER 2 GND PLANE





1700376 REV A
7/25/88
LAYER 3 +5V PLANE

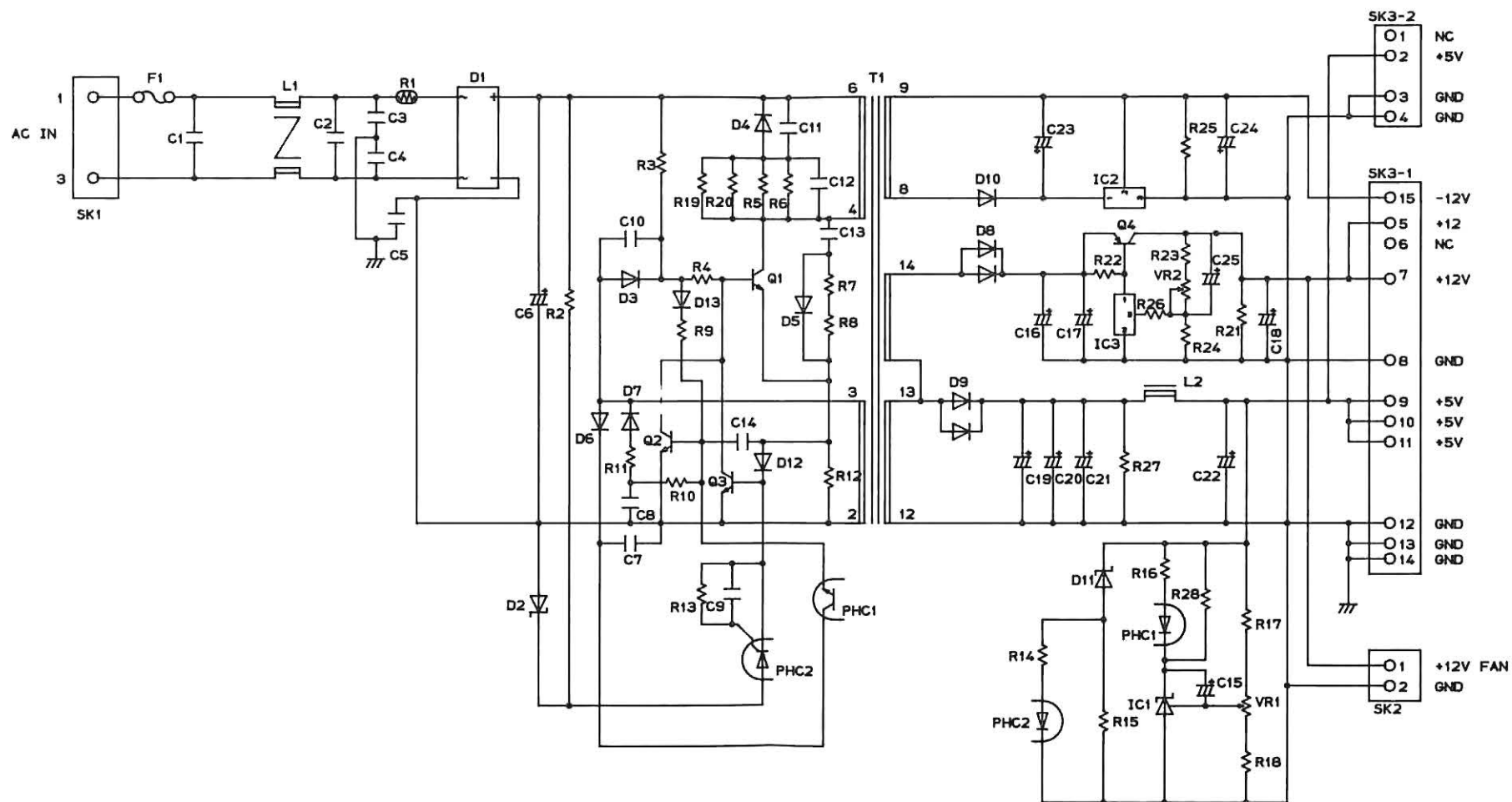




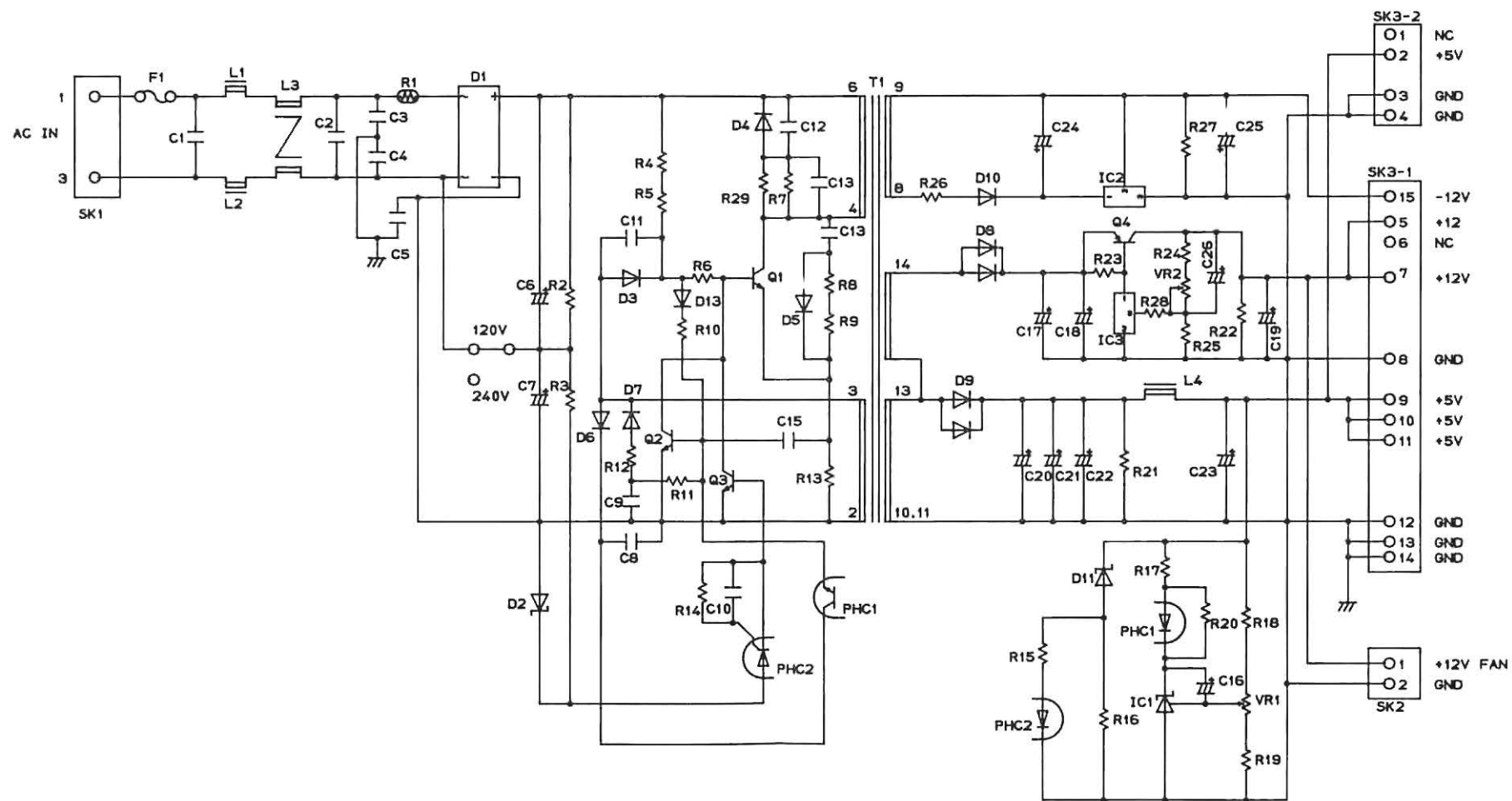
1700376 REV A
7/25/88
LAYER 4 BOTTOM SIDE

1700376 REV A
7/25/88
LAYER 4 BOTTOM SIDE





model no. 8790085



model no. 8790084





日付	原 図 管 理 元
	→

3

4

5

6

D	一 般 公 産	調 査 表	C				B				A
			寸法区分								
項目	FN111-12	一般加工	0.5 ~ 30	120	315	1000	2000	FN111-10	() 級		
			中心距離 (金属)	±0.1	±0.15	±0.2	±0.3	±0.5	FN111-11	食糧用紙、アルミニウム合金塗物 (金・砂型)	
項目	FN111-13	一般加工	0.5 ~ 30	120	315	1000	2000	FN111-10	() 級		
			中心距離 (樹脂)	±0.1	±0.15	±0.2	±0.3	±0.5	FN111-11	ガラス加工、銅板、銅合金塗物、	
項目	FN111-14	一般加工	0.5 ~ 30	120	315	1000	2000	FN111-10	() 級		
			一般寸法 (金属)	±0.1	±0.15	±0.2	±0.3	±0.5	±0.7	FN111-11	ゴム成形・加工、スポンジ成形・加工
項目	FN111-15	一般加工	0.5 ~ 30	120	315	1000	2000	FN111-10	() 級		
			一般寸法 (樹脂)・組立寸法、 曲げ寸法 (長さ方向315以下)	±0.2	±0.3	±0.5	±0.8	±1.2	FN111-13	プラスチック モールド	FN111-14	ダイカスト



日付

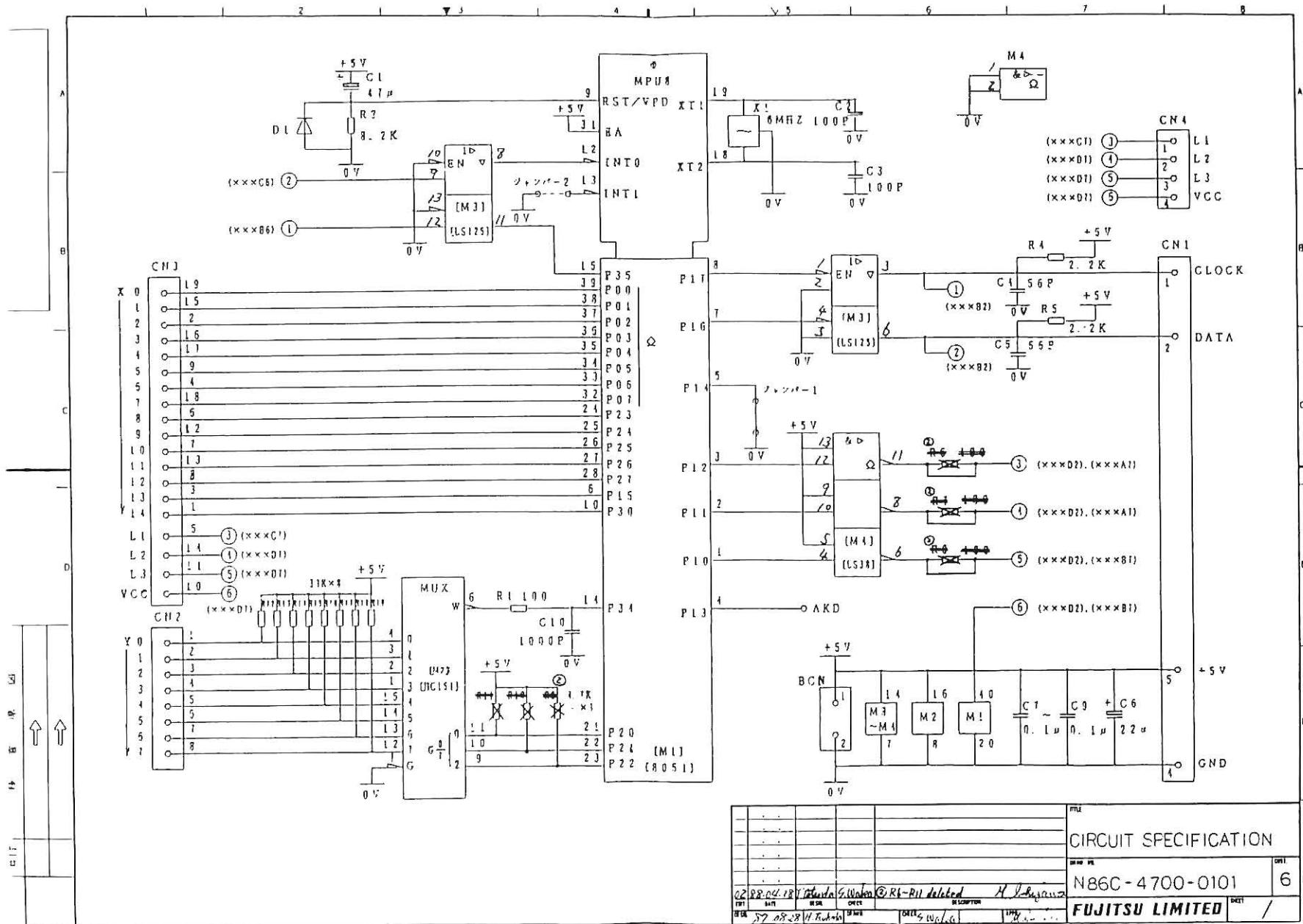
原 図 管 理 元

↑

		1		2		3		4	
		Y0		Y1		Y2		Y3	
		1		2		3		4	
		5		6		7		8	
A	X14 ○	9	A00					A12	
	X2 ○	10			B00	B11			
	X13 ○	11	A01	C12	B00				
	X6 ○	12	B01	B02	B03	B04	B05	B06	B07
B	X8 ○	14	F00	F02	F03	F04	F05	F06	F07
	X10 ○	15	E00	E01	E02	E03	E04	E05	E06
	X12 ○	16	D00	D01	D02	D03	D04	D05	D06
	X5 ○	17	C01	C02	C03	C04	C05	C06	C07
C	X9 ○	20	D10	F09	F10	F11	F12	F13	F15
	X11 ○	21	E08	E09	E10	E11	E12	E13	D08
	X1 ○	23	E15	E16	F14	C00	A09	E17	B20
	X3 ○	24	D11	D12	D13	D17	D18	D19	E19
D	X4 ○	25	C09	C10	C11	C12	C17	C18	C19
	X7 ○	26	B09	B10	A05	A17	A19	B17	B18
	X0 ○	27	A14	A15	A16	B15	D14	D15	D16
	Vcc ○	18							
E	L1 ○	13							
	L3 ○	19							
	L2 ○	22							

版		年	月	日	設	計	調	査	変	更	内	容	名	CIRCUIT SPECIFICATION	
設計		My. 288 Y. Y. Y.		調査				承認				図	N86C-4700-0001		
提出先		6		富士通株式会社		ページ		/							





CIRCUIT SPECIFICATION

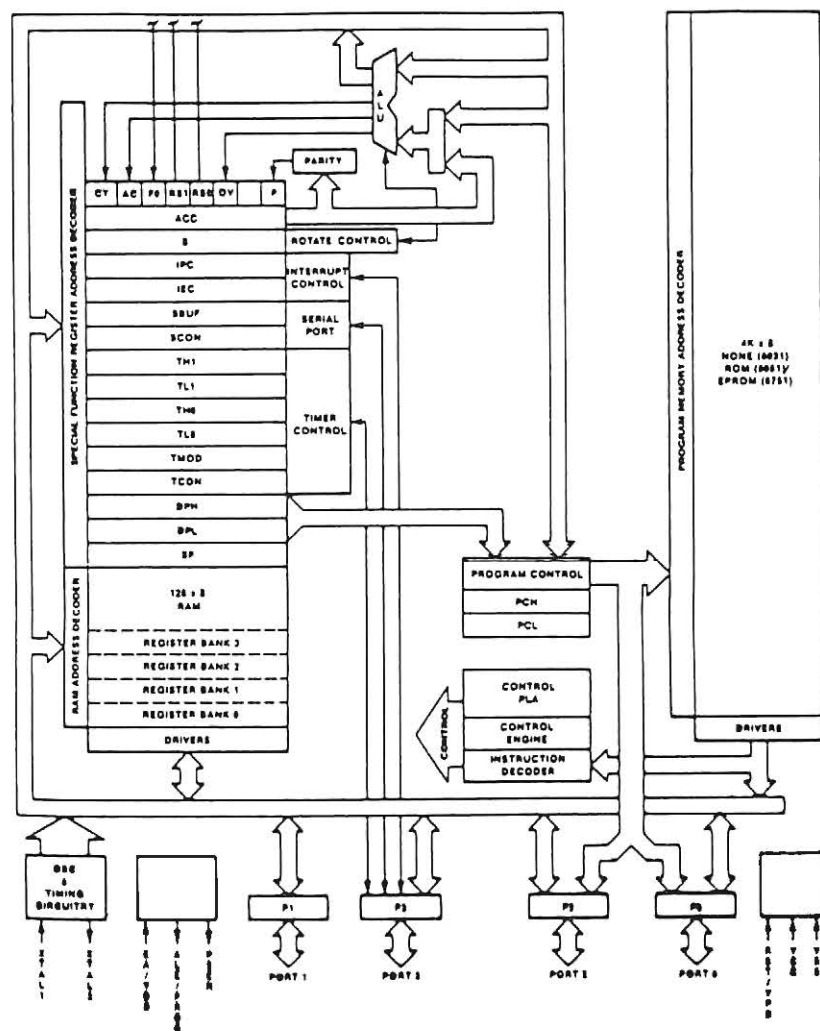
N86C-4700-0101

FUJITSU LIMITED

6



Block Diagram



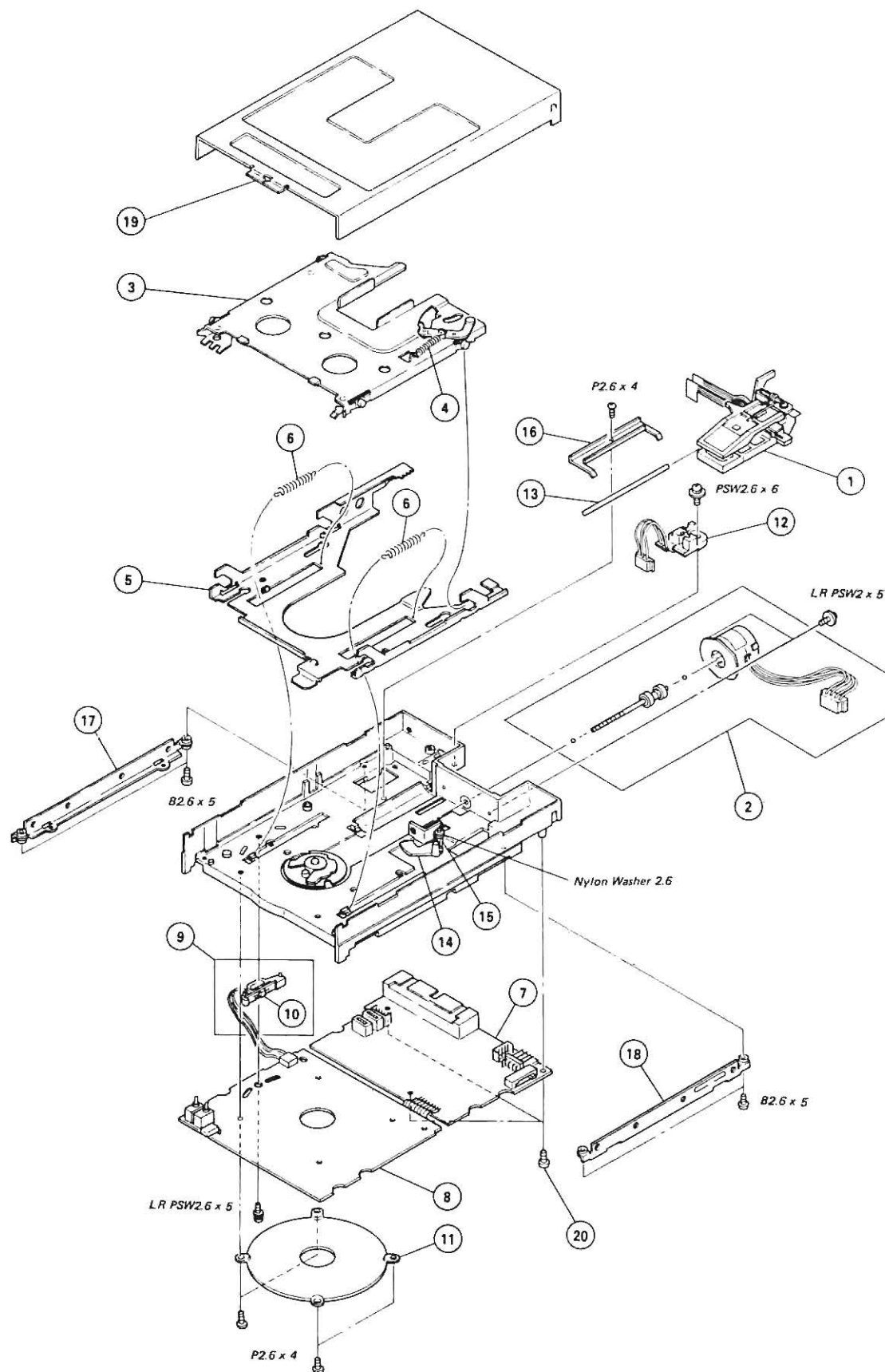
DOCUMENT CONTROL SECTION

DATE

						TITLE CUSTOM IC PIN SIGNAL AND FUNCTION											
						MAN. NO.										COST.	
EDIT.	DATE	DESIGN.	CHECK	DESCRIPTION													
DESIGN.			CHECK				APPR.		FUJITSU LIMITED				3 / 3				
1													61.3. FDXA-4902-5				



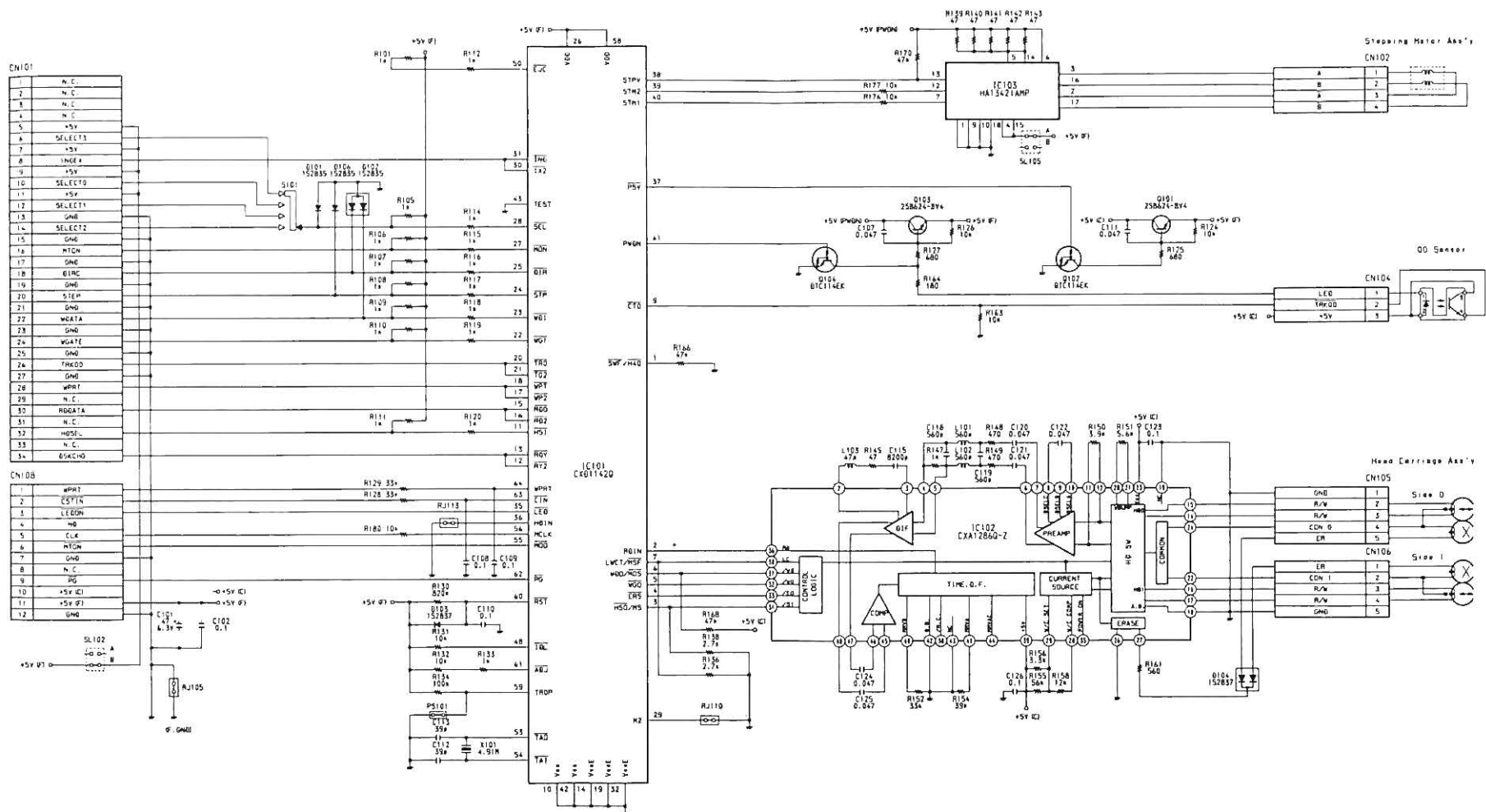
SECTION 6 PARTS LOCATION AND LIST





6-4. CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

6-4-1. Circuit Diagram on LG-2 (17)







RADIO SHACK
A Division of Tandy Corporation
Fort Worth, Texas 76102